CAMBRIDGE

English Vocabulary in Use

Pre-intermediate and intermediate

Vocabulary reference and practice

with answers

THIRD EDITION

Stuart Redman

B1 English Profile

English Vocabulary in Use

Pre-intermediate and intermediate

THIRD EDITION

with answers

Stuart Redman

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS
Cambridge, New York, Melbourne, Madrid, Cape Town,
Singapore, São Paulo, Delhi, Tokyo, Mexico City

Cambridge University Press
The Edinburgh Building, Cambridge CB2 8RU, UK

www.cambridge.org
Information on this title: www.cambridge.org/9780521149884

© Cambridge University Press 2011

This publication is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception
and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements,
no reproduction of any part may take place without the written
permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published 2011

Produced by Kamae Design, Oxford

Printed in Italy by L.E.G.O. S.p.A.

A catalogue record for this publication is available from the British Library

ISBN 978-0521-14989-1 Edition with answers and CD-ROM
ISBN 978-0521-14988-4 Edition with answers
ISBN 978-0521-14990-7 Test Your English Vocabulary in Use Pre-intermediate
and intermediate

Cambridge University Press has no responsibility for the persistence or
accuracy of URLs for external or third-party internet websites referred to in
this publication, and does not guarantee that any content on such websites is,
or will remain, accurate or appropriate. Information regarding prices, travel
timetables and other factual information given in this work is correct at
the time of first printing but Cambridge University Press does not guarantee
the accuracy of such information thereafter.

Contents

Thanks and acknowledgements 5
Introduction 6

Learning
1 Learning vocabulary 8
2 Keeping a vocabulary notebook 10
3 Using a dictionary 12
4 English language words 14

The world around us
5 Country, nationality and language 16
6 The physical world 18
7 Weather 20
8 Animals and insects 22

People
9 The body and movement 24
10 Describing appearance 26
11 Describing character 28
12 Feelings 30
13 Family and friends 32
14 Growing up 34
15 Romance, marriage and divorce 36

Daily life
16 Daily routines 38
17 The place where you live 40
18 Around the home 42
19 Everyday problems 44
20 Money 46
21 Health 48
22 Clothes 50
23 Fashion and buying clothes 52
24 Shopping 54
25 Food 56
26 Cooking 58
27 City life 60
28 Life in the country 62
29 Transport 64
30 On the road 66
31 Notices and warnings 68

Education and study
32 Classroom language 70
33 School education 72
34 Studying English and taking exams 74
35 University education 76

Work and business
36 Jobs 78
37 Talking about your work 80
38 Making a career 82
39 Working in an office 84
40 Running a company 86
41 Business and finance 88

Leisure and entertainment
42 Sport and leisure 90
43 Competitive sport 92
44 Books and films 94
45 Music 96
46 Special events 98

Tourism
47 Air travel 100
48 Hotels and restaurants 102
49 Sightseeing holidays 104
50 Holidays by the sea 106

Communication and technology
51 Newspapers and television 108
52 Phoning and texting 110
53 Computers 112
54 Email and the Internet 114

Social issues
55 Crime 116
56 Politics 118
57 Climate change 120
58 War and violence 122

Concepts

59 Time 124
60 Numbers 126
61 Distance, dimensions and size 128
62 Objects, materials, shapes and colour 130
63 Containers and quantities 132

Functional language

64 Apologies, excuses and thanks 134
65 Requests, permission and suggestions 136
66 Opinions, agreeing and disagreeing 138
67 Likes, dislikes, attitudes and preferences 140
68 Greetings, farewells and special expressions 142

Word formation

69 Prefixes: changing meaning 144
70 Suffixes: forming nouns 146
71 Suffixes: forming adjectives 148
72 Nouns and verbs with the same form 150
73 Compound nouns 152

Phrase building

74 Word partners 154
75 Fixed phrases 156
76 Fixed phrases in conversation 158
77 Verb or adjective + preposition 160
78 Prepositional phrases 162
79 Phrasal verbs 1: form and meaning 164
80 Phrasal verbs 2: grammar and style 166

Key verbs

81 *Make*, *do* and *take*: uses and phrases 168
82 Key verbs: *give*, *keep* and *miss* 170
83 *Get*: uses, phrases and phrasal verbs 172
84 *Go*: meanings and expressions 174
85 The senses 176

Words and grammar

86 Uncountable nouns 178
87 Verb constructions 1 180
88 Verb constructions 2 182
89 Adjectives 184
90 Prepositions: place and movement 186
91 Adverbs 188

Connecting and linking

92 Time and sequence 190
93 Addition and contrast 192
94 Reason, purpose, result, condition 194

Style and register

95 Formal and informal English 196
96 Completing forms and CVs 198
97 Writing an essay 200
98 Formal letters 202
99 Informal emails and letters 204
100 Abbreviations 206

Answer key 208
Phonemic symbols 247
Index 248

Thanks and acknowledgements

For this third edition, I would particularly like to thank Julie Moore for her detailed and insightful comments on the manuscript while in preparation. At Cambridge University Press, I would like to thank the editorial team under Noirin Burke, and especially Tracy Griffin for her tireless work in editing a long and complex manuscript, Alyson Maskell for her editorial work and support, and Emily Hird for her overall supervision of the project and for carefully steering the book from its early stages through to production. Finally, I would like to thank Andy George and Jeanette Alfoldi in production, Lucy Fox for photo research, and Marcus Fletcher for proofreading.

I would also like to thank the teachers and students who participated in focus groups at the following institutions:

Anglia Ruskin University, Cambridge
Cambridge Academy of English, Cambridge
OISE, Cambridge
Oxford English Centre, Oxford

This product is informed by **English Profile**. **English Profile** is a collaborative program to enhance the learning, teaching and assessment of English worldwide and its main funding partners are Cambridge University Press and Cambridge ESOL. The aim of **English Profile** is to create a 'profile' for English linked to the Common European Framework of Reference for Languages (CEF). **English Profile** outcomes will provide detailed information about the language that learners can be expected to demonstrate at each CEF level, offering a clear benchmark for learners' proficiency. For more information, please visit www.englishprofile.org.

The authors and publishers acknowledge the following sources of copyright material and are grateful for the permissions granted. While every effort has been made, it has not always been possible to identify the sources of all the material used, or to trace all copyright holders. If any omissions are brought to our notice, we will be happy to include the appropriate acknowledgements on reprinting.

p. 10*TR*: CURAphotography/Shutterstock; p. 10*TL*: George Doyle/Thinkstock; p. 10*CR*: Thorsten Rust/Shutterstock; p. 10*BL*: Thinkstock; p. 10*BR*: Thinkstock; p. 18*C*: Michael Reynolds/epa/Corbis; p. 18*T*: Stephen Alvarez/Getty; p. 18*B*: Peter M. Wilson/Alamy; p.26*L*: Valua Vitaly/Istockphoto, p.26*C*: ParkerDeen/Istockphoto; p.26*R*: Thinkstock; p. 32*T*: Blickwinkel/Alamy; p. 32*B*: Kevin Lindblad/Istockphoto; p.34: Elzbieta Sekowska/Shutterstock; p.46*L*: Paul Doyle/Alamy; p.46*R*: Rosesmith/Shutterstock; p.52: Bikeriderlondon/Shutterstock; p. 60: Robert Fried/Alamy; p. 72: Pindyurin Vasily/Shutterstock; p. 74: Franck Boston/Shutterstock; p. 82: Elena Elisseeva/Shutterstock; p. 86: Joas Kotzsch/Istockphoto; p. 92: Kay Nietfeld/epa/Corbis; p. 94: Rich Legg/Istockphoto; p. 98*T*: Nagelestock.com/Alamy; p. 98*B*: Imagemore Co., Ltd./Alamy; p. 99: Imagebroker/Alamy; p. 102: ID1974/Shutterstock; p.104 *(Palace)*: Worakit Sirijinda/Shutterstock; p. 104 *(Mosque)*: FPI/Shutterstock; p.104 *(Cathedral)*: Darren Pierse Kelly/Shutterstock; p.104 *(Temple)*: KoKiChs/Shutterstock; p. 104 *(Market)*: GCRO Images/Shutterstock; p. 104 *(Castle)*: Margaret Smeaton/Shutterstock; p.104 *(Statue)*: Thinkstock; p. 108: Clara/Shutterstock; p. 118: Yuri Arcurs/Shutterstock; p. 120: CreativeAct - Abstract series/Alamy; p.122: FotoliaI; p. 136: Roger Jegg - Fotodesign-Jegg.de/Shutterstock; p.138: Andreas Kindler/Johnér Images/Corbis; p. 148: Toshi Kawano/Getty; p. 150: Tricia de Courcy Ling/Alamy; p.182: Péter Gudella/Shutterstock.

L = left, R = right, T = top, B = bottom, C = centre

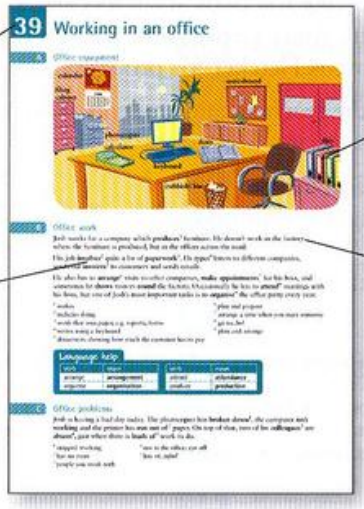
Illustrations by: Mark Duffin, Humberto Blanco, Kathy Baxendale, Gillian Martin, Jo Taylor, Kathryn Baker, Andrew Painter and David Whittle.

Introduction

To the student

This book will help you learn more than 2,000 words and phrases, and you can use it without a teacher. There are 100 units in the book. You can study them in any order, but the first four units have information about vocabulary that will help you with your learning.

Here is what the pages look like:



The left-hand page presents the new vocabulary.

Pictures and diagrams show the meaning of some words.

New vocabulary is in **bold.**

Example sentences help you to understand new words.

The right-hand page practises the new vocabulary.

There is space for you to write your answers.

There is an example in each exercise to help you.

Over to you is a chance for you to use the new words to write about yourself, your life and your country.

After you do the exercises, you can check your answers in the **Answer key** at the back of the book. You will also find possible answers for most of the **Over to you** exercises.

The **Index** at the back of the book has all the new words and phrases from the units, with a phonemic transcription to help you with pronunciation. If you have the edition with the CD-ROM, you can listen to the pronunciation of all the new vocabulary, and there are more practice exercises as well.

There is another book that gives you further practice of all the vocabulary in this book. It is called *Test your English Vocabulary in Use Pre-intermediate and intermediate.* After you finish this book, you can go on to study *English Vocabulary in Use Upper-intermediate*, and then *English Vocabulary in Use Advanced.*

It is a good idea to have a dictionary when you use the book. Sometimes you may want a bilingual dictionary, so you can find a translation; sometimes the book asks you to use an English dictionary for an exercise. You also need a notebook when you are studying. The study units 1–4 in this book will give you ideas and information to help you to use your notebook and become a better learner. I hope you enjoy using this book.

To the teacher

This book can be used in class or for self-study. It is intended for learners at the upper A2 level and B1 level on the Council of Europe scale, and teaches more than 2,000 words and phrases. The vocabulary is organised around common everyday topics, but also contains units on different aspects of language such as phrasal verbs, uncountable nouns and link words and phrases. These units provide key information about lexis, but also help to ensure that learners are exposed to the most important vocabulary for their level. The first four units are dedicated to aspects of vocabulary learning such as record keeping and dictionary use. The book has been written so that units can be studied in any order, but I recommend you look at these four study units first, as they provide learners with important advice about vocabulary learning in general.

Throughout the book, vocabulary items have been chosen for their usefulness in a wide range of everyday situations, and this task has been made easier by having access to the English Profile (EP). Forming part of a large research programme sponsored by the Council of Europe, the EP helps teachers and students identify the words or phrases that a learner can be expected to know at each level of the Common European Framework. The words and phrases have been selected using the Cambridge Learner Corpus, examination wordlists and classroom materials, and in this book the main focus is on words and phrases at the upper end of the A2 level and across the B1 level.

Much of the new vocabulary (on average about 25 items per unit) is presented through different types of text, and then explained immediately after the item appears, or in a separate glossary below the text; some words are presented in tables or lists, and contextualised in sentence examples; some of the new vocabulary is presented in pictures and diagrams.

The new vocabulary is then practised on the right-hand pages through a wide range of exercise types. These pages generally progress from easier to more difficult exercises, with items often tested receptively first, e.g. through a matching or grouping exercise, before moving on to more challenging productive exercises such as gap-fill texts or sentence transformations. In many units, the final exercise is called **Over to you**. This indicates a personalised exercise, in which learners have an opportunity to use some of the new vocabulary to talk about themselves, their lives and their country, and sometimes to express their own personal opinions. These make ideal classroom speaking activities for pairs or groups, but many of the exercises on the right-hand page can be adapted for speaking practice. For example, where there are short question and answer dialogues, students can first read the dialogues out loud, then one student can ask the questions, and their partner has to respond appropriately using target vocabulary from the unit, but without referring to the book.

There is a comprehensive Answer key at the back of the book, as well as an Index of all the vocabulary taught with a phonemic pronunciation guide and a unit reference to where each item appears.

Alongside this book, you can also use *Test Your Vocabulary in Use Pre-intermediate and intermediate*. This accompanying book provides tests on all the vocabulary from *English Vocabulary in Use Pre-intermediate and intermediate*, and is an ideal way for you to revise the vocabulary with your students. After that, they will be ready to go on to *English Vocabulary in Use Upper-intermediate* by Michael McCarthy and Felicity O'Dell.

Find more resources for teachers at www.cambridge.org/elt/inuse

I hope you enjoy using this new edition.

Study unit 1

Learning vocabulary

A Using this book

It's a good idea to have a **routine** when you use this book [something you do often and usually in the same way]. For example:

- a **weekly** routine when you study a new unit for **at least** [not less than] 30–45 minutes;
- a **daily** routine when you **revise** that unit [study it again]. You may only need to revise for five or ten minutes each time.

1.1

Over to you

Write your answers.

1 How often can you spend at least half an hour or forty-five minutes on a unit?

.....

2 How often can you revise? How much time can you spend when you revise? Where will you do it? .....

B Studying a new unit

When you are studying a unit for the first time, you need to be **active** when you are learning.

- With a new word or phrase, **say it aloud** [speak it so you can hear it], and repeat it to yourself **silently** [in your head, not speaking]. If you have the CD-ROM that goes with the book, use it to check the pronunciation.
- Use a **highlighter pen** to mark words you think are important or difficult.
- Write down new words and phrases in your notebook. (See Unit 2 for more information.)
- Always try to write an example sentence for new words. You can choose an example from this book or a dictionary, but an example from your own life will often help you to remember a word, e.g. *I shared a flat with an Australian girl when I was in London last year.*
- Do exercises in pencil, then you can **rub** them **out** (using a **rubber**) and do them again later. This is a good way to revise vocabulary.

1.2

Over to you

Write your answers.

1 Which of these things do you do now when you are learning vocabulary? .....

.....

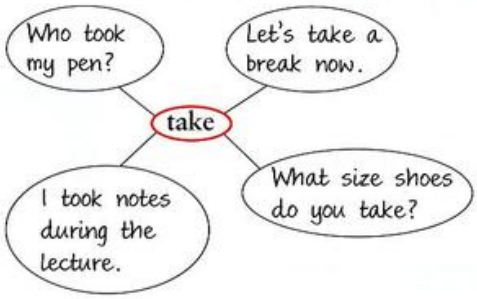
2 What will you do in the future? .....

.....

C Revising a unit

When you are revising a unit one or two days later, it is also important to be as active as possible.

- Test yourself, e.g. look at a word and cover the meaning. Can you remember what the meaning is? If you can't, check the meaning, then come back to the word in five minutes' time and test yourself again.
- Look at what you wrote in your notebook when you first studied the unit. Is there any new information you want to add, e.g. something about the pronunciation, or a common word partner? (See Unit 2.)
- Diagrams may help you to organise some of the vocabulary differently, and help you to remember it.



1.3

Over to you

Write your answers.

1 Do you revise vocabulary that you study? If so, how often? .....

.....

2 Will you try to revise more often in the future? If so, will you use some of the ideas above?

.....

D Expanding* your vocabulary

- When you learn a word, e.g. *dirty*, think of **synonyms** *(syn)* [words with a similar meaning] or **opposites** *(opp)* in your language. Look them up in a bilingual dictionary to find the English words, then look up the English words in an English dictionary to check the meaning. From this, you will find that the opposite of *dirty* is *clean*, and you may also find **filthy** [very dirty].

*making something bigger

1.4 **Using this method, find opposites for the words in bold.**

1 My room is very **clean**. *opp* dirty
2 It's a **permanent** job. *opp* .....
3 He was **kind** to all of his animals. *opp* .....
4 Babies have very soft, **smooth** skin. *opp* .....
5 Where's the **entrance**? *opp* .....
6 Was the bird **dead**? *opp* .....
7 Did they **accept** the invitation? *opp* .....

- Building word families (see Units 69–71) will also help to expand your vocabulary. From a noun, verb or adjective, you can often find related words in the dictionary with a similar meaning. So, you can often learn two or three words, and not just one, e.g. **argue** *v* = have an angry discussion; *n* = **argument**.

1.5 **Use a dictionary to find the related parts of speech for the words in bold.**

1 She gave me some **advice**. *verb* advise
2 We mustn't **argue**. *noun* .....
3 I will have to **revise** this unit. *noun* .....
4 Is there a **choice**? *verb* .....
5 I want to **expand** my vocabulary. *noun* .....
6 The two boys are very **different**. *noun* ..... *verb* .....
7 They need to **communicate** more. *noun* ..... *adj* .....

- Try to read and listen to English as much as possible. The more you read and listen, the more you will learn. When you read, try to:
  - Highlight or underline interesting new words
  - Highlight words if they are familiar but you can't remember the meaning.
- There is a lot of spoken English on the Internet which you can play again and again. Try to make a note of interesting words and look up the meaning.

1.6

Over to you

Now choose a unit that interests you. Study the left-hand page, then do the exercises in pencil. Wait for at least 24 hours, revise the unit, then answer these questions.

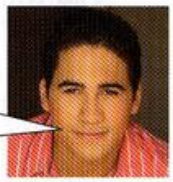
1 How many answers did you get right the first time? .....
2 How many answers did you get right the second time? .....

Study unit 2

Keeping a vocabulary notebook

A What do you do?

This is what some students do.



I **write down** new English words and phrases in my notebook, and next to each one I write a Spanish **translation.** I usually write down if a word is a *noun, verb, adjective*, and so on.

RAFAEL

I sometimes write a word in phonemics because English pronunciation is very difficult for me. But my notebook is a **mess** [nothing is in a good order; *syn* **untidy**]. I like to **draw** pictures.

KAZUO

EUN

I sometimes **make a note of** new words in my notebook, but I often **forget** [don't remember]. I usually write a translation, and sometimes I write example sentences as well.

ANDREY

I've got a notebook. I don't use it much but when I do, I try and list words by **topic**, so I put all the animals together, and all the clothes words together, and so on. I find it's easier to remember the words this way.

DONATA

I **note down** new words and phrases. Sometimes I **translate** them **into** Polish, and sometimes I write an **explanation** [a description of what something means] in English if it is not difficult. For example: kitten a very young cat

B Tips for your notebook

A **tip** is a piece of advice to help you. Here are some tips for your notebook.

- Put words from one **topic** in the same place, e.g. food in one place, clothes in another, etc. Don't **mix** them **up** [put them together with no order]. You can also have grammar topics, e.g. 'uncountable nouns', or a page for words that all have a connection, e.g. words and phrases that were all in a story you read in English. Some words and phrases will go in more than one topic.
- If you can't find a topic for a new word or phrase, e.g. *useful* or *in particular*, put them in a different place in your notebook, e.g. a page for each day or each week, or perhaps one page for every English lesson you have. Write the **date** clearly at the top, e.g. Monday 14th May.
- When you write down new vocabulary, write a translation if it is **necessary** [you need it; *opp* **unnecessary**], but also write the meaning in English if it is possible, or draw pictures.
- If possible, add synonyms, opposites, other parts of speech, etc. (See Unit 1.)
  awful *adj* = terrible (*syn* **dreadful**)
  enjoy *v* = like something and get pleasure from it *n* = **enjoyment** *adj* = **enjoyable**
- Example sentences help you with the grammar of a word, or with word partners (collocations).
  I **enjoy living** in a big city. (NOT I enjoy ~~to live~~ in a big city.) (See Units 87–8.)
  I **spent two weeks in** Rome. (NOT I ~~passed~~ two weeks in Rome. You *spend* time in a place.) (See Unit 74.)
- Remember, words often have more than one meaning that you need to know, e.g. a **tip** is also money that you give, for example, to a waiter for serving you in a restaurant.

Exercises

2.1 Organise the words into the topics below. One word can go in two different topics. Use a dictionary to help you.

~~diet~~	branch	lay the table	count *v*	dig *v*	ground	flour	add up
raw	leaf	minus	butcher	thousand	frozen	zero	butterfly

food	garden	numbers
~~diet~~		

2.2 Explain these words in English, or draw a picture, or if you think an explanation is too difficult and a drawing is not possible, write a translation instead.

1 raw not cooked
2 dig .....
3 butcher .....
4 leaf .....
5 flour .....
6 lay the table .....
7 add up .....
8 minus .....

2.3 What information could you include with these words? The answers are all on the opposite page.

1 forget opposite – remember
2 awful .....
3 necessary .....
4 translate .....
5 tip .....
6 enjoy .....

2.4 **Over to you**

Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

1 Look again at what the students said on the opposite page. What are the good things that they do? Underline them.
2 Do you do all of these things? .....
3 Is there anything you don't do now, but will do in the future? .....
.....
4 At the moment, which person's notebook is most like your notebook? .....
5 What are the most useful tips on the opposite page for you? .....
.....

Study unit 3

Using a dictionary

A What dictionaries do I need?

A **bilingual** dictionary [using two languages] is easy for you to understand, and quick and easy to use. A dictionary in English will give you reading practice in English and many more examples of how words are used. If possible, use both. These are good dictionaries in English for your level, and most of them are available online:

Cambridge Learner's Dictionary
Longman Active Study Dictionary
Oxford Wordpower Dictionary
Macmillan Essential Dictionary

B Information in dictionaries

If you **look up a word** [find a word in a dictionary] using the *Cambridge Learner's Dictionary*, the information is shown like this:

pronunciation using **phonemic symbols** (see page 247)

part of speech (= noun)

a **definition** explains the meaning

fixed **phrases** using the word are shown in **bold** (see Units 75–6)

fun[1] /fʌn/ *noun* [U] **1** enjoyment or pleasure, or something that gives you enjoyment or pleasure. *She's **great fun** to be with.* ○ ***Have fun!*** (= enjoy yourself) ○ *It's **no fun** having to work late every night.* **2 for fun/for the fun of it** for pleasure and not for any other reason **3 make fun of sb/sth** to make a joke about someone or something in an unkind way. *The other children at school used to make fun of his hair.*

[U] tells you that *fun* is uncountable (see Unit 86)

examples are in *italics*

bold *italics* show common word partners (see Unit 74)

3.1 **Correct the spelling mistakes. Use a dictionary to check your answers.**

1 allways always
2 realy .....
3 unfortunatly .....
4 expecially .....
5 cloths .....
6 confortable .....
7 accomodation .....
8 beautifull .....
9 unbeleivable .....
10 neccesary .....

3.2 **In the word *island* /'aɪlənd/, the letter 's' is silent (not pronounced). Use your dictionary to find the silent letters in these words.**

1 knee

2 comb

3 castle

4 salmon

5 receipt

C Defining words

'Defining words' are words that dictionaries use when they **define** [explain] the words in the dictionary. Some of these are quite common.

emphasise [give something more attention and importance], e.g. My teacher has always emphasised the importance of writing down new words in a notebook.
relating to or **connected to/with** [having a relationship with someone or something], e.g. *musical* is connected with / related to *music*
amount [how much there is of something], e.g. £5 million is a large amount of money.
official [done by the government or someone in authority], e.g. A passport is an official document.
behave [do or say things in a particular way], e.g. People can behave strangely when they're nervous.

3.3 Complete the dictionary definitions using words from the box.

~~connected with~~	emphasise	relating to	behave	official	amount

1 **industrial** /ɪn'dʌstriəl/ 1 *adjective* connected with industry
2 **sum** /sʌm/ *noun* [C] an ..... of money
3 **pretend** /prɪ'tend/ *verb* [I,T] to ..... as if something is true when it is not
4 **certificate** /sə'tɪfɪkət/ *noun* [C] an ..... document that gives details to show something is true
5 **not at all** /nɒt ət ɔ:l/ used instead of 'no' or 'not' to ..... what you are saying: *I'm not at all happy about it*
6 **legal** /'li:gəl/ *adjective* ..... the law

D Using a dictionary

- When you use a dictionary to check the meaning of a word, put a **tick** (✓) next to it. Each time you return to a page with a tick, see [find out] if you remember the word.
- When you meet a new word or phrase in a text, first try to **guess the meaning** [try to think of the meaning when you don't know it]. Then, use a dictionary to see if your **guess** was correct.
- Don't just read the dictionary definition. Example phrases and sentences show you how a word or phrase is used, and they help you to understand the meaning more clearly.
- If you look up a word in a bilingual dictionary and get two or three different translations, check these words in an English dictionary to see which translation is the best one for the situation.
- Remember that many words have more than one meaning. The first meaning in the dictionary is not always the one you want. You may need to read through the different meanings.

3.4 Answer the questions, and use an English dictionary to check the answers.

1 What does *puppy* mean? It's a very young dog.
2 Is the correct spelling *organize* or *organise*? .....
3 What part of speech is *extremely*? .....
4 What kind of noun is *advice*? .....
5 What preposition follows the verb *rely*? .....
6 Look up *friend*, and then the words in **bold** that are often used with it. Can you complete these phrases? *She's an* ..... *friend; he's my* ..... *friend; you* ..... *friends with people.*

3.5 Match the sentences on the right with the different meanings of *post* on the left.

post[1] /pəʊst/ *noun* **1** SYSTEM [no plural] *UK* (*US* mail) the system for sending letters, parcels, etc *Your letter is* ***in the post.*** ○ *I'm sending the documents* ***by post.*** ○ **2** LETTERS [u] *UK* (*US* mail) letters, parcels, etc that you send or receive *Has the* ***post arrived/come*** *yet?* ○ **3** JOB [c] *formal* a job *a part-time post* ○ *a teaching post* **4** POLE [c] a long, vertical piece of wood or metal fixed into the ground at one end *I found the dog tied to a post.*

1 He's applied for a post overseas.
2 Did you send the cheque by post?
3 I tied the flag to a post.
4 We haven't had any post yet.

Study unit 4

English language words

A Parts of speech

"I have a brown leather chair by the window, and I often sit there in the morning to read the paper."

In the sentence above, *I* is a **pronoun**; *chair, window, morning* and *paper* are all **nouns**; *have, sit* and *read* are **verbs**; *brown* and *leather* are **adjectives**; *often* is an **adverb**; *by* is a **preposition**; *the* is a **definite article**; *a* is an **indefinite article**; *and* is a **conjunction** or **link word.**

Here are two more examples:

"We saw an elephant at the zoo yesterday."
Elephant and *zoo* are nouns; *saw* is a verb; *at* is a preposition; *an* is an indefinite article; *the* is a definite article.

"It was a cold night, so I walked quickly."
Was and *walked* are verbs; *cold* is an adjective; *night* is a noun; *quickly* is an adverb; *so* is a link word.

B Grammar

When you are learning vocabulary, you need to know certain things about different words; for example, if nouns are **countable**, e.g. *books, apples, chairs*; or **uncountable**, e.g. *information* (NOT ~~informations~~), *advice* (NOT ~~advices~~). (See Unit 86.)
With verbs, you need to know if they are **regular**, e.g. *work, live*, etc; or **irregular**, e.g. *go/went, take/took*. You will also need to learn the grammar of **phrasal verbs**, e.g. *take something off, wake up*. (See Units 79–80.)
You also need to learn certain groups of words as **phrases**, e.g. *at the moment, never mind, see you later*. (See Units 75–6.)

C Word building

In the word *uncomfortable*, *un-* is a **prefix**, and *-able* is a **suffix**. Other common prefixes include *in-* and *dis-*, e.g. *incorrect* and *dislike*. Common suffixes include *-ment* and *-ive*, e.g. *improvement* and *attractive*. (See Units 69–71.)

D Pronunciation

Dictionaries show the pronunciation of a word using **phonemic symbols**, e.g. *book* /bʊk/, *before* /bɪˈfɔː/, *cinema* /ˈsɪnəmə/.
Every word has one or more **syllables**, e.g. *book* has one syllable, *before* has two syllables, *cinema* has three syllables.
It is important to know which syllable to **stress**, e.g. on *before* it is the second syllable (beˈfore), on *cinema* it is the first syllable (ˈcinema). The vertical mark ˈ shows where the stressed syllable begins.

E Punctuation

Every sentence must begin with a **capital letter** and end with a **full stop**. Some sentences have a **comma**, which often shows a **pause** [when you stop reading or speaking for a short time] in a long sentence. Did you also know that a question must end with a **question mark**?

Exercises

4.1 Put the words into the correct columns.

~~noun~~	comma	phonemic symbol	adverb	stress
question mark	syllable	preposition	full stop	adjective

parts of speech	punctuation	pronunciation
noun		

4.2 There is one word missing in each line of the text. Where does the missing word go? What could it be? What part of speech is it?

Last year I went to for my holiday. I spent the first week Seville staying with a couple of friends, and then I a train to Barcelona, where I spent another ten days. It is beautiful city and I had a marvellous time. I stayed in a very hotel right in the centre, but I didn't mind spending a lot money because it was a wonderful and it was very convenient. My brother was the person who recommended it; he goes Spain a lot and he stays anywhere else. I may go back next year if have enough time.

1 Spain (noun)
2 .....
3 .....
4 .....
5 .....
6 .....
7 .....
8 .....
9 .....
10 .....

4.3 Answer the questions.

1 What type of verb is ***break***? an irregular verb
2 What does a sentence begin with? .....
3 What do you put at the end of every sentence? .....
4 What's missing here. .....
5 What shows you there is a pause in the middle of a long sentence? .....
6 What type of noun is ***butter***? .....
7 What type of verb are ***pick somebody up***, and ***grow up***? .....
8 What are ***full stop*** and ***comma*** examples of? .....
9 How do dictionaries show the pronunciation of a word? .....
10 Is the 'a' in ***phrase*** pronounced the same as ***can***, ***can't*** or ***late***? .....

4.4 Mark the stress on each word. How many syllables are there?

'English 2	informal	opposite	syllable
decide	adjective	education	pronunciation

4.5 Look at these words and answer the questions.

cheap	dangerous	kind	lucky

1 What part of speech are these words? adjectives
2 Can you change the first two words into adverbs? ....
3 Is the pronunciation of *kind* like *wind* (noun) or *find* (verb)? .....
4 What prefix do you need to form the opposite of the last two words? .....
5 What suffix makes a noun from *kind*? .....

5 Country, nationality and language

A Who speaks what where?

country	nationality	language
Australia	Australian	English
Brazil	Brazilian	Portuguese
China	Chinese	Mandarin (and Cantonese)
Egypt	Egyptian	Arabic
France	French	French
Germany	German	German
Greece	Greek	Greek
Israel	Israeli	Hebrew
Italy	Italian	Italian
Japan	Japanese	Japanese
(South) Korea	Korean	Korean
Poland	Polish	Polish
Russia	Russian	Russian
Saudi Arabia	Saudi Arabian	Arabic
Spain	Spanish	Spanish
Switzerland	Swiss	Swiss-German, French, Italian
Thailand	Thai	Thai
Turkey	Turkish	Turkish
the UK (United Kingdom)*	British	English
the USA (United States of America)	American	English

*the UK (England, Scotland,Wales and Northern Ireland)

I **come from** Argentina, so I'm **Argentinian** and my **first language** is Spanish. The **capital** is Buenos Aires, which has a **population** of more than 10 million people.

Common mistakes

He's English. (NOT He's ~~english~~); We ate **French** food. (NOT We ate ~~France~~ food.)

I went to **the USA**. (NOT I went ~~to USA~~.) I also visited **the UK**. (NOT I also ~~visited UK~~.)

B Parts of the world

The **continents** in the world are **Europe, Africa, Asia,** North America, **South America,** Australia [Australia and New Zealand] and Antarctica.

We also use these terms for different parts of the world:
the Middle East (e.g. United Arab Emirates, Saudi Arabia), **the Far East** (e.g. Thailand, Japan), **the Caribbean** (e.g. Jamaica, Barbados), **Scandinavia** (Sweden, Norway, Denmark, Finland).

C The people

When we are talking about people from a particular country, we add 's' to nationalities ending in '-i' or '-(i)an', but we need the definite article (the) for most others.

Brazilians/Russians
Thais/Israelis
} are ...

The British / The French
The Swiss / The Japanese
} are ...

With both groups we can also use the word 'people', e.g. Brazilian people, British people, etc.

Exercises

5.1 **Answer the questions.**

1 What nationality are people from Poland? Polish
2 What nationality are people from Thailand? .....
3 What language is spoken in Spain? .....
4 Where do people speak Hebrew? .....
5 Where do people speak Mandarin? .....
6 What language is spoken in Brazil? .....
7 What language is spoken in Egypt? .....
8 What nationality are people from Germany? .....
9 Write down three countries whose first language is English. .....
10 Write down three languages spoken in Switzerland. .....

5.2 **What parts of the world are these countries in? Write the continent, e.g. Europe, or the area, e.g. the Far East.**

1 Germany Europe
2 Japan .....
3 Saudi Arabia .....
4 Italy .....
5 Jamaica .....
6 Argentina .....

5.3 **Underline the main stress in the words in the box, and practise saying them. Use the pronunciation in the index to help you.**

Brazilian	Japan	Egyptian	Arabic	Scandinavia
Chinese	Portuguese	Australia	Saudi Arabia	

5.4 **Write the answers.**

1 Bangkok is the capital of Thailand.
2 Ankara is the capital of .....
3 Seoul is the capital of .....
4 Moscow is the capital of .....
5 Buenos Aires is the capital of .....
6 Athens is the capital of .....

5.5 **Complete the sentences with the name of the people from the country on the right.**

1 I've worked a lot with the French.
2 I know lots of .....
3 We do a lot of business with .....
4 I used to know a lot of .....
5 I have always found ..... very friendly.
6 People often say that ..... are very reserved.
7 ..... are very organised.
8 I met a lot of ..... on my trip to Moscow.

FRANCE
GERMANY
JAPAN
ISRAEL
BRAZIL
BRITAIN
SWITZERLAND
RUSSIA

5.6 **Over to you**

Answer the questions for you, then ask a friend – if possible, someone from a different country – and write their answers.

1 What's your nationality? .....
2 What's the capital city and population of your country? .....
3 What's your first language? .....
4 What other languages do you speak? .....
5 Which countries have you visited? .....
6 Which countries would you like to visit? .....

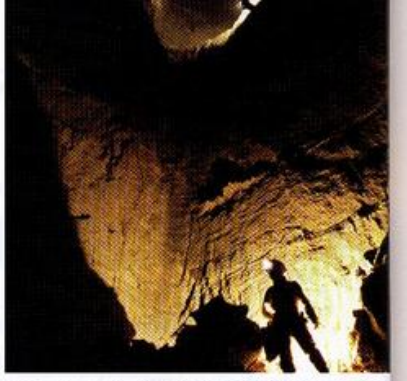
6 The physical world

A Facts

Did you know ...

- Two thirds of the **surface**[1] of the **Earth**[2] is **covered in** water.
- El Azizia in Libya is the hottest place **in the world**, where **temperatures** of **over**[3] 57 °C (57 **degrees** Celsius) have been recorded.
- The coldest place **on earth** is probably Vostok in Antarctica, which reached a temperature of **minus** 89 °C.
- The Krubera-Voronja **Cave** near the Black Sea coast in Georgia, is the deepest cave in the world. It is **over** 2000 metres deep.
- The Beijing–Hangzhou Grand **Canal** is the longest canal in the world. It is 1,794 kilometres long.
- The highest **waterfall** in the world is the Salto Angel Falls in Venezuela. It is 993 metres high.
- The Amazon Rainforest is the largest **rainforest** in the world, **covering** 40% of the South American continent.
- The Pacific is the largest **ocean** in the world, and is nearly twice the size of the Atlantic Ocean.

[1] the top or outside part
[2] the planet we live on
[3] more than



The Krubera-Voronja **Cave**

Beijing-Hangshou Grand **Canal**

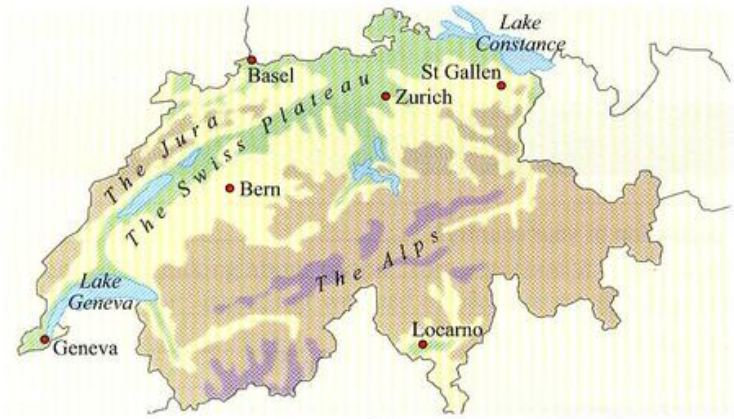
The Salto Angel **Waterfall**

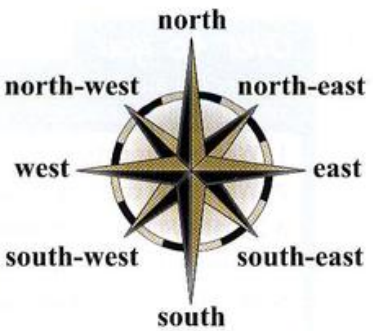
Language help

Cover can mean that something is over something else, e.g. *The surface was **covered in** water; The ground was **covered with** snow.* Cover can also refer to the size of something, e.g. *The Amazon rainforest **covers** 40% of South America*, or the distance you travel, e.g. *We **covered** ten miles in one day.*

B Geography

Switzerland **consists of** [is made or formed from] three main geographical **regions** [areas in a country or the world]: The Swiss Plateau, The Jura, and The Alps. Switzerland is a land of **contrasts** [big differences], with completely different **landscapes** [the appearance of an area of land]. The **climate** [weather conditions] can also change within a very short **distance**. For example, Ascona **in the south** has an almost Mediterranean climate, but the Dufour Peak in Valais has a very cold climate. The **distance** between the two is just 70 kilometres.





Exercises

6.1 **Look at the map of Switzerland and complete the sentences.**

1 Zurich is in the north.
2 The Jura mountains are .....
3 Geneva is .....
4 St Gallen is .....
5 Basel is .....
6 Lake Constance is .....
7 Locarno is .....

6.2 **Test your knowledge. Can you complete these sentences without looking at the opposite page?**

1 Two thirds of the surface of the Earth is covered in water.
2 Vostok in Antarctica is the .....
3 El Azizia in Libya is the .....
4 The Krubera-Voronja ..... is the deepest in the world.
5 The Beijing–Hangzhou Grand ..... is the longest in the world.
6 At 993 metres the Salto Angel Falls is the highest ..... in the world.
7 The Amazon is the largest .....
8 The largest ..... in the world is the Pacific.
9 The ..... we live on is called Earth.

6.3 **Complete the sentences.**

1 Mount Everest is the highest mountain in the world.
2 In the autumn, the ground is ..... in leaves that have fallen off the trees.
3 You find this animal in the semi-desert ..... of Australia.
4 Brazil is a country of ..... : large empty areas inland, and cities near the coast.
5 The Amazon rainforest ..... 40% of the South American continent.
6 Mountains and lakes are typical of the ..... in Switzerland.
7 It was a freezing night. The ..... was well below zero.
8 Switzerland ..... of three main geographical regions.
9 It takes the moon just under 28 days to go round the .....
10 People say Cape Town in South Africa has a wonderful ..... : sunny for much of the year, and never too hot or very cold.
11 The ..... from London to Paris is 340 kilometres; that's less than the ..... from London to Edinburgh.
12 When the temperature fell to ..... 10 ..... celsius, all the schools in the town closed.

6.4 **Over to you**

Answer the questions about your country and your region.

1 What are the highest and lowest temperatures?
2 Do you like the climate?
3 Are there any regions which have a very different landscape from the rest of the country?
4 Do you have any long canals, or famous caves or waterfalls?
5 How would you describe the landscape in the region where you live?
6 What's the distance from the place where you live to the next big town?

7 Weather

A Weather conditions

Notice that it is very common to form adjectives by adding *-y*.

noun	adjective
fog	**foggy**
cloud	**cloudy**
the cold	cold
ice	**icy**

noun	adjective	verb
sun	**sunny**	the sun is **shining**
wind	windy	the wind is **blowing**
snow		it's **snowing**
rain	**wet**	it's raining

There are common word partners to describe weather conditions:

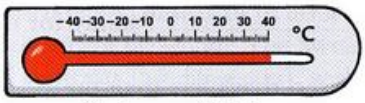
It was very cloudy this morning, but the **sun came out** after lunch. [appeared]
The accident happened in **thick fog**. [bad fog]
We had some **heavy rain** at the weekend. [a lot of rain; *opp* **light rain**]
There was a **strong wind** when we were on the boat. [a lot of wind]
The **wind** has **blown** all the apples off the tree.
It rained in the morning, but the **sky** was **clear** by lunchtime. [no clouds]
It's been **extremely cold** today. [very; also **extremely hot/windy**]

B Rain and storms

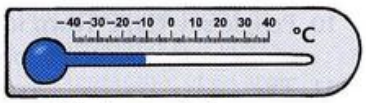
For heavy rain we often use the verb **pour**, e.g. **pour with rain**. For short periods of light or heavy rain, we use the noun **shower**. A **storm** is heavy rain with strong winds.
It **poured with rain** this afternoon.
Look, it's really **pouring (with rain)** now.
We had a couple of **heavy/light showers** this morning.

A period of hot weather sometimes ends with a **thunderstorm**.
First it becomes very **humid** [the air feels very warm and wet],
then you hear **thunder** and see **lightning**, and it's followed by heavy rain.

C Temperature*



40 degrees Celsius



10 degrees below zero

boiling [very hot]	hot	warm	not very warm (also **cool**)	cold (also **chilly**)	**freezing** [very cold]

* how hot or cold it is

Language help

Cool can either mean slightly cold in a negative way, e.g. *We've had a cool summer*; or slightly cold in a pleasant way, e.g. *The water in the pool was lovely and cool.*

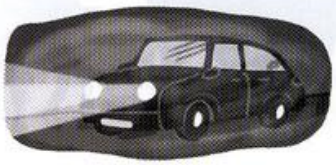
Mild is often used in a positive way to describe weather that is not as cold as usual, e.g. *It's been a mild winter.*

Exercises

7.1 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

1 a sunny	[e]	a with rain
2 heavy	[ ]	b fog
3 a strong	[ ]	c sky
4 a clear	[ ]	d and lightning
5 pour	[ ]	e day
6 thick	[ ]	f rain
7 thunder	[ ]	g wind

7.2 Write short sentences to describe the weather conditions in each picture.



1 It's foggy.

3 .....

5 .....

2 .....

4 .....

6 .....

7.3 True or false? If a sentence is false, change it to make it true.

1 When it's foggy, you need sunglasses. False. When it's foggy you can't see very well.
2 It's nice to sit outside when it's freezing. .....
3 If you're boiling, you might enjoy a swim. .....
4 A shower is a type of wind. .....
5 If it's chilly, you may want to put on a coat. .....
6 If it's humid, the air will be very dry. .....
7 A mild winter means it is colder than usual. .....
8 If it rains, the road will be wet. .....

7.4 Complete the sentences.

1 We had really thick fog this morning.
2 I don't mind wet weather if it stays quite mild. I just hate the ..... .
3 We had a heavy ..... this morning, but it only lasted a few minutes.
4 It was ..... with rain when we left the house.
5 It was minus ten ..... in New York yesterday. It is often below ..... here in winter. It's ..... cold!
6 It's getting very humid. We might have a ..... later.
7 It was cloudy and grey this morning, but when the sun ..... out it was quite hot.
8 What's the ..... today? It feels much colder than yesterday.
9 It was hot sitting in the sun, but under the beach umbrella it was nice and ..... .

7.5

Over to you

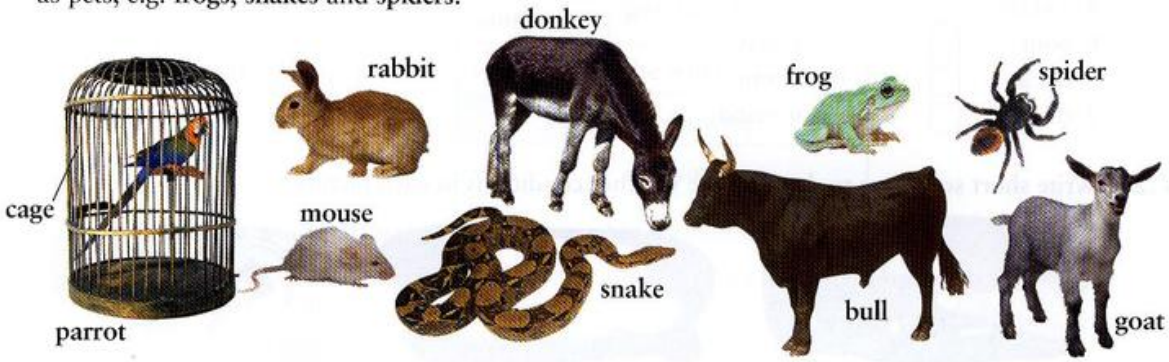
Do you have these weather conditions in your country? When do you have them?

humid weather | storms and thunderstorms | strong winds
thick fog | temperatures below zero | showers

8 Animals and insects

A Pets and farm animals

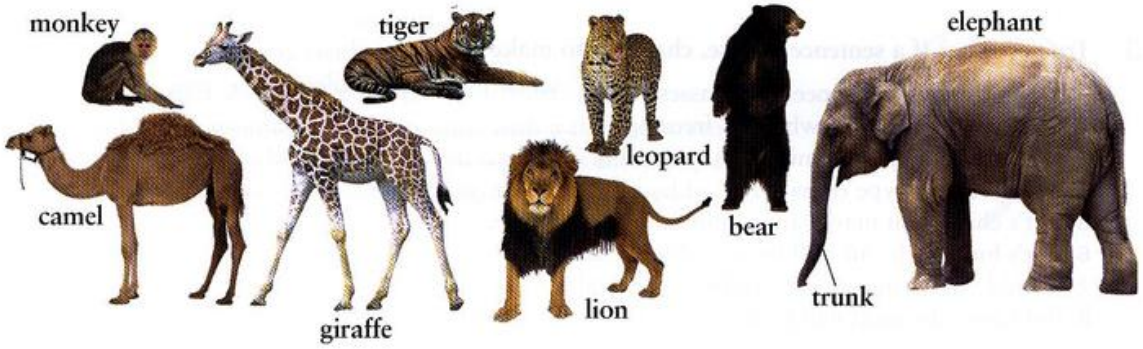
In the UK, many people **keep pets** [animals that live with people]. The most common are dogs and cats, but people also keep birds, e.g. **parrots**, that are usually in a **cage**. Children sometimes keep **mice** (*sing* **mouse**) and **rabbits**. Some people keep more unusual animals as pets, e.g. **frogs**, **snakes** and **spiders**.



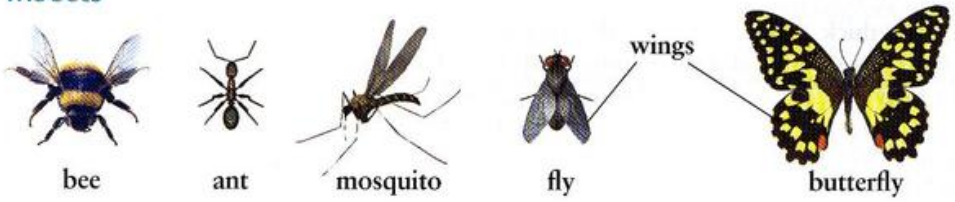
Farms in the UK may have sheep, pigs, cows, horses, **donkeys**, chickens, **goats** and a **bull**.

B Wild animals

The pictures show a number of **wild animals** [animals that normally live in natural conditions]. If you are lucky, you may see these animals **in the wild** [living free], but you will probably see them in a **zoo**. Some of these animals, for example tigers, are now **quite rare** [not often seen or found]. It is important that we **protect** [keep safe] these **endangered animals**.



C Insects



D Sea creatures

Many different **creatures** [living things, e.g. animals] live in the sea.

Exercises

8.1 **Put the words into the correct columns.**

~~horse~~	monkey	goat	fly	bull	bee	elephant	pig
mosquito	tiger	donkey	camel	ant	leopard	butterfly	

farm animals	wild animals	insects
horse		

8.2 **Look at the underlined letters in each pair of words. Is the pronunciation the same or different? Use the index to help you.**

1 whale water different
2 cat camel same
3 bear bee .....
4 leopard mosquito .....
5 lion tiger .....
6 goat giraffe .....
7 spider wild .....
8 camel snake .....
9 leopard shark .....
10 monkey frog .....

8.3 **Complete the sentences.**

1 Cats and dogs are the most common pets in the UK.
2 I've only seen ..... animals in zoos or on TV.
3 I don't like keeping birds in a ..... ; they need more space.
4 I hate ants and mosquitos. In fact, I hate all ..... .
5 It's hard to see tigers in the wild because they are now ..... .
6 Some animals are disappearing, so we must ..... them.

8.4 **Start each sentence with a suitable creature from the opposite page.**

1 Sharks ..... can swim very long distances.
2 ..... are very clever and are similar to humans.
3 ..... can travel through the desert for long distances without water.
4 ..... can be 25 metres in length.
5 ..... can eat leaves from tall trees when they are standing on the ground.
6 ..... sometimes change their skin several times a year.
7 ..... can pick things up with their trunk.
8 ..... are kept as pets, usually in cages, and some can even talk!

8.5

Over to you

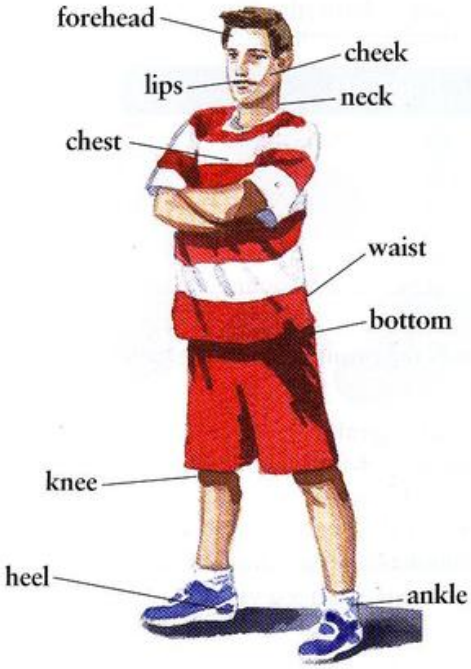
Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

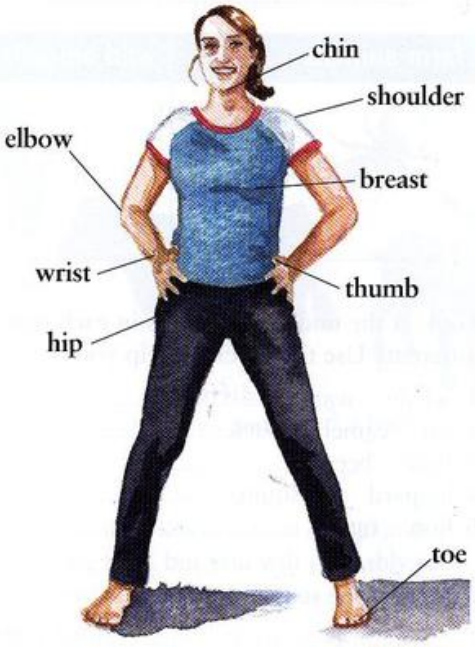
1 Have you got any pets? What pets?
2 Have you ever seen animals in the wild? What did you see? Where?
3 How do you feel about birds in cages and wild animals in zoos?
4 Are you frightened of any creatures, e.g. mice?

9 The body and movement

A Parts of the body

The outer part of the body is covered in **skin**. Too much sun is bad for your skin.





B Movements with your mouth, face and head

People **breathe** through their nose or mouth. You **breathe in** and **out** about 12–15 times a minute.
People **smile** when they're happy, and sometimes **smile at** people to be polite.
People **laugh at** things which are funny.
People sometimes **cry** if they're very unhappy, or receive bad news.
People in some countries **nod their head** [move it up and down] to mean 'yes', and **shake their head** [move it from side to side] for 'no'.
People often **yawn** when they're tired, and sometimes when they're bored.

C Common expressions

shake hands with someone

comb your hair

blow your nose

fold your arms

wave to somebody

Exercises

9.1 Find ten more words for parts of the body, either across or down.

T	H	U	K	C	A	P
O	N	H	N	H	N	I
E	C	H	E	E	K	O
H	I	P	E	S	L	C
E	A	N	K	T	E	H
E	L	B	O	W	E	I
L	I	P	S	K	I	N

toe ....

....

....

....

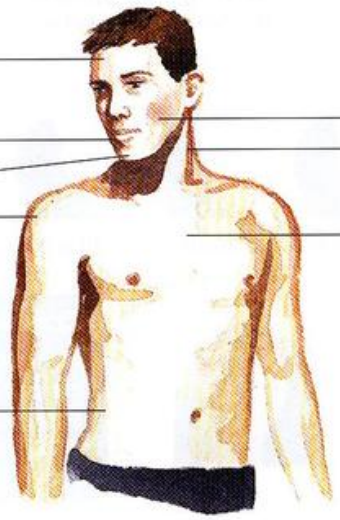
....

.....

9.2 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

1 shake	e	a your hair
2 wave		b your nose
3 comb		c to somebody
4 fold		d your head
5 blow		e hands
6 nod		f your arms

9.3 Label the picture.



1 forehead .....
2 .....
3 .....
4 .....
5 .....
6 .....
7 .....
8 .....

9.4 What do these actions often mean? (There may be several possible answers.)

1 People often smile when they're happy.
2 They often breathe quickly after .....
3 They laugh .....
4 They may wave to somebody .....
5 They blow their nose .....
6 They shake their head .....
7 And nod their head .....
8 They cry .....
9 They yawn .....

10 Describing appearance

A Describing beauty

Your **appearance** is the way you look, and we sometimes use different words to talk about **beauty** in men and women.

WOMEN can be **attractive** or **good-looking** [nice to look at], and we often use **pretty** [attractive] to describe a girl. We use beautiful or **gorgeous** for women who are very attractive.

MEN can be attractive and good-looking, but also **handsome**. If men are very attractive, we can say they are gorgeous or very good-looking, but not usually beautiful.

Tom has become quite **handsome**.
Sammy was very **pretty** when she was younger.
Bella looks **gorgeous** in that dress.
They're a very **good-looking** couple.

Language help

The opposite of beautiful is **ugly**, but it is not very polite to describe someone as ugly; **ordinary** [not special or different] is more polite. It also isn't polite to say that someone is fat; **overweight** is more polite.

B Size

We can talk about a person's **height** [how tall or short they are] and their **weight** [how heavy they are], e.g. *I'm **roughly*** [about; *syn* **approximately**] *one metre eighty (tall), and I **weigh** just under eighty kilograms*. If someone is not tall or short, you can describe them as **medium height**. If a person is very similar to most other people in height and weight, you can say they are **average**.

A: How tall is Kiki?
B: **Medium height**, I'd say.
A: Is Marco quite big?
B: No, about **average**.

C Hair

blonde (or **blond**)

fair

brown

dark

black

straight

wavy

curly

Common mistakes

Remember that 'hair' is uncountable, e.g. She's got straight **hair**. (NOT She's got straight ~~hairs~~.)
Also: She's got long black hair. (NOT She's got ~~a~~ long black hair.)

D Talking about someone's appearance

A: **What does** Carla's boyfriend **look like?** [Can you describe his appearance?]
B: He's blond, and quite good-looking.
A: Is he tall?
B: Er, **tallish** [quite tall], but he's got **broad** shoulders [wide; *opp* **narrow**]. He looks very **athletic** [strong, healthy and often good at sports]. I think he does a lot of sport.
A: Is he quite **smart?** [clean, tidy and stylish]
B: Yeah, he **dresses** quite **well.** [the clothes he wears are quite nice]

Language help

We can use the suffix **-ish** at the end of some adjectives to mean 'quite', e.g. *She's got **longish** hair*, and at the end of some numbers to mean 'more or less', e.g. *He's **twentyish***.

Exercises

10.1 Complete the sentences.

1 She's got straight hair .
2 Kanya is very good- .
3 Beata's got blonde .
4 Her brother's got very broad .
5 That's a nice suit: Jack's very today.
6 I would say he was medium .
7 Alexandra's hair is fair but her brother's is quite .

10.2 Find six more pairs of words in the box. Why are they pairs?

~~attractive~~	height	average	~~good-looking~~	weight	narrow	roughly
tall	curly	approximately	medium	wavy	broad	weigh

Attractive and good-looking are similar in meaning.

10.3 Complete the dialogues using words that are similar to the underlined words.

1 A: She's good-looking.
B: Yes, very attractive .
2 A: Marie-José looked beautiful last night.
B: Yes, absolutely .
3 A: Her boyfriend's quite good-looking.
B: Yes, he is rather .
4 A: Angelo looks very strong and healthy.
B: Yes, I think he's very .
5 A: That little girl is attractive, isn't she?
B: Yes, she's very .
6 A: Danny's getting fat.
B: Yes, he is a bit .
7 A: Did you think he was a bit ugly?
B: Yes, he was quite .
8 A: Is she about 25?
B: Yes, .
9 A: He's just above average height.
B: Yes, he is , isn't he?

10.4 **Over to you**

Answer the questions.

1 How tall are you?
2 What's your hair like?
3 Think about one of your best friends. What does he/she look like?

11 Describing character

A What are you like?

Describe your character[1]

Put a circle round the number that describes you. For example, in the first line 1 = very positive, 3 = not very positive or negative, 5 = very negative.

I think I'm very **positive**[2].	1	2	3	4	5	I'm quite a **negative** person.
I'm usually **reliable**[3].	1	2	3	4	5	I'm quite **unreliable**.
I'm quite **confident**[4].	1	2	3	4	5	I'm quite **shy**[5].
I'm **hard-working**[6].	1	2	3	4	5	I'm quite **lazy**.
I have a good **sense of humour**[7].	1	2	3	4	5	I'm usually quite **serious**[8].
I'm usually quite **patient**[9].	1	2	3	4	5	I'm quite **impatient**.

[1] what you are like as a person
[2] believe that good things will happen
[3] can be trusted to do what people expect you to do
[4] feeling sure about yourself and your abilities
[5] not confident, especially about meeting or talking to new people
[6] putting a lot of effort into your work and spending a lot of time on it
[7] the ability to laugh and understand when something is funny
[8] a serious person is quiet and doesn't laugh very much
[9] able to stay calm and not get angry, especially when things take a lot of time

Common mistakes

A: What's he like? (NOT ~~How~~ is he like?)
B: He's very nice. (NOT He's ~~like~~ very nice.)

B Opposites

positive	negative
generous [happy to give more money or help than is usual]	**mean**
honest [an honest person tells the truth]	**dishonest**
clever, intelligent [able to learn and understand things quickly]	**stupid**
calm [relaxed and not worried or frightened]	**nervous, anxious**

Language help

We use **kind** to describe someone who wants to help people a lot, and **nice, friendly** or **pleasant** for someone who is happy to talk to people. The opposites are **unkind, unfriendly** and **unpleasant.**

C Describing a friend

"The first thing I would say about my best friend is that she's very **sensible**[1]. I've never known Irma to do anything **silly**[2], and I know I can always **trust**[3] her. She's also very **creative**[4]; she makes things, and she's a very **talented**[5] artist. I **wish**[6] I had her **talent**."

[1] practical; doesn't do stupid things
[2] not sensible, a bit stupid
[3] be sure that she is honest
[4] good at thinking of new ideas and using her imagination
[5] has a natural ability
[6] I would like to have her talent but I haven't got it.

Exercises

11.1 Find five pairs of opposites and put them into the correct columns.

~~nice~~	mean	sensible	lazy	calm	generous
unpleasant	hard-working	silly	nervous		

positive	negative
nice	

11.2 Write the opposites using the correct prefix.

1 unkind
2 .....friendly
3 .....pleasant
4 .....patient
5 .....honest
6 .....reliable

11.3 Describe the person in the sentences, in one word.

1 My brother is in the office from 8 am to 6 pm every day. hard-working
2 He has never bought me a drink in ten years. .....
3 She often promises to do things but sometimes she forgets. .....
4 My teacher explains things again and never gets angry. .....
5 Agnetta finds it difficult to meet people and talk to strangers. .....
6 Brett is practical and doesn't do anything stupid. .....
7 Our teacher is nice, but he's quiet and he doesn't laugh a lot. .....
8 Anya is very relaxed and doesn't seem to worry about things. .....
9 My boss is really good at using his imagination to think of new ideas. .....
10 Jessica can play several musical instruments. .....

11.4 Complete the sentences.

1 My sister can't wait for anything; she's so impatient.....
2 I get very ..... before exams; I need to try and relax a bit more.
3 I ..... I could paint as well as your brother; he's so creative.
4 Beata hasn't done a thing since she's been here. Honestly, she's so ..... .
5 I always have a laugh with my cousin – he's got a great sense of ..... .
6 My younger sister is able to understand new ideas so quickly; she's very ..... .
7 If Sarah says she'll do it, then she'll do it. I ..... her completely.
8 He'd like to be relaxed and confident, but it's just not part of his ..... .
9 He failed his exams, but he isn't ..... . He just didn't do any work.
10 Paola helped me bake some cakes last week; she's very ..... .

11.5 **Over to you**

Complete the quiz on the opposite page for yourself. From all the words on the opposite page, which one would you most like to be, and which is the one you would hate to be? If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

12 Feelings

A How do you feel?

Language help

We use **emotion** and **feeling(s)** for something which someone feels strongly about, e.g. love, hate or anger. **Emotions** are part of our character, e.g. *Timo is a very **emotional** person.* [shows his feelings easily] **Feeling** is often plural, e.g. *She doesn't like talking about her **feelings**.*

Well, obviously I'm very **proud**[1] of my son's success, but I'm a bit **disappointed**[2] that the local paper hasn't shown more interest in the story.

[1] feeling good because you (or someone you know) has done something well
[2] unhappy because someone or something was not as good as you hoped, or because something did not happen

The politicians seem **confused**[3] about what to do, so I'm not **hopeful**[4] that things will improve.

[3] not able to think clearly or understand something
[4] feeling positive about a future situation

We were **curious**[5] to see what all the noise was about, but I felt **anxious**[6] when I saw how angry the men were, and really **scared**[7] when they started coming towards us.

[5] wanting to know or learn about something
[6] worried
[7] afraid; *syn* **frightened**

I think Tom ended the relationship because his girlfriend was getting **jealous**[8], but now he's quite **upset**[9].

[8] unhappy and angry because someone you love seems too interested in another person
[9] unhappy because something unpleasant has happened

Language help

adjective	noun
proud	**pride**
jealous	**jealousy**
curious	**curiosity**

adjective	noun
disappointed	**disappointment**
confused	**confusion**
anxious	**anxiety**

B The effect of the weather on our feelings

Why do people say they feel more **cheerful** [happy] when the sun shines, and **miserable** [unhappy] when it's raining? Why do some people suffer from SAD (seasonal affective disorder), which makes them feel **depressed** [unhappy, often for a long time, and without hope for the future] during long dark winters? Can the weather really affect our **mood** [the way we feel at a particular time], or is it just in our imaginations?

C The effect of colour on our emotions

Colour can have an **effect** on our mood, but how do specific colours relate to our emotions?

RED can make us feel **energetic**[1], but it can also indicate **anger**[2]. PINK though, is softer and more about maternal love and **caring for**[3] people. GREEN is associated with nature and is good for people suffering from **stress**[4]. BLUE is relaxing and helps us to be **creative**[5], but too much dark blue can make us depressed.

[1] wanting to be busy and doing a lot of things
[2] being angry
[3] looking after someone, especially someone young or old
[4] feelings of worry caused by difficult situations such as problems at work
[5] good at thinking of new ideas or using our imagination

Exercises

12.1 Cover the opposite page. Complete the tables.

adjective	noun
angry	anger
jealous	
confused	
	pride

adjective	noun
disappointed	
	curiosity
anxious	
	emotion

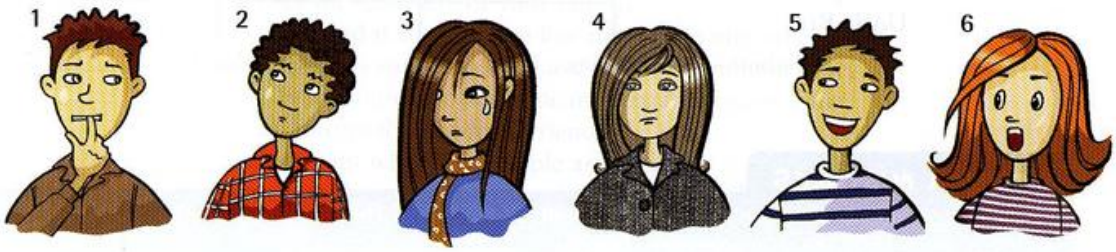
12.2 Find the best sentence ending on the right for each of the sentence beginnings on the left.

1 He was very anxious when [c]
2 He was very jealous when [ ]
3 He was very scared when [ ]
4 He was very proud when [ ]
5 He was very upset when [ ]
6 He was very miserable when [ ]

a he heard his aunt had died.
b his father appeared on TV with the Prime Minister.
c his 14-year-old daughter didn't get home until 2 am.
d he saw the man coming towards him with a knife.
e he was ill.
f his best friend went out with the girl he really liked.

12.3 Match the words and faces.

anxious ...1... scared ..... cheerful ..... upset ..... confused ..... depressed .....



12.4 Complete the sentences.

1 My aunt had to ...care... for her elderly mother for years.
2 I can't tell whether Benita is happy or not; she never shows her ..... .
3 I'm much more ..... in the mornings. By the afternoon I feel tired.
4 Weather has a big ..... on the way I feel.
5 He's been under a lot of ..... recently because of the amount of work he has to do.
6 Brendan's cheerful one minute and miserable the next; his ..... changes all the time.
7 It's been a depressing month, but I'm ..... things will get better next month.
8 I don't like walking home in the dark. I get very ..... .

12.5 *Over to you*

Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

1 Does colour or the weather have an effect on your emotions? How?
2 Do you ever suffer from stress? Why?
3 Does your mood change a lot from day to day? Why?
4 Do you feel more energetic at certain times of the day? Why?

13 Family and friends

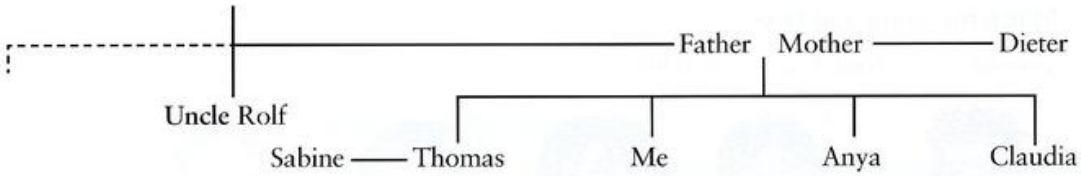
A Relatives*

"My father died when I was nine, and so my mother was a **widow**[1] with four young children. She **remarried** five years later, so now I have a **stepfather**. As he is not my real father, I call him by his first name, which is Dieter. I've got an **elder**[2] brother called Thomas and two younger sisters, Anya and Claudia, who are **twins**[3]. We're a **close family**[4].

My mother is an **only child**[5], but I've got two uncles on my father's side. One is married with two children, and the other is married with three children, so **altogether** I have five **cousins**. I **get on well with**[6] Uncle Rolf, and he always tells me I'm his favourite **nephew**. Of his **nieces**, I think he likes Anya best.

Recently my brother Thomas **got married**. His wife's name is Sabine, so I now have a **sister-in-law**[7] as well."

* members of your family; *syn* **relations**
[1] a woman whose husband has died
[2] older
[3] two children born to one mother at the same time
[4] a family who like each other and stay together a lot
[5] without brothers or sisters
[6] have a good relationship with
[7] (also **mother/brother/son-in-law**, etc.)



Common mistakes

It's more common and more natural to say '**Thomas's** wife' (NOT ~~the wife of Thomas~~) or '**Anna's** younger sister' (NOT ~~the younger sister of Anna~~).

B Friends

"My **best friend** is Florian, an **old** school **friend**[1]. We **got to know each other**[2] when we were in the same class at school. We've been **mates**[3] **ever since**[4], and our **friendship** is very important to both of us. He spends a lot of time with my family, and his **current**[5] girlfriend is actually one of Thomas's ex-girlfriends. But we all get on really well."

[1] someone you have known for a long time
[2] met and became friends
[3] friends; *infml*
[4] from that time until now
[5] the one he has now

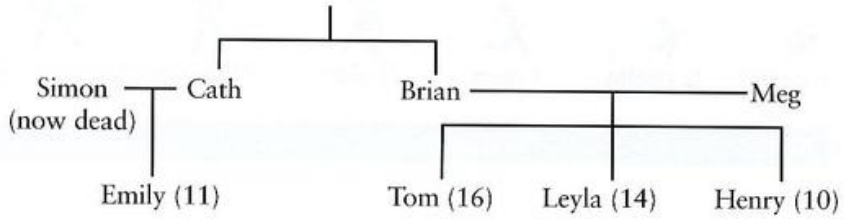
Florian

Language help

We use the prefix **ex-** for a relationship we had in the past but do not have now, e.g. *The children stay with my* ***ex-****husband at the weekend; I saw an* ***ex-****girlfriend of mine yesterday.*

Exercises

13.1 **Look at the family tree, then complete the sentences below.**



1 Simon died two years ago, so Cath is a widow .
2 Leyla is Cath's ..... .
3 Tom is Cath's ..... .
4 Cath is Meg's ..... .
5 Simon was Brian's ..... .
6 Tom is Leyla's ..... brother.
7 Emily is Leyla's ..... .
8 Emily is an ..... child.

13.2 **Which words are being defined?**

1 Your current ..... boyfriend is the one that you have now.
2 ..... means get married again.
3 ..... are all the members of your family.
4 Your ..... friend is the one you like more than any other.
5 An ..... friend is someone you have known for a long time.
6 ..... are two children born to one mother at the same time.
7 ..... is an informal word for a friend.
8 ..... is the noun when two people are friends.
9 Your ..... is the man who is married to your mother but is not your father.

13.3 **Complete the text.**

"I was still going out with James when I met my husband, Ben. We [1] got to know ..... each other because we went to the same gym twice a week. We went out with each other for about 18 months, and we got [2] ..... three years ago, so [3] ..... we've been a couple for almost five years. We've continued to go to the gym ever [4] ..... we got married, and I still quite often see James when we're there. It's nice if you can still [5] ..... with an [6] .....-boyfriend or -girlfriend."

13.4 **Over to you**

Answer the questions for you, then, if possible, ask a friend and write their answers.

1 Are you an only child? If not, do you have elder brothers or sisters? .....
2 Do you get on well with other members of your family? .....
3 Are you a close family? .....
4 Who was the last person in your family to get married? When? .....
5 Who's your best friend? .....
6 How long have you known him/her? .....
7 How did you get to know each other? .....

14 Growing up

A Ages and stages in the UK

Age	Stage
0	**birth** [the moment a baby is born]
Up to 12 months	a baby
12 months – 3 years old	a **toddler**
3–12 years old	a child: this period is your **childhood**
13–18 approximately	a **teenager**: during this period you are **in your teens**
18+	an **adult**
40+ approximately	people are **middle-aged** [in the middle of their lives]
60 or 65	**retirement** [when people stop work; they are **retired**]
80+	old age (we usually describe people as **elderly**)

B Approximate ages

I'm **in my early twenties.** [21–23]
My parents are **in their mid-fifties.** [54–56]
My grandmother is **in her late seventies.** [77–79]
My grandfather is **nearly/almost eighty.** [he's probably 79]
My English teacher's **approximately/roughly** thirty. [about 30 / more or less 30]

Common mistakes

We can say, **he's 30** or **he's 30 years old.** (NOT he ~~has~~ 30 or he's 30 ~~years~~)
Also: a **30-year-old man** (NOT a 30-~~years~~-old man)

C Past and present

"My grandmother's name was Mary. She's **dead**[1] now. She died about ten years ago when I was in my teens, but I remember her well. She was **brought up**[2] on a farm in Wales, and her parents were very **strict**: as a teenager, they didn't **allow**[3] her to listen to the radio or go to parties in the village. **In the end**[4], she decided to leave home and get a job in Cardiff. **At first**[5] it wasn't easy, but she **managed**[6] to find work, and she also met the man who became her husband: my grandfather. My mother was born four years later. She had a very different childhood. She grew up in the city, she **was allowed to** go to parties, and when she was in her teens, her parents **let**[7] her **stay out late**[8]. My mum is the same with me."

[1] not living; *opp* **alive**
[2] looked after until you are an adult
[3] give permission
[4] finally, after a lot of time or thought
[5] at the beginning
[6] was able (but it was difficult)
[7] allowed
[8] not go home until late

Language help

Let and **allow** have the same meaning. **Let** is slightly more informal, and **allow** is often used in the passive.
*My dad **let me drive** his car. I **was allowed to drive** my dad's car.*
***You're not allowed to** smoke in that room.* (NOT ~~It's not allowed to~~ smoke in that room.)

Exercises

14.1 Complete the sentences.

1 Isabella is only six months old – she's still a baby.
2 Chan-Hee was 22 a few months ago, so he's in his .....
3 Susan is 35, so she's in her .....
4 Leyla will be 13 this year, so she'll soon be a .....
5 Ron is 53 and his wife is 47, so they're both .....
6 Joan is 80 this year, so she is quite .....
7 Michael was a bus driver for 40 years but he's now .....
8 Ravi is 18 this year, so legally he becomes .....
9 The boys are 14 and 16, so they're both in their .....
10 Holly is just over a year old and she's starting to walk, so she's a ..... now.

14.2 Are the sentences true or false about Mary's life on the opposite page? If a sentence is false, change it to make it true.

1 Mary was brought up in the city. False. Mary was brought up on a farm.
2 She grew up in Wales. .....
3 Her parents let her do what she wanted. .....
4 She wasn't allowed to listen to the radio. .....
5 Life was easy when she went to Cardiff. .....
6 She couldn't get a job in Cardiff. .....

14.3 Rewrite the sentences without using the underlined words and phrases. Keep a similar meaning.

1 My parents <u>are dead</u> now.	My parents aren't alive now.
2 It was hard but <u>finally</u> I did it.	It was hard but .....
3 She's <u>approximately</u> my age.	She's .....
4 They're <u>almost</u> thirty now.	They're .....
5 <u>I had to do what</u> my parents <u>wanted</u>.	My parents were .....
6 My parents <u>let me</u> stay up and watch TV.	I was .....
7 My mum <u>looked after me</u> in Scotland.	I was .....
8 I <u>was able</u> to pass my exams <u>but it wasn't easy</u>.	I .....
9 I <u>didn't go home until</u> late.	I .....
10 <u>I was allowed to</u> wear what I liked.	My parents .....
11 I was happy <u>as a child</u>.	I had a happy .....
12 My grandparents <u>don't work any more</u>.	My grandparents are .....

14.4

Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, ask a friend and write their answers.

1 Where were you brought up? .....
2 What do you particularly remember about your childhood? .....
.....
.....
.....
3 Were your parents strict? What weren't you allowed to do when you were a child? .....
.....
.....
.....
4 How late were you allowed to stay out when you were a teenager? .....
.....

15 Romance, marriage and divorce

A Romance

"I had my first **date**[1] when I was 16, and it was terrible. I took a girl to the cinema but she didn't like the film and looked bored all evening; it was a bad start. Then, when I was 17, I **went out with**[2] a girl for three months, but we **broke up**[3] when she met a boy who was two years older than me, and had a car. My first **serious relationship**[4] was when I went to university. I **got to know**[5] Melanie because we were on the same course. At first we were just friends, then we started going out with each other, and after a few months we realised we were **in love**. We **got engaged**[6] **a couple of**[7] years after we left university and then ..."

[1] a planned romantic meeting
[2] had a romantic relationship with
[3] the relationship ended
[4] important romantic relationship
[5] became friends with
[6] formally agreed to marry
[7] two, perhaps three

B Marriage*

(bride)groom

"... we **got married**[1] the following year. We didn't want a big **ceremony**[2], so we had the **wedding**[3] in the local church near Melanie's home with just family and a few friends. Afterwards we had the **reception**[4] in a small hotel nearby, and then went on our **honeymoon**[5] to Greece."

* the time when you are married
[1] became husband and wife
[2] an important public event
[3] the ceremony when people get married
[4] the wedding party
[5] a holiday just after getting married

Common mistakes

She **got to know** Darren at university. (NOT She ~~knew~~ Darren at university.)
Now they plan to **get married**. (NOT They plan to get ~~marry~~; or They plan to ~~married~~.)
She's getting married **to** Darren next year. (NOT She's getting married ~~with~~ Darren next year.)

C Children

"Just over three years later Melanie **got pregnant**, and our first child, Cal, was born just two days after our fourth wedding **anniversary**[1]. We had a big **celebration**[2]."

[1] a day that is exactly one or more years after an important event
[2] a time when you do something you enjoy because it is a special day

Language help

adjective	noun
engaged	**engagement**
pregnant	**pregnancy**

verb	noun
celebrate	celebration
marry	marriage

D Divorce*

"Things started to **go wrong**[1] when I got a job as manager of a sportswear company. I was working six days a week and I had to do a lot of travelling. It was difficult for Melanie as well. She was working during the week, then at weekends she was often **alone / on her own**[2] with two young children. I felt I couldn't **give up**[3] my job, and in the end Melanie decided to **leave** me[4]. The following year we **got divorced**[5]."

* when a marriage officially ends
[1] become a problem
[2] without other people
[3] stop doing
[4] stop living with me
[5] the marriage officially ended

Exercises

15.1 **Put the events in a logical order.**

I went out with Simon.	☐
We got married.	☐
I got pregnant three months later.	☐
We got engaged.	☐
I got to know Simon.	☐
Our son was born just after our first anniversary.	☐
We went on our honeymoon.	☐
I met Simon at a party.	1
We had a big reception.	☐

15.2 **Which words are being defined?**

1 The big party you have after the wedding. reception
2 A romantic meeting you plan before it happens. .....
3 The period of time when you are married. .....
4 How you describe a woman who is going to have a baby. .....
5 The day that is exactly one year, or a number of years, after an important event. .....
6 The name given to the woman and man on their wedding day. ..... and .....
7 Stop doing a job or activity. ..... something up

15.3 **Complete the dialogues.**

1 A: When did they get engaged ?
B: Last week. They plan to get married in a ..... of years.

2 A: Where did they meet?
B: I think he got ..... her at university.
A: And now they're married?
B: Yes, the ..... was last week.

3 A: Is it going to be a big wedding?
B: No, they're having a small ..... in the village church.
A: And what about the reception?
B: They're having a reception but no ..... . They're going straight back to work.

4 A: So, it's all over.
B: Yes. Lily ..... him and moved out last month.
A: Oh dear. Have they had problems for a long time?
B: I think it all started to go ..... when they moved to Woodbridge.
A: And what about Oliver? Is he alone now?
B: Yes, completely on ..... . He doesn't want any new relationships yet.
A: But the marriage is definitely over?
B: Yes, I'm afraid they're getting ..... .

15.4 **Over to you**

Answer the questions for you, then, if possible, ask a friend and write their answers.

1 Can you remember your first date? (When, and who with?)
2 Can you remember your first serious relationship? (Who was it with? Did you break up, or are you still with the same person?)
3 Whose was the last wedding you went to?
4 What was the last big celebration (other than a wedding) that you went to?

16 Daily routines

A Sleep

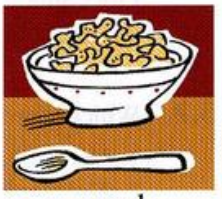
"During the week I usually **wake up**[1] about 7.30 am. If I don't, my mum **wakes me up**. I **get up**[2] a few minutes later. In the evenings I **go to bed** about 10.30 pm, and usually **go to sleep**[3] **straight away**[4]. If I **have a late night**[5] I try to **have a sleep**[6] in the afternoon when I get home from college."

[1] stop sleeping
[2] get out of bed
[3] start sleeping; *syn* **fall asleep**
[4] immediately
[5] go to bed very late; *opp* **have an early night**
[6] a short period of sleeping, e.g. half an hour

B Food

"I have coffee and **cereal** for breakfast, then **have a light lunch**[1], maybe a sandwich and an apple, and a **snack**[2] in the afternoon. We have our **main meal** in the evening. If Mum's late home from work, she **doesn't bother**[3] to cook; we just get a **takeaway**[4] instead. One of us has to **feed**[5] the cat as well."

[1] have a small meal
[2] a small amount of food you eat between meals
[3] doesn't do something because there is no reason or because it is too much work
[4] a meal you buy in a restaurant but eat at home
[5] give food



cereal

C Bathroom routines

"I usually **have a shower** when I get home from college because my sister, Rosie, and my brother, Marcus, spend so much time in the bathroom in the morning. I only have time to **have a wash**, **clean my teeth** (*syn* **brush my teeth**) and **put on** a bit of **make-up**. In the winter I sometimes **have a bath instead of**[1] a shower. I like to lie in the bath and listen to music."

[1] in place of (a shower)

Marcus having a shave

Rosie putting on make-up

D Housework*

"**Fortunately**[1] we've got a **cleaner**[2] who **does** a lot of the **housework**, and that includes **doing** my **washing**[3]. But I still have to **make** my **bed** and **do** some of my **ironing**, and I sometimes **do the shopping** with Mum."

* the work of keeping a home clean and tidy
[1] happening because of good luck; *syn* **luckily**
[2] a person who cleans
[3] washing my clothes

Language help
When we **do the shopping** we buy food at the supermarket; when we **go shopping**, it is a leisure activity and we perhaps buy clothes, DVDs, books, etc.

ironing

E Spare time*

"On weekdays I usually **stay in**[1] and watch TV in the evening. At the weekend I **go out** quite a lot with my friends, either to the cinema or just to a café, and I **eat out**[2] **once a week**. Sometimes friends **come round**[3] and we **chat**[4] about clothes, music and college."

* time when you are not working
[1] stay at home
[2] eat in a restaurant; *opp* **eat in**
[3] visit me in my home
[4] have an informal conversation

Exercises

16.1 **Find seven more expressions with *have* + [noun] and *do* + [noun] from the opposite page.**

have a shower	have	have	have .....
do	do	do	do .....

16.2 **Match the words on the left with the words on the right.**

1 get up	g	a the dog
2 fall		b my teeth
3 make		c make-up
4 put on		d a week
5 go		e the bed
6 clean		f to sleep
7 feed		g early
8 once		h asleep

16.3 **One word is missing in each sentence. What is it and where does it go?**

1 Does it cost much to have a cleaner to do the housework?
2 My mother usually me up around 7:30, then I get up about 7:45.
3 If I have a in the afternoon, I usually eat fruit instead of chocolate.
4 I always go on Friday and Saturday, often to the cinema or a club.
5 Sometimes friends round to the flat and we play computer games.
6 I eat at the weekend, usually in a local Italian or French restaurant.
7 I don't with a full meal at lunchtime; I usually just have a light lunch, like a salad.
8 I often have for breakfast – usually cornflakes or something like that.
9 I don't like doing housework; I have a husband who does most of it.
10 When I get emails, I try to reply to them straight.

16.4 **Complete the dialogue with a word or phrasal verb from the opposite page in each gap.**

A: Don't [1] bother ..... to cook dinner tonight.
B: Why not?
A: We could go out [2] ..... of eating here.
B: Yeah. Where?
A: Well, I'd like to try that new Korean restaurant.
B: That's miles away. No, I think I'd rather [3] ..... and have an [4] ..... night.
A: But it's Friday.
B: Yes, I know, but I'm tired. Why don't we ask Ryan and Charlotte to [5] ..... ? You don't have to cook, we can order a [6] ..... . And we can have a nice [7] ..... round the dining table; much better than a noisy restaurant.

16.5 **Over to you**

Find three facts from the opposite page that are similar in your routine, and three that are different. Complete the table.

	similar	different
1	.....	.....
2	.....	.....
3	.....	.....

17 The place where you live

A Location*

"We live **on the outskirts of town**[1], and it's a very nice **location**. We used to live in the centre, but we **moved**[2] to our present flat when we had children because there's more **space**[3] for them to play and it has nice **views**[4]."

* the place and position of something
[1] on the edge of town
[2] changed the place where we live
[3] an area that is empty or not used
[4] the things you can see from a place

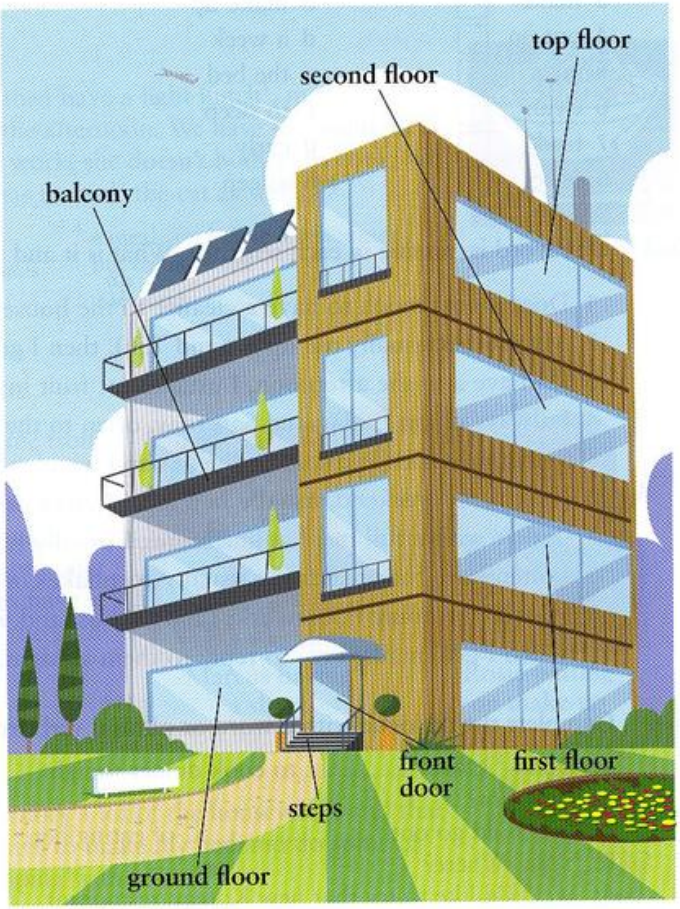
B Our flat

"This is where we live. We **rent**[1] a flat **on the second floor**. There's a family in the flat **downstairs**[2], and a young French couple **upstairs**, on the top floor. It's a modern **block of flats**[3], and it's quite good, although the **lift**[4] is small, and there's no **air conditioning**[5]."

[1] pay money every week/month to use it because it isn't ours
[2] on a lower level of a building
[3] a building with a number of flats in it
[4] the machine that takes people up or down a floor
[5] a system that keeps the air cool

Language help

Flat is more common in British English; **apartment** is used in American English but is becoming more common in British English. Apartments are usually in large buildings; flats can be in a large building or part of a larger house.



C A house in the country

"My parents **own**[1] a **cottage**[2]. It's a **charming**[3] house and **has lots of character**[4], but like many old buildings, it's quite **dark** (*opp* **light**), quite difficult to **heat**[5], and it doesn't have **central heating**[6]."

[1] they bought it
[2] a small house, that is old and attractive, and usually found in the country
[3] pleasant and attractive
[4] it is interesting and unusual
[5] make warm or hot
[6] a system that heats a whole house

cottage

Exercises

17.1 Are the sentences about the people on the opposite page true or false? If the sentence is false, change it to make it true.

1 They live in a house. False. They live in a flat.
2 They used to live on the outskirts of town. .....
3 They own their flat. .....
4 They've got nice views from their flat. .....
5 They live on the first floor. .....
6 There's a lift in the building. .....
7 A French couple live downstairs. .....
8 They own a cottage. .....
9 The cottage has lots of character. .....
10 The cottage is quite cold. .....

17.2 Are these generally positive or negative features of a home?

views positive | air conditioning ..... | character .....
dark ..... | charming ..... | no central heating .....

17.3 Label the pictures.

1 a block of flats 2 ..... 3 ..... 4 ..... 5 .....
6 .....

17.4 Complete the sentences.

1 Our flat doesn't have air conditioning.
2 I live ..... the second floor, and my cousin lives ....., on the first floor.
3 My old flat was very small, but this one has much more ..... .
4 The flat's in a great ..... : it's near the centre of town but opposite a park and very quiet.
5 We live on the ..... of town, but it's only a twenty-minute walk to the centre.
6 The flat is on the third floor, but we can sit outside on the ..... .
7 It's a very big house, so it costs a lot of money to ..... in the winter.
8 I'm on the second ..... . I usually use the stairs, but take the ..... if I'm feeling lazy.
9 I live in Paris. I used to live in Marseilles, but I ..... to Paris when I left university.
10 I love my apartment. It has big windows, so it's nice and ..... inside.

17.5 **Over to you**

Answer the questions about your home.

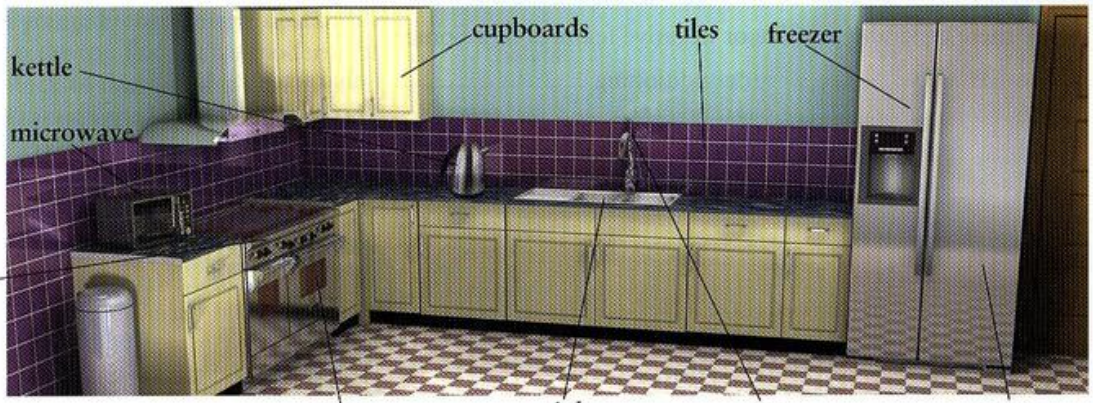
1 Do you live in a house or flat?
2 If you live in a flat, what floor is it on?
3 Do you own your home or rent it?
4 Are you in the centre, or on the outskirts of your town?
5 How long have you lived there?
6 Do you have these things: air conditioning? central heating? a balcony?

18 Around the home

A Different homes

"When we first got married, we lived in a one-bedroom flat with a small kitchen, a living room and a bathroom. When our first child was born, she had to **share** our bedroom [use something at the same time as someone else]. Now we live in a four-bedroom house. Our bedroom has an **en suite bathroom** [a bathroom connected to the bedroom], our two teenage children have their **own** rooms [they do not have to share], we have a **spare room** for guests, and another bathroom. Downstairs, there's a living room, a dining room and a **study** [a room where people can work]. We've also got a lovely big kitchen with a fridge/freezer, a cooker with two ovens and a **dishwasher** [a machine for washing dishes]. Next to it, there's a small **utility room** where we keep the **washing machine.**"

Language help
We usually talk about a **sink** in the kitchen, but a **(wash)basin** in the bathroom.



B Choices*

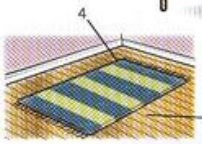
* when you decide between two or more possibilities

What do you prefer?

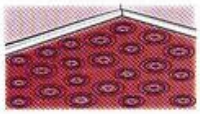
Some people like big soft **sofas**[1] with lots of **cushions**[2],

some people like **firm** (*opp* **soft**) **armchairs**.

Do you like a **wooden floor**[3] with a **rug**[4],

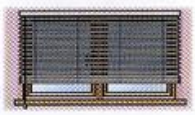


or a **carpet**?



Curtains,

or **blinds**?



A **duet,**

or a **sheet**[5] and a **blanket**[6]?
One **pillow**[7], or two?

Exercises

18.1 **You are in the kitchen. Where would you put these things?**

1 milk? in the fridge
2 food that you want to heat very quickly? .....
3 meat that you are going to cook? .....
4 dirty clothes? .....
5 dirty saucepans? .....
6 clean cups and saucers .....
7 frozen food that you want to keep for several weeks? .....

18.2 **What are these things, and which room(s) do you usually find them in?**

1 girdef fridge, in the kitchen
2 snik .....
3 nacitusr .....
4 shiconus .....
5 ktelet .....
6 bashniswa .....
7 cparte .....
8 lipowl .....
9 shiwang chameni .....
10 kocero .....
11 chmariar .....
12 leits .....

18.3 **Complete the sentences.**

1 I'm happy with curtains or blinds ; I really don't mind.
2 We used to have a ..... floor, but it was a bit noisy so we put down a carpet.
3 When I got my new bedroom, my mum gave me a ..... of curtains or blinds.
4 My mum works at home, so she spends all day in the ..... on the computer.
5 As a child I had to ..... a room with my sister, but now I've got my ..... bedroom.
6 We often have guests to stay, but fortunately we've got a ..... room.
7 'Dad, there's no water coming out of the ..... in the kitchen sink.'
8 Some people like a sheet and ..... , but I prefer a ..... .
9 There's a family bathroom, but I've got my own ..... shower room next to the bedroom.
10 Our kitchen is small but we have a ..... room for the washing machine.

18.4 **Over to you**

Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

1 What have you got on your kitchen floor? .....
2 What have you got on the bathroom floor? .....
3 What have you got on the floor in the living room? .....
4 Have you got curtains or blinds in your bedroom? .....
5 Have you got a duvet or sheets and blankets on your bed? .....

18.5 **Over to you**

Look at section B on the opposite page again. Which do you prefer, and why? Compare your answers with someone else if possible.

19 Everyday problems

A There's something wrong with ...

We use these expressions when there is a problem with machines and other things we use.

There's something wrong with the TV. [there is a problem with it]
The light **isn't working.** [isn't functioning; there is no light]
The washing machine **isn't working properly.** [it is functioning, but not very well]
The coffee machine is **out of order.** [not in use, broken]

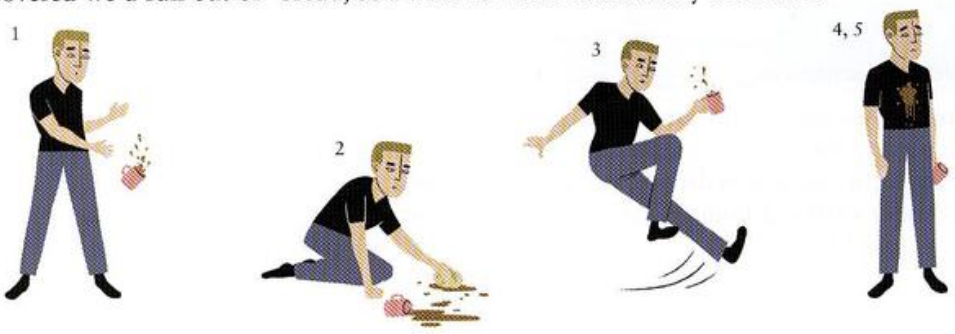
Language help
We normally use **out of order** for a machine or system that is in a public building, not in the home, e.g. a drinks machine, a public telephone, a lift.

B Problems at home

"I was making myself a cup of coffee yesterday. I **dropped**[1] the first cup on the floor and I had to **clear** it **up**[2]. I then made myself another cup, **slipped**[3] on the wet floor, and **spilt**[4] coffee **all over**[5] my T-shirt. I tried to **remove**[6] it with special washing powder, but it was **hopeless**[7]. I'll have to buy a new T-shirt."

[6] get it off
[7] very bad and impossible to improve

"This morning I decided to have some toast. I **burnt**[8] the first two pieces, then I discovered we'd **run out of**[9] bread, so I went to work without any breakfast."



[8] cooked something for too long
[9] there was no more of something

C Out and about

"I was **in a bad mood**[1] because I hadn't had any breakfast, but things **got worse**[2] when I **missed** my **bus** and had to walk. It was raining, so I started running. I **fell over**[3] and **hit**[4] my knee on the ground. And when I got to work, I realised that I'd **torn**[5] my jacket, and I'd **left** some important notes **at home.**"

[1] feeling unhappy
[2] became more difficult and unpleasant
[3] fell to the ground
[4] touch something quickly, usually causing injury
[5] (see picture; **tear**, past tense **tore**, past participle **torn**)

Common mistakes
I **left** my book **at home**, or I **forgot** my book.
(NOT I forgot my book ~~at home~~.)

Exercises

19.1 Complete the verb forms with the correct past tense and past participle.

1 break / broke / broken
2 spill / ..... / .....
3 burn / ..... / .....
4 fall over / ..... / .....
5 run out / ..... / .....
6 tear / ..... / .....
7 hit / ..... / .....

19.2 Match the sentence beginnings on the left with the correct ending on the right.

1 I dropped the radio	d	a on the desk.
2 I've run out		b because the saucepan handle was so hot.
3 I left		c all over the carpet.
4 I tore my shirt		d and now it isn't working.
5 I spilt coffee		e the money.
6 I hit my hand		f the money at home.
7 I burnt myself		g and I don't think I can repair it.
8 I forgot		h of coffee.

19.3 Complete the stories using words from the box, in the correct form.

~~spill~~	slip	remove	fall	worse	over	mood	hopeless	hit	clear

Sophie [1] spilt tomato sauce all [2] ..... the kitchen floor, and her new dress. I tried to [3] ..... up the mess on the floor, while Sophie did her best to [4] ..... the marks on her dress. I'm afraid it was [5] ..... though, and she was in a really bad [6] ..... after that.

The two boys were running downstairs. First Sebastian [7] ..... on the bottom step and [8] ..... his knee as he landed on the floor, then Nico [9] ..... over and landed on top of Sebastian. It got [10] ..... when Rose fell over trying to help them stand up!

19.4 Write a different reply to each question using expressions from the opposite page.

1 I'm cold. What's wrong with the central heating? It isn't working.
2 How did you break that glass? .....
3 How did you hit your arm? .....
4 Why can't we watch that programme? .....
5 Where's your homework? .....
6 I can't hear the radio very clearly. What's wrong with it? .....
7 Why can't we use the lift? .....

19.5

Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, ask a friend and write their answers.
Do you do these things? If so, what, why, and how often?

drop things | run out of things | fall over | forget things
burn food | spill things | leave things somewhere

20 Money

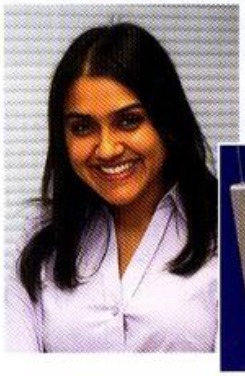
A Notes and coins

In the UK the **currency** [type of money used] is **sterling** [pounds]; in America it is **the dollar**; in much of Europe it's **the euro**.

Notes
e.g. ten pounds, twenty euros
a ten-pound note, a twenty-euro note

Coins (in the UK)
e.g. fifty pence (usually spoken as **fifty p**),
a pound, **a fifty-pence piece**, but **a one-pound coin**

B Managing your money



"I've had a **bank account** for a few years now, and I make sure my account is always **in credit**[1]. I go to the **cashpoint** once a week, so I always have some **cash**[2] with me, and I **check**[3] my account online once a week to see how much money I've got."

cashpoint

[1] having money in the account
[2] money in the form of notes and coins
[3] look at the details of it

C Money problems

"When I went to university, I had to get a **bank loan**[1] to pay my **fees**[2]. That meant I had to be careful and make sure I didn't **waste money**[3], but by the time I finished my degree I **owed**[4] a lot. One good thing is that I don't have to pay it back until I get a job and I'm **earning**[5] a **reasonable amount**[6] of money. At the moment I'm **saving up**[7] for a new laptop; the one I have is very slow and keeps going wrong. I'd love to have a car as well, but I **can't afford**[8] it."

[1] money you borrow from a bank
[2] money you pay to use something, or for a service, e.g. a lawyer's fee
[3] use it badly
[4] had to **pay back** a lot of money to the bank
[5] receiving money for the work I do
[6] quite a lot; $1 million is **a large amount**
[7] keeping money to buy something in the future
[8] don't have enough money to buy one

D Accommodation*

"This year I'm **renting** a flat with three friends of mine. We had to pay one month's **rent** as a **deposit**[1], but it's a nice place, quite **good value for money**[2], and the landlord isn't **charging**[3] us to use his garage."

* places where you live or stay
[1] money you pay for something you are going to use, which is then returned to you when you have finished using it
[2] good for the amount of money you pay
[3] asking someone to pay an amount of money

Language help

We use **rent** when we pay to use something for a long period of time, e.g. *rent a flat*. The noun **rent** is the amount you pay, e.g. *The **rent** is £400 per month*. We use **hire** when we pay to use something for a short period of time, e.g. *I **hired** a bike for the day*. Both verbs are used with cars, e.g. *We **rented/hired** a car when we were on holiday*.

Exercises

20.1 **Answer the questions as quickly as possible.**

1 Is sterling a currency? Yes
2 Is a five-pound note worth less than a fifty-pence piece? .....
3 If you rent something, do you own it? .....
4 If you waste money, do you use it well? .....
5 Can you get money from a cashpoint? .....
6 If you are in credit, do you have money in your account? .....
7 Do you pay back a bank loan? .....
8 Is the currency in the United States of America called the euro? .....
9 Do you normally get back a deposit? .....
10 If you 'can afford' something, do you have enough money for it? .....

20.2 **Which words are being defined?**

1 A flat, usually round piece of metal used as money. coin
2 Money you borrow from a bank. .....
3 Money you pay to someone for a professional service, e.g. a school. .....
4 Money in the form of notes or coins. .....
5 Money you pay to live in a building that you don't own. .....
6 A machine where you can get money. .....
7 The type of money used in a country. .....

20.3 **Rewrite the sentences without using the underlined words and phrases. Keep the same meaning.**

1 He's <u>getting</u> £300 a week in his job. He's earning £300 a week in his job.
2 She <u>used</u> the money <u>badly</u>. She .....
3 I <u>don't have enough money</u> to go. I .....
4 We could <u>rent</u> a car. We could .....
5 He <u>asked</u> us <u>to pay</u> £25. He .....
6 I<u>'ve got to pay back</u> a lot of money. I .....
7 I always <u>look at</u> my account carefully. I always .....

20.4 **Complete the text.**

"I'm nearly 20 now, and I've been [1] saving up for a car for the last two years. I've been putting money into my bank [2] , and I try to put in exactly the same [3] every month: £75 from money that I [4] doing a job two evenings a week, and £50 that my parents are lending me each month. That means I now [5] them £1200, but they said I don't have to [6] them until I've got a full-time job. At the moment I'm still living at home, so I don't have to pay for my [7] , although I will start paying my parents a bit of rent when I finish college and get a job."

20.5 **Over to you**

Answer the questions.

1 Have you got a bank account? If so, how long have you had it?
2 How often do you check your account?
3 How often do you use a cashpoint?
4 Have you ever had a bank loan? What did you have the loan for?
5 Are you saving up for anything at the moment?
6 Do you rent the place where you live? If so, did you have to pay a deposit?

21 Health

A Common problems

What's the matter?	What you should do
A: I've got a **sore throat**[1] and a **temperature**.[2]	B: That sounds like **flu.** You should see a doctor.
A: I've **cut** my arm; it's **bleeding**.[3]	B: Put a **bandage**[4] round it.
A: I've got a terrible **cough**.[5]	B: Go to the chemist and get some cough **medicine**. [something you take to treat an illness]
A: I've got a **headache**.	B: Take some **tablets**[6] for the pain. (also **pills**)
A: I **feel sick**.[7]	B: Go to the bathroom quickly!

B Describing pain

We can use different words to describe **pain**. An **ache** describes pain that is not always strong, but often continues. It is used with certain parts of the body.
I've got a **headache.** Simone's got **stomach ache.**
My dad **suffers from** [often has the pain of] **backache.**

For other parts of the body we often use **pain.**
I've got a **pain** in my shoulder/foot.

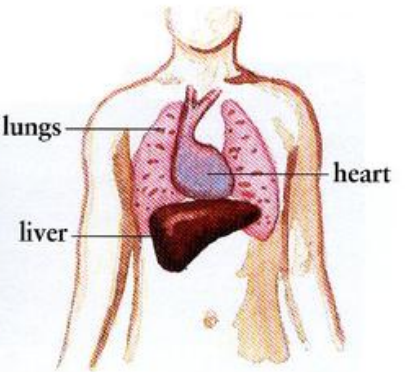
Ache can also be a verb to describe pain that continues for some time.
By the end of the day my feet were **aching.**

For stronger or more sudden pain, we usually use the verb **hurt.**
My throat **hurts** when I speak.
I hit my leg on the table and it really **hurts** / it's very **painful.**

C Serious illnesses

For **serious** [bad] illnesses, you will probably go into hospital. A person who stays in hospital is called a **patient.** Many patients need an **operation** [when special doctors, called **surgeons**, cut into the body for medical reasons; also called **surgery**].

Lung cancer can be caused by smoking.
Heart attacks can happen very suddenly.
Hepatitis is a **disease** affecting the **liver.**



Language help

Disease is used to talk about more serious medical problems, often affecting certain parts of the body, e.g. heart disease.
Illness is used to talk about serious and minor medical problems and those affecting the mind, e.g. mental illness.
Disease is not used about a period of illness, e.g. He died after a long illness. (NOT He died after a ~~long disease~~.)

Exercises

21.1 Look at the underlined letters in each pair of words. Is the pronunciation the same or different? Use the index to help you.

1 ache pain same
2 cold stomach different
3 cough through .....
4 flu cut .....
5 liver disease .....
6 stomach operation .....
7 chemist ache .....
8 patient bandage .....

21.2 Complete the sentences with *a* or nothing (–).

1 She's got – hepatitis.
2 I've got a cough.
3 I'm getting ..... sore throat.
4 Ben's got ..... headache.
5 Luis's got ..... temperature.
6 I've got ..... backache.
7 Leona's got ..... flu.
8 My uncle had ..... heart attack.
9 She's got ..... cancer.
10 I've got ..... pain in my foot.

21.3 Complete the dialogues.

1 A: Does your finger hurt?
B: Yes, it's very painful .
2 A: What's wrong with Musa?
B: He feels ..... . I think it's something he ate.
3 A: Did you hit your foot?
B: Yes, and it really ..... .
4 A: My hand's bleeding quite badly.
B: Well, put a ..... round it.
5 A: Your finger's ..... .
B: I know. I cut it using that knife.
6 A: Does Tanya still ..... from bad headaches?
B: Yes, she gets them all the time.
7 A: What's the matter?
B: My back ..... from sitting at that computer all day.
8 A: I understand Laura has had quite a ..... illness.
B: Yeah. She was in hospital for over a week.

21.4 Find five more pairs of words. Why are they pairs?

~~lung~~ heart surgeon tablets/pills attack liver operation ~~cancer~~ hepatitis sore medicine throat

lung and cancer – because you can get lung cancer.

21.5

Over to you

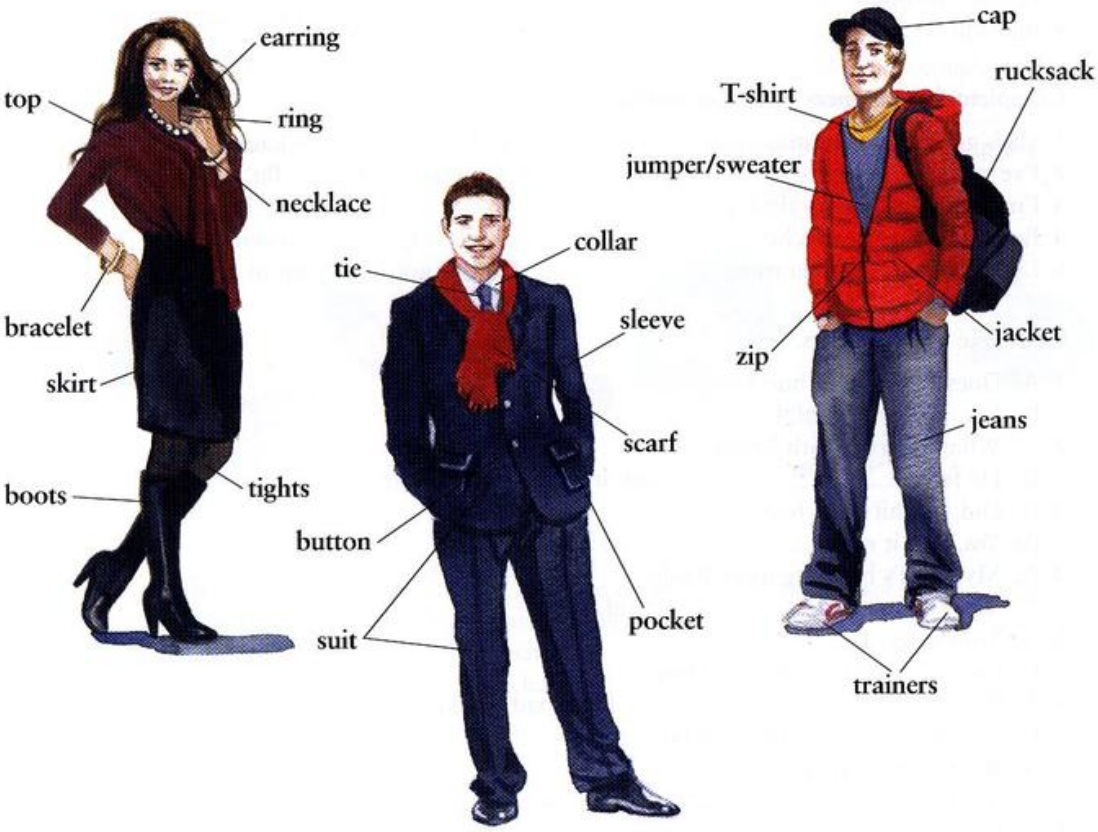
Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

1 What do you usually do if you get a headache?
2 How often do you get a cough or a sore throat?
3 Have you ever been a patient in hospital? If so, what was it like?
4 Have you ever had surgery?
5 Are there some medicines you always keep in your home? What are they?

22 Clothes

A Smart, stylish and casual

I think the woman looks **stylish.** [wearing nice clothes and looking attractive; also **well-dressed**]
The man is **smartly dressed.** [clean and tidy and suitable for formal situations]
The boy's clothes are more **casual.** [comfortable and suitable for informal situations]



B Verbs and phrases used with clothes

As soon as I get up, I have a shower and **get dressed** [put on my clothes]. I don't eat breakfast.

I have to **wear** a suit and tie to work, but I usually **take off** my tie before lunchtime. [remove it; *opp* **put something on**]

When I get home from work, I usually **change into** a pair of jeans.

I think I look good **in black** because dark colours **suit** me. [I look good in dark colours; *opp* **bright** colours]

I prefer jackets with a zip; it's easier to **undo** a zip [open a zip, buttons, etc.] and it's also much quicker to **do it up.**

Common mistakes

I like **clothes.** (NOT I like ~~cloth~~ or ~~cloths~~.)
I like your new **trousers.** (NOT I like your new ~~trouser~~.)

Exercises

22.1 Put the words into the correct columns.

~~boots~~ earrings button top ring jumper bracelet scarf necklace zip pocket cap sleeve tights collar

items of clothing	jewellery	parts of clothing
boots		

22.2 Find five more things that are different in the pictures.

1 The first woman is wearing a ring; the second isn't.
2 .....
3 .....
4 .....
5 .....
6 .....

22.3 Complete the sentences.

1 Why don't you take ...off... your coat?
2 Anna looks really nice ..... purple.
3 He was very smartly- ..... this morning. He had his best suit on.
4 It took me ages to put ..... these boots.
5 You should wear bright colours more often; they ..... you.
6 Hiroko couldn't do ..... the zip on her jacket.
7 I changed ..... a pair of jeans as soon as I got home.
8 I took my tie off and ..... the top button of my shirt.
9 My brother takes his books to school in a ..... . He says it's easier to carry them on his back.
10 I had a quick shower, got ....., then joined the others for breakfast.

22.4 **Over to you**

Women, answer these questions.

1 What jewellery do you usually wear?
2 Which colours suit you best?
3 Do you prefer smart or casual clothes?
4 Do you generally look quite stylish?
5 Do you often wear a hat or a cap?
6 Do you often wear T-shirts or trainers?

Men, answer these questions.

How often do you wear a suit?
How often do you wear a tie?
Do you usually do up the top button of your shirt?
Do you often change into jeans after school or work?
Do you often wear a hat or a cap?
Do you often wear T-shirts or trainers?

23 Fashion and buying clothes

A Fashion

FASHION: Which are you?

- I usually **shop**[1] with a friend.
- I always **try on clothes**[2] before I buy them.
- I sometimes buy clothes that don't **suit me**[3], just because they're **fashionable**[4].
- If I buy trousers or a skirt, I buy a shirt or top to **go with**[5] it at the same time.
- My **wardrobe**[6] is full of clothes that I buy and hardly ever wear.
- I like to buy **designer labels**[7], even though they're more expensive.
- I like wearing fashionable clothes, but the price has to be **reasonable**[8].
- I never buy clothes just because they're **in fashion**[9].
- I like to **dress in**[10] clothes that are casual but still look quite fashionable.
- I'm always happy with what I'**ve got on**[11].

[1] buy things in shops
[2] put clothes on in a shop to see what they are like
[3] look good on me
[4] popular at that particular time
[5] look good together
[6] a large cupboard for keeping clothes in
[7] clothes made by famous designers, e.g. Versace, Dolce & Gabbana
[8] not expensive
[9] fashionable
[10] wear a particular type, style or colour of clothes
[11] am wearing

Language help

If two things **match**, they are a similar colour or type. If two things **go with** each other, they look good together.
*Catherine's bag **matches** her coat. Catherine's bag **goes with** her coat.*
If something **suits** you, it looks good on you. If something **fits** you, it is the right size.

B In a clothes shop

A **shop assistant** [a person who works in a shop] is **serving** different customers [helping them to buy things].

SHOP ASSISTANT: Can I help you?
CUSTOMER 1: No, **I'm being served,** thanks. [another shop assistant is already helping me]
SHOP ASSISTANT: Do you need any help?
CUSTOMER 2: Yes, I've just tried on this jacket in a **size** 12, and it didn't really **fit** me; it's a bit **tight.** [too small around the body; *opp* **loose**/big] Have you got it in a bigger size?
SHOP ASSISTANT: We have got a size 14, but not in pink, I'm afraid.
CUSTOMER 2: Oh, **that's a shame.** [that is disappointing; *syn* **that's a pity**] OK. **I'll leave it,** thanks. [I have decided not to buy it; *opp* **I'll take it/them**]
SHOP ASSISTANT: OK. I'm sorry about that. … Can I help you?
CUSTOMER 3: Yes, **I'm looking for** a skirt and this looks nice. [I want to find a skirt] Can I try it on?
SHOP ASSISTANT: Yes, of course. The **changing rooms** are down there. [the place where you can try on clothes]

Exercises

23.1 Are these pairs similar in meaning or different in meaning?

1 *in fashion* and *fashionable* ..... similar .....
2 *wardrobe* and *changing room* .....
3 *I'll take it* and *I'll leave it* .....
4 *match something* and *go with something* .....
5 *tight* and *loose* .....
6 *fit someone* and *suit someone* .....
7 *that's a shame* and *that's a pity* .....

23.2 Rewrite the sentences starting with the words given. Keep a similar meaning.

1 I often shop with my mother. — I often go shopping with my mother .....
2 These watches are fashionable. — These watches are in .....
3 Your top matches your skirt. — Your top goes .....
4 I like what I'm wearing. — I like what I've .....
5 Those trousers suit you. — Those trousers look .....
6 Are they the right size? — Do they ..... ?
7 I'd like it to be quite loose. — I don't want it to be too .....
8 She always wears black. — She always ..... in black.

23.3 Which words are being defined?

1 be the right size ..... fit .....
2 not cheap, but not expensive .....
3 a large cupboard for keeping clothes in .....
4 popular with people at a particular time .....
5 the place where you try on clothes in a shop .....
6 Armani and Calvin Klein are examples of this .....
7 a person who works in a shop .....
8 look after customers and help them to buy things .....

23.4 Complete the dialogues.

SHOP ASSISTANT: Can I help you?
CUSTOMER 1: I'm [1] looking for ..... a top. This one's quite nice. I think I'll [2] ..... it on.
SHOP ASSISTANT: Of course. The [3] ..... room is just over there.

SHOP ASSISTANT: Do you need any help?
CUSTOMER 2: No, I'm being [4] ....., thanks.

SHOP ASSISTANT: How was the top?
CUSTOMER 1: I'm afraid it didn't [5] ..... very well. It was a bit [6] ..... under the arms.
SHOP ASSISTANT: Oh, that's a [7] ..... . Would you like a bigger size?
CUSTOMER 1: No, I don't think so. In actual fact, it wasn't just the [8] ..... . I don't think it [9] ..... me, actually. I think it's really for a younger person. I'll [10] ..... it, thanks.

23.5

Over to you

Look at the text at the top of the opposite page again. Which statements are true for you? If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

24 Shopping

A In a supermarket

How do supermarkets **make us**[1] spend more money?

They put **fresh**[2] bread, as it smells lovely, near the **entrance**[3] to make us feel hungry – and hungry shoppers spend more. They also rearrange things and put them in different places; this makes us spend more time in the store and that means spending more money. They put sweets and chocolate near the checkout, so it is easy to add bars of chocolate to our basket or trolley while we are waiting in the **queue**[4]. And they put the most expensive **items**[5] on the middle shelves where you are more **likely**[6] to see them. And be careful of **special offers**[7], e.g. three for the price of two. People often buy more than they need and **throw away** half of it.

[1] cause us to do or be something, e.g. *I don't like rain; it* ***makes me*** *depressed.*
[2] just made/cooked
[3] the place where you go into a building
[4] a line of people who are waiting for something
[5] an *item* is a single thing
[6] If you are likely to do something, you will probably do it.
[7] cheaper prices than normal

B Shopping centres and street markets

Some people like modern **shopping centres**[1] because everything is **under one roof**[2] and it is **convenient**[3]. There's a **wide range**[4] of shops, and if there is anything wrong with something you buy, the shop will **replace**[5] it, or give you a **refund**[6].

stall

Other people prefer going to **street markets** because they like the **atmosphere**[7] you get from the different **stalls**. Food and clothes are also usually cheaper in street markets. Sometimes you can try to agree a lower price for something you buy in a street market; we call this **haggling**. Of course, if you don't like what you buy in a street market, you can't normally take it back and get a refund.

[1] large covered shopping areas
[2] in one place
[3] practical and easy to use
[4] different things of the same type
[5] exchange it for another one
[6] money that is paid back to you when you return something
[7] the feeling in a place or situation

Exercises

24.1 **True or false? If a sentence is false, change it to make it true.**

1 If you have a lot of things to buy, you need a basket.
False. If you have a lot of things to buy, you need a trolley.

2 Supermarkets arrange things to make us spend more money.

3 The checkout is where you pay for things.

4 Expensive items are on the top shelves.

5 If something is fresh, it has just been made.

6 There are often lovely smells near the entrance.

7 Sweets are often near the checkout.

8 It's always a good idea to buy things on special offer.

24.2 **Mark the main stress on these words. Use the index to help you.**

'atmosphere convenient checkout entrance a refund replace item

24.3 **Are these statements true of shopping centres, street markets, or both?**

1 They are usually quite modern. shopping centres
2 Everything is under one roof.
3 You buy things from stalls.
4 You can haggle.
5 You can normally get refunds.
6 They can be very convenient.

24.4 **Complete the sentences.**

1 I took the shoes back to the shop, but they wouldn't give me a refund .
2 It ..... me angry when shops refuse to give you a refund or ..... things.
3 I often buy bananas but forget to eat them, and then I have to ..... them away.
4 When I got to the checkout, there was a long ..... of people waiting.
5 There's a special ..... on melons – buy one, get one free!
6 The vegetables are near the ..... , where we came in.
7 I like that supermarket because they have a wide ..... of meat and cheese.
8 In my local street market, there's just a really nice ..... : it's very busy, but everyone is friendly and there's lots of colour.
9 I am more ..... to buy something if it's a special offer, because it seems cheaper.

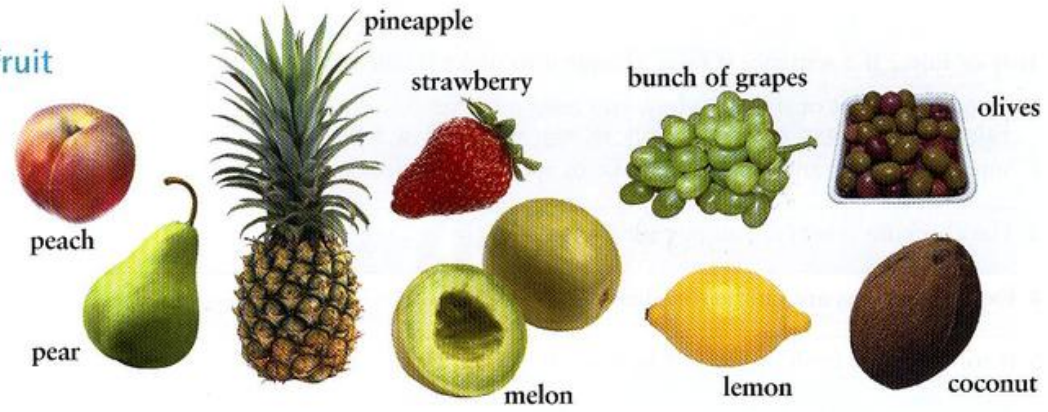
24.5 **Over to you**

Answer the questions. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

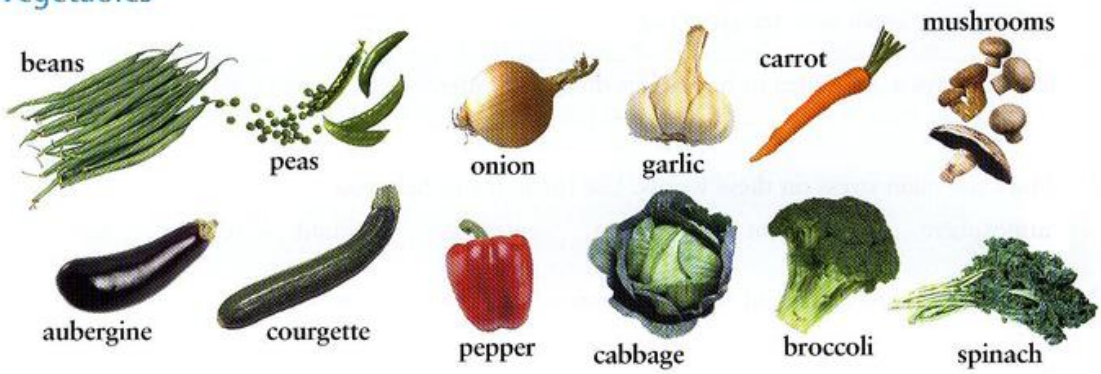
1 How often do you shop in supermarkets? What do you think of them?
2 How often do you go to shopping centres? Do you like them?
3 How often do you go to street markets? Do you like them?
4 Do you haggle for things when you're shopping?
5 Have you ever asked for a refund?

25 Food

A Fruit

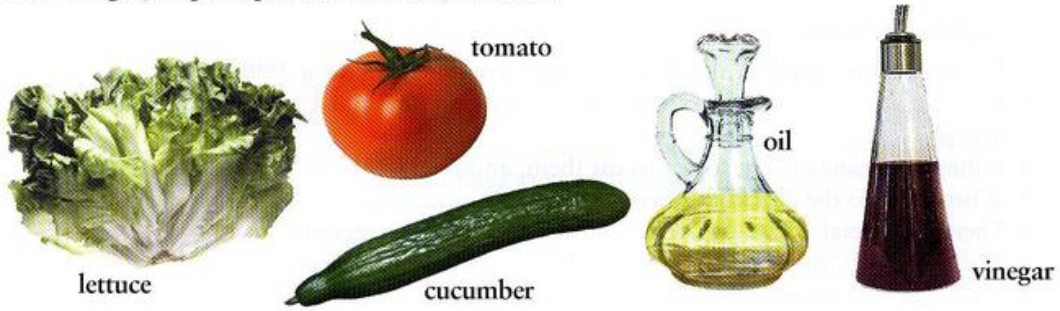


B Vegetables



C Salad

A **salad** is usually a mixture of uncooked ingredients. In Britain it mainly has **lettuce**, as well as **tomato, cucumber,** onion, and other things. We often put **salad dressing** (usually **oil** and **vinegar**, or perhaps oil and lemon) on salad.



D Meat, fish and seafood

Animal:	cow	calf [young cow]	lamb [young sheep]	pig	chicken/hen
Meat:	beef	veal	lamb	pork	chicken

A person who does not eat meat is a **vegetarian**.

Exercises

25.1 Write down one vegetable and fruit beginning with these letters.

	vegetable	fruit
1 the letter *p*	peas	.....
2 the letter *g*	.....	.....
3 the letter *m*	.....	.....
4 the letter *s*	.....	.....
5 the letter *o*	.....	.....

25.2 Find a word from each box where the underlined letters are pronounced the same.

carr<u>o</u>t 1	<u>o</u>nion
lett<u>u</u>ce	pr<u>a</u>wn
<u>au</u>bergine	s<u>a</u>lmon

tomat<u>o</u>	mel<u>o</u>n 1
p<u>o</u>rk	ch<u>i</u>cken
l<u>a</u>mb	m<u>u</u>shroom

25.3 Which is the odd one out in each group, and why?

1 pork	veal	(salmon)	beef	salmon is a fish, the others are meat	.....
2 lettuce	cabbage	tomato	cucumber	.....	.....
3 pork	lamb	beef	crab	.....	.....
4 peach	onion	pepper	courgette	.....	.....
5 crab	broccoli	mussels	prawn	.....	.....
6 carrots	chicken	beans	aubergine	.....	.....

25.4 Do you usually eat the skin (the outside) of these fruits? (Answer *Yes*, *Sometimes* or *No*.)

pineapple	No	peaches	.....
melon	.....	pears	.....
grapes	.....	lemon	.....

25.5 Answer the questions.

1 What do we call the meat from a cow, lamb, calf, and a pig? beef , ... , ... , ...
2 What's the main ingredient in a green salad? ..... .
3 What are the two most common things we put in salad dressing? ..... and ..... .
4 What do we usually call someone who doesn't eat meat? .....
5 What do we call a number of grapes that grow together? A ..... of grapes.

25.6 **Over to you**

Using words from the opposite page, complete these sentences about yourself and your country. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

1 ..... is/are more common than ..... .
2 ..... is/are more expensive than ..... .
3 A mixed salad usually has ..... , ... , ... , ...
4 We don't often grow ..... .
5 We don't often eat ..... .
6 ..... is/are my favourite ..... .

26 Cooking

A Ways of cooking food

You **boil** potatoes or rice in a **saucepan**.
You can **fry** sausages in a **frying pan**.
You **grill** toast or meat under a **grill**.
You **roast** meat [using oil] in the **oven**.
You also **bake** cakes [without oil] in the oven.
You **barbecue** meat and fish on a **barbecue**.
Food which is not cooked is **raw**.

B Preparing and cooking food

Peel the potatoes [remove the skin] and boil them.
While they're boiling, **chop** an onion. [cut it into small pieces]
Fry the onion before **adding** some chopped tomatoes. [putting them together with the onions]
Then **stir** it all for a few minutes. [move it around in a saucepan using a spoon]

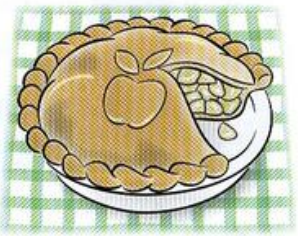
C What does it taste like?

Chefs [people who cook food in a restaurant as a job] always **taste** the food [put a small amount in their mouth to see what it is like] while they are cooking.
I don't like the **taste** of too much garlic.
I tried the soup and it **tasted** a bit strange.
Michel's food is very **tasty**. [has a good taste]
Indian food is a bit too **spicy** for me. [with a strong hot flavour]
You get ice cream in different **flavours**. [the type of taste that food or drink has, e.g. vanilla, coffee, strawberry, etc.]
Lena said her pasta was **horrible** [terrible, unpleasant], but I thought it was **delicious** [fantastic, with a wonderful taste].

Language help

We use the word **sour** to describe the taste of lemons (*opp* **sweet**), but usually **bitter** to describe coffee that is strong and has a sharp unpleasant taste (*opp* **smooth**). Strong, dark chocolate can also be described as bitter, but this is not always negative.

D Are you a good cook?



"I'm a bit nervous when I cook, so I always follow a **recipe** [the cooking instructions for a particular dish, e.g. lasagne], and make sure I have all the right **ingredients** [the different food you need to make a particular meal] before I start. However, I am quite good at making **pies**, especially apple **pie**." (Pie is pronounced /paɪ/ like 'my'.)

Common mistakes

A person who cooks well is a good **cook** (NOT a good ~~cooker~~). The **cooker** is the large piece of equipment you use for cooking. You could also say that you are **good/bad at** cooking (NOT good/bad ~~in~~ cooking), e.g. *I'm quite good at cooking fish.*

Also we 'cook' a type of food, e.g. *I'm cooking some beef*, but we 'make' a dish, e.g. *I'm making dessert.* (NOT I'm ~~cooking~~ dessert.)

Exercises

26.1 Write down five more ways of cooking food.

boil ..... , ... , ... , ... , ... , ...

26.2 How do you pronounce the underlined letters? Use the index to help you.

chef	Is it like shoe or chief? shoe	oven	Is it like love or lonely?
raw	Is it like now or door?	pie	Is it like pea or lie?
sour	Is it like more or hour?	saucepan	Is it like four or flower?

26.3 Cross out the wrong word in each sentence. Write the correct word at the end.

1 The paella was very ~~tasteful~~. tasty
2 My brother is a very good cooker. .....
3 Don't forget to heat up the fry pan before you add the aubergine. .....
4 This chocolate is very sour. .....
5 I'm afraid my mother has never been very good in cooking. .....
6 You can buy this ice cream in five different tastes. .....

26.4 Which words are being defined?

1 The flavour that something has in your mouth when you eat it. taste
2 A person who cooks food as their job. .....
3 Having a good taste. .....
4 The large piece of equipment in the kitchen for cooking food. .....
5 The word to describe the taste of lemons. .....
6 Not cooked. .....
7 Having a fantastic taste. ..... . The opposite is .....

26.5 Explain what the person did, using the correct word.

1 I got the list of food and cooking instructions.	You got the recipe .
2 I bought all the food I needed for the dish.	You bought all the ..... .
3 First I removed the skin of the potatoes.	You ..... the potatoes.
4 I cooked the potatoes in water.	You ..... the potatoes.
5 Then I cut the onions into small pieces.	You ..... the onions.
6 I cooked the onions in a frying pan.	You ..... the onions.
7 I put the potatoes together with the onion.	You ..... the potatoes to the onion.
8 I put in some milk and moved it round in the pan.	You put in milk and ..... it.
9 Then I put a little in my mouth to see what it was like.	You ..... it.

26.6 **Over to you**

Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

1 Do you eat these things in your country?
a) raw fish b) roast beef c) fried rice d) baked potato e) barbecued chicken
2 Do you like these things?
a) bitter chocolate b) spicy food c) chocolate-flavoured ice cream d) the taste of garlic
3 How often do you cook food on a barbecue?
4 Are you a good cook? If so, what are you good at?

27 City life

A The rush hour*

"For me, the rush hour is the worst time of day. Everywhere is busy, and everyone seems to be **in a hurry**[1]. I usually drive to work, but sometimes I **get stuck**[2] in **traffic jams**[3], and when I get to work I find there's **nowhere to park**[4] because the **car park**[5] is already full. But if I get the bus, it takes me longer, and that makes the journey very **stressful**[6]. When I get home in the evenings I often feel **exhausted**[7] – more from the travelling than from my work."

* the time when people travel to and from work
[1] want to go somewhere / do something quickly
[2] become unable to move or go anywhere
[3] long lines of cars that are not moving
[4] no place to leave the car
[5] place to leave a car
[6] causing a lot of worry
[7] very tired

Common mistakes

The situation was **stressful**, and I was very **stressed** (NOT I was ~~stressing~~, or it was ~~stressing~~).
I couldn't find a **car park**. OR I couldn't find a **parking space**. (NOT I couldn't find a ~~parking~~.)

B The nightlife*

"One of the **advantages of**[1] living in the city is the **nightlife**. The **town centre** is always **lively**[2] in the evening, and there is a wide **variety of**[3] bars, clubs and restaurants to go to. If you are more interested in **culture** and **cultural activities**, you can go to the cinema, the theatre, concerts, art galleries, etc."

* places to visit in the evening for social reasons
[1] the positive things about a situation; *opp* **disadvantages**
[2] full of activity
[3] many different things

C Advantages and disadvantages

"Cities always seem **crowded**[1], and they can be **dirty** (*opp* **clean**) and **dangerous** (*opp* **safe**) places to live. **Pollution**[2] is worse in big cities, and so is the **crime rate**[3]. I only walk home **at night**[4] if I'm with a friend. When I'm on my own, I get a taxi.

Life in cities is also more expensive. Flats cost a lot, and I think you get better **value for money**[5] in a smaller town or village.

On the positive side, **you get**[6] a real **mix**[7] of people and nationalities in a big city; that makes life more interesting. I also enjoy the fact that there's always something **going on**[8] in a big city, so life is never **dull**[9]."

[1] full of people; *opp* **quiet**
[2] dirty air and water
[3] the number of crimes that happen
[4] in the period when it is dark
[5] If something is **good value for money**, you are happy with what you receive for the amount of money you pay.
[6] you find / there exists
[7] different types
[8] happening
[9] boring; *opp* exciting

Exercises

27.1 **Match the words on the left with the words on the right.**

1 town	[d]	a for money
2 traffic	[ ]	b hour
3 night	[ ]	c rate
4 value	[ ]	d centre
5 crime	[ ]	e space
6 rush	[ ]	f jam
7 car	[ ]	g life
8 parking	[ ]	h park

27.2 **Write the opposite.**

1 It's safe. *It's dangerous*
2 It was crowded. .....
3 It's very clean. .....
4 It was very exciting. .....
5 There are advantages. .....
6 There's a place to park. .....

27.3 **Complete the dialogues with one word in each gap.**

1 A: Is there plenty to do in the evening?
B: Yes, the *nightlife* is great.
2 A: And are there lots of ..... activities in the town?
B: Yes. There's a cinema, theatre, concerts, and so on.
3 A: Is it good for shopping?
B: Yes, there's a ..... of shops.
4 A: Are you worried about walking home late in the evening?
B: Yes, it can be dangerous at ..... .
5 A: Is the traffic bad?
B: Yes, I often get ..... in traffic jams.
6 A: Is your flat expensive?
B: Well, it's not cheap but I think it's quite good ..... for money.

27.4 **Rewrite the sentences without the underlined words. Keep the meaning the same.**

1 There were <u>different types</u> of people there.	There was a good *mix* of people there.
2 I was <u>very tired</u>.	I was ..... .
3 I was very <u>nervous and worried</u>.	I was very ..... .
4 The place is always <u>full of activity</u>.	The place is always very ..... .
5 The <u>air is dirty</u>.	There's a lot of ..... .
6 They want to do everything <u>very quickly</u>.	They want to do everything in a ..... .
7 There was nowhere to <u>leave the car</u>.	There was nowhere to ..... .
8 There isn't much <u>happening</u> here.	There isn't much ..... here.
9 Poverty <u>doesn't exist</u> here.	You don't ..... here.

27.5

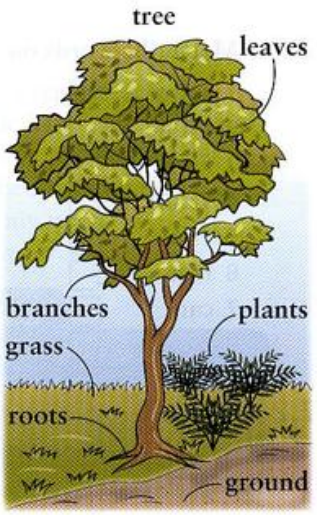
Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

1 What's the rush hour like where you live?
2 What's the nightlife like in your town?
3 Is it good for cultural activities?
4 Is there much pollution?
5 Is the crime rate bad?
6 What are the advantages/disadvantages of where you live?

28 Life in the country

A Surrounded by nature



"I grew up in the **countryside** where I was **surrounded by**[1] nature. As children, we used to play on the **banks**[2] of the river and in the **woods**[3]. In the summer we **picked**[4] apples and blackberries; in the autumn we often picked mushrooms. The **seasons**[5] were all different, and I loved the **scenery**[6], the **open spaces**[7], and the **fresh air**[8]. I still do."

[1] nature was everywhere around me
[2] the side of the river
[3] groups of trees
[4] took them from the tree/plant
[5] spring, summer, autumn, winter
[6] the natural beauty you see around you
[7] empty areas of land
[8] naturally clean air

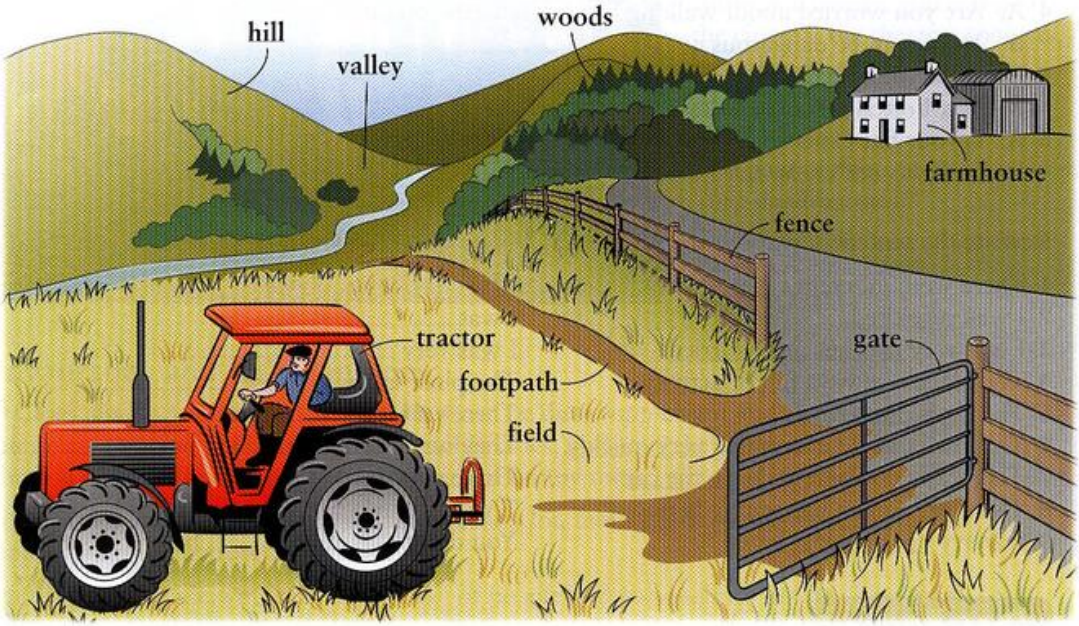
Common mistakes

I like being **in the countryside**. OR I like being **surrounded by nature**. (NOT I like being ~~in the nature~~.)

B Working in the country

"My uncle **owns**[1] a farm. He **keeps**[2] a few animals, but mostly he grows **crops** like rice, wheat and potatoes. **Farming** is a hard life: my uncle is usually **up**[3] at five in the morning, and sometimes his work isn't finished until **sunset**[4]."

[1] has (something that legally belongs to him)
[2] owns and looks after them
[3] not in bed
[4] when the sun goes down in the evening



C The disadvantages of country life

"**The worst thing about** living in a **village**[1] is that **there isn't much to do** in the evening, apart from going to the village pub. The nearest town is eight miles **away**[2], and **public transport**[3] is **hopeless**[4]. And, of course, **you don't get**[5] many shops in a village."

[1] a place smaller than a town
[2] a distance from a place
[3] buses and trains for people to use
[4] terrible
[5] there aren't / you don't find

Exercises

28.1 These things all grow, but what are they? Put the letters in the right order.

1 seret trees
2 sargs .....
3 velase .....
4 odows .....
5 tnpsal .....
6 toros .....
7 chesranb .....
8 roscp .....

28.2 Complete the dialogues.

1 A: It must be beautiful when the sun goes down over the valley.
B: It is. The sunsets are lovely here.

2 A: Have you ever lived in a town?
B: No, I've always lived in the ..... .

3 A: Is Dad ..... yet?
B: He must be. He's not in bed.

4 A: Is it your dad's farm?
B: No, he doesn't ..... it. He's just the farm manager.

5 A: Do you enjoy the summer?
B: Yes, but spring is my favourite ..... .

6 A: Did it rain a lot last night?
B: Yes. When I went outside this morning, the ..... was very wet.

7 A: Do they ..... many animals?
B: Yes, they've got sheep, cows and goats.

28.3 Look at the picture in section B again, then cover it and complete the text.

We walked alongside the [1] fence , opened the [2] ..... , and said 'hello' to the man on the [3] ..... . We then followed the [4] ..... across the [5] ..... and down into the [6] ..... . We stopped and had a picnic by the river. After that, we walked up through the [7] ..... and then finally back to the [8] ..... , where we stopped and bought some eggs.

28.4 Cover the left-hand page. Complete the advantages and disadvantages of living in the country.

Some of the best things about living in the country are:

- the beautiful [1] scenery
- the open [2] .....
- the fresh [3] .....
- being able to go out and [4] ..... fruit
- the fact you are [5] ..... by nature.

Some of the [6] ..... things about living in the country are that:

- you don't [7] ..... many shops
- [8] ..... transport is [9] .....
- there isn't [10] ..... to do in the evening, and the nearest town might be a long way [11] ..... .

28.5

Over to you

What do you think are the advantages and disadvantages of living in the countryside? Do you agree with the ideas above? Can you think of any other advantages and disadvantages? If possible, discuss your ideas with someone else.

29 Transport

A Vehicles

Vehicle is the general word for all types of road transport.

bus

coach

lorry (also called **truck**)

van

bicycle

motorbike

B Travelling around

bus/coach	train	plane	taxi	bicycle
bus/coach driver	train driver	**pilot**	taxi driver	**cyclist**
(£) **bus fare**	**train fare**	**airfare**	fare	
get / catch / go by	get / catch / go by	**fly**	get/take	**go by bike / cycle / ride a bike**
get on/off	get on/off	get on/off	**get in / out (of)**	get on/off
bus stop / bus station	**platform** / train station	airport	**taxi rank**	
journey	journey	**flight**		

I **go** to work **by bus**. It's only three **stops**.
We **got the train** to Cardiff, but the **journey** was terrible.
When the **bus fares** went up last month, my dad started **cycling** to work.
I **got out of** the taxi and almost walked away without paying the **fare**.
If there are more **flights**, **airfares** should be cheaper.
We were going to **get the train** to Paris, but in the end we decided to **fly**.

Common mistakes
It was a good **journey**. (NOT It was a good ~~travel~~.)

C Are you happy with public transport?*

Where I live buses are not very **convenient**[1]; the nearest bus stop is half a mile **away**[2]. And when I do get the bus, I often have to **wait in a queue**[3] for about twenty minutes, and then three come along at the same time!

People are always **complaining about**[4] the bus service, but where I live it's good. I've got a bus stop **round the corner**[5] and buses **run** every ten minutes for most of the day, and they're usually **reliable**[6].

I get the train to work. Trains are expensive – a **return**[7] to Oxford is twenty pounds – but I've got a **season ticket**[8], and that makes it cheaper. My only real **complaint** is that if I **miss**[9] my train, I have to wait half an hour for the next one.

* buses and trains for people to use
[1] near or easy to use
[2] the distance from a place
[3] stand in a line
[4] saying they are unhappy / not satisfied with
[5] very near
[6] you can trust them
[7] a ticket for a journey to a place and back
[8] a ticket you can use many times within a period of time without paying each time
[9] don't catch (a train or bus)

Exercises

29.1 Choose the correct word(s) to complete the sentences.

1 We were late, so we had to *get* / *catch* a taxi.
2 You mustn't *ride* / *drive* a motorbike without a helmet in the UK.
3 She told him to *get in* / *get on* the car and fasten his seat belt.
4 The *journey* / *travel* to the airport takes half an hour.
5 Trains to the airport *travel* / *run* every half hour.
6 The pilot didn't want to *drive* / *fly* the plane in such bad weather.
7 They left a bit late and *lost* / *missed* the bus.
8 I see that train *fares* / *tickets* are going up again.
9 You mustn't speak to the bus *pilot* / *driver* when he is driving.
10 We must get *off* / *out* the bus at the next *station* / *stop*.

29.2 Test your knowledge. Can you label the vehicles without looking at the opposite page?

1 bus ..... 3 ..... 5 .....

2 ..... 4 ..... 6 .....

29.3 Complete the sentences.

1 I wasn't happy with the service, so I made a complaint .
2 The flight was fine but we had a terrible ..... from the airport to our hotel.
3 Where I live, the public transport is not very ..... because the nearest bus stop is two kilometres ..... , and there are no trains at all.
4 The train station is just round the ..... from where I live.
5 Buses are not very ..... . Sometimes they come every five minutes, but other times you have to wait for forty minutes.
6 When I got to the bus stop there was a long ..... of people.
7 Train fares are crazy: a ..... to Glasgow costs more than two singles.
8 People are always ..... about the buses, but I don't think they're that bad.
9 I use the trains every day for work, so I've got a ..... ticket.
10 Your train is going to depart from ..... six at 10:25.

29.4

Over to you

Answer the questions about transport in your country. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

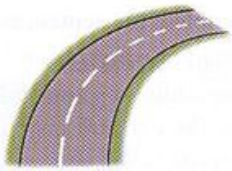
1 Are trains more reliable than buses?
2 Are return tickets usually twice the price of a single?
3 Is where you live convenient for public transport? Why? / Why not?
4 Do you have a season ticket for the bus or train? Does it save you much money?
5 How often do you take a taxi? Why, and where do you go to?
6 How often do you ride a bike?

30 On the road

A Roads

traffic lights

(road) junction

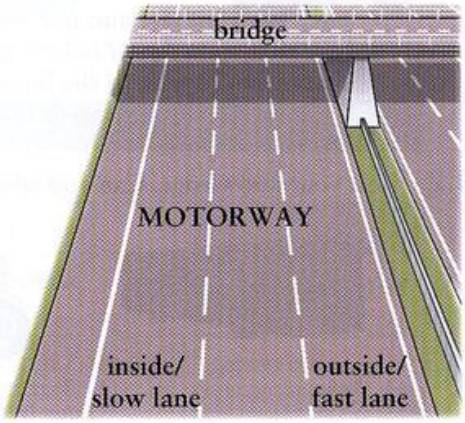


a **bend** in the road
(this road **bends** to the right)

pedestrian crossing

no overtaking
[you can't pass another car]

speed limit



B Finding your way

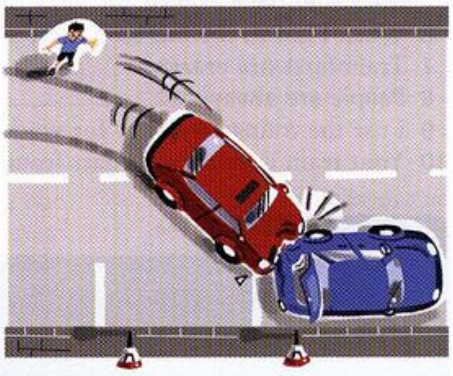
"Yesterday, I **got lost**[1] **on my way to**[2] the airport. I decided to use side roads and go **via**[3] the village of Pensford, but I took the wrong **turning**[4] just before I got there, and I **ended up**[5] in a supermarket car park. Fortunately I was able to **ask** someone **the way**[6], and a very kind woman **directed**[7] me to the A38, where I could then follow **signs** for the airport."

[1] didn't know where I was
[2] while I was going to (the airport)
[3] go through somewhere to get to a destination
[4] corner where one road meets another
[5] found myself in a place I didn't expect to be in
[6] ask how to get to a place
[7] told me how to get to a place

C An accident

"I saw an **accident** this morning on the **main road**[1] into town. A **pedestrian**[2] – a young boy – stepped off the **pavement**[3] and into the road just as a car was **approaching**[4]. The driver **braked**[5], but the car **swerved**[6] and **crashed into** a **parked car**[7] on the opposite side of the road. Fortunately the driver wasn't **injured** but both cars were quite badly **damaged**."

[1] important road
[2] a person walking
[3] the place where pedestrians walk
[4] coming closer
[5] put his foot on the **brake** to stop the car
[6] changed direction suddenly and without control
[7] a car next to the pavement, not moving



Language help

You **damage** a thing [harm or break it] but **injure** a person [hurt them]. The related nouns are **damage** and **injury**, e.g. *There was a lot of **damage to** the bike, but the cyclist only had minor **injuries**.*

Exercises

30.1 **Which words are being defined?**

1 part of a road that is separated from other parts by a line lane
2 people who are walking .....
3 the place where people usually walk .....
4 the place where people can cross the road .....
5 the place where two roads meet .....
6 the thing you put your foot on to stop a car .....
7 a message or symbol beside the road that gives information .....

30.2 **Complete the information for these road signs.**

1 50 mph speed limit

3 .....

5 end of .....

7 a ..... in the road

2 there is only one .....

4 no .....

6 low .....

8 .....

30.3 **Rewrite the sentences on the left starting with the words given. Keep a similar meaning.**

1 I asked him how to get to the bank.	I asked him the way to the bank.
2 I didn't know where I was in the town centre.	I got ..... in the town centre.
3 You can ask someone to tell you how to get here.	You can ask someone to ..... you.
4 I went through Ledbury to get to Malvern.	I went to Malvern ..... Ledbury.
5 I was going to the station.	I was on my ..... to the station.
6 We arrived unexpectedly by the river.	We ..... up by the river.
7 I turned left instead of right.	I took the wrong ..... .

30.4 **Complete the text.**

I was on the [1] main road into town today and I saw an [2] ..... . I was [3] ..... a roundabout when the guy behind tried to [4] ..... me and the driver in front of me. He was driving too fast – over the [5] ..... limit – and he lost control of the car. He had to [6] ..... to avoid a car on the other side of the road, and in the end he [7] ..... into a tree. The car was badly [8] ..... , but to my surprise, the man got out of the car with no [9] ..... at all.

30.5 **Over to you**

Answer the questions about your own country. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

1 Do you have a speed limit on motorways? If so, what is it?
2 How many lanes do motorways usually have?
3 Do drivers usually stop for pedestrians at pedestrian crossings? If not, why not?
4 Do many people park their cars on the pavements? Why? / Why not?

31 Notices and warnings

A Notices

on a machine that is not working, e.g. vending machine (above)

in the window of a hotel; the hotel is full

outside a theatre; all the tickets have been sold

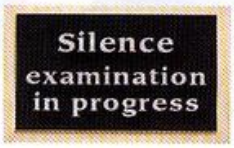
outside a museum; you can go in free

B Do this!

wait in a line on the other side of this notice, e.g. in a bank or post office

stay on the right side, e.g. on the underground

do not walk on the grass



be quiet, an exam is happening now

C Don't do this!

you cannot leave your car here

you cannot go in here

you cannot go out here

on a hotel door; leave me to sleep

don't put a bag down and walk away

do not give food to the animals

D Warnings*

Take care you don't hit your head on a low door.

Be careful. There's a step.

be careful, this parcel will break easily

*something that tells you that something bad may happen

Exercises

31.1 Complete these notices and warnings. More than one answer may be possible.

1 NO PARKING
2 MIND THE .....
3 ADMISSION .....
4 OUT OF .....
5 NO .....
6 DO NOT .....
7 PLEASE QUEUE .....
8 MIND YOUR .....
9 PLEASE DO NOT .....
10 KEEP OFF .....
11 KEEP .....
12 SILENCE EXAMINATION .....

31.2 Where could you see these notices or warnings?

1 On a door in a public building.

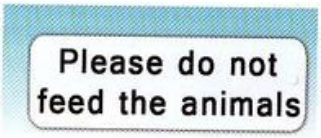
4 .....

6 .....

2 .....

5 .....

7 .....



3 .....

31.3 What notice could you see in each of these places?

1 on the underground — Keep right
2 in a waiting area in a busy airport .....
3 on the door of a hotel room at 9 am .....
4 in front of garage doors .....
5 above the window of a train .....
6 on a door going into a low room .....
7 outside a museum or art gallery .....
8 outside a room where students are doing an exam .....

31.4 Write down five more notices from the opposite page that you could see in a school or college.

Mind your head .....
.....
.....
.....
.....

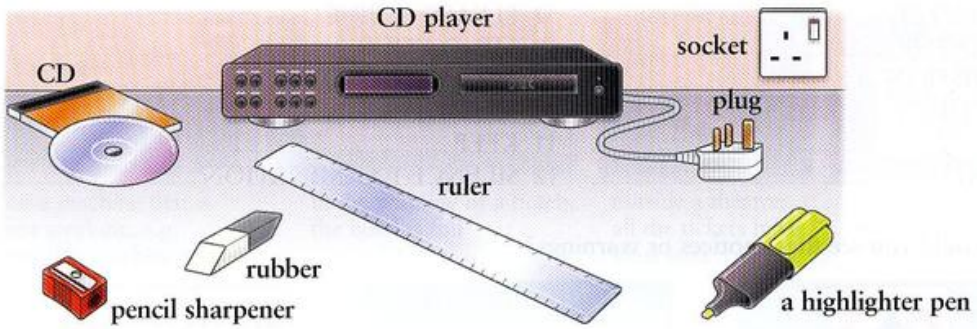
31.5

Over to you

Look for other notices (in English or your first language). Can you understand the English notices? Can you translate the ones in your own language? Try to find four more notices in the next week.

32 Classroom language

A Equipment and uses



You use a rubber to **rub something out**, e.g. writing.
You use a ruler to **measure** something.
You use a pencil sharpener to **sharpen** pencils.
You use a highlighter pen to **highlight** a word.

B Classroom activities

Teachers or students do these things in the classroom.

look up a word in a dictionary [find the meaning of a word]
borrow someone's dictionary or rubber [use it and then return it]
plug in the CD player [put the **plug** in the electric **socket**]
turn up the volume on the CD player [increase the volume; make it louder; *opp* **turn (it) down**]
correct students' English [give the correct English if students make mistakes]

Language help

If **you lend someone something**, you give it to them for a period of time; if **you borrow something from someone**, you get it from them.
*Could **you lend me** your pen?* means the same as *Could **I borrow** your pen?*

Teachers may ask students to do these things in the classroom.

I'd like you to work with a **partner**. [someone else, i.e. another student]
Henrique, could you **swap places** with Lorena? [change seats / sit in each other's seats]
Kim, could you **share** your book with Petra? [use it together at the same time]
Repeat this sentence after me. [say it again]

C Questions about vocabulary

Q: **What does** *tiny* **mean?**
A: It means 'very small'.

Q: **How** do you **pronounce** *weight*?
A: It's pronounced /weɪt/, like *wait*.

Q: How do you **spell** *bicycle*?
A: B-I-C-Y-C-L-E.

Q: How do you **use** the word ***wow***?
A: We use it to show that we think something is fantastic or surprising, e.g. ***Wow***, look at that car.

Q: Could you **explain the difference between** *lend* **and** *give*?
A: If you lend something to someone, they have to give it back. If you give something to them, they can keep it.

Language help

verb	noun	verb	noun
mean	**meaning**	spell	**spelling**
pronounce	**pronunciation**	explain	**explanation**
repeat	**repetition**	use	**use**

Exercises

32.1 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

1 explain	[g]	a places
2 look up	[ ]	b a mistake
3 sharpen	[ ]	c a word
4 swap	[ ]	d with a partner
5 plug in	[ ]	e a dictionary
6 work	[ ]	f the CD player
7 borrow	[ ]	g the meaning
8 correct	[ ]	h a pencil

32.2 Answer the questions.

1 What do you put in a CD player? a CD
2 What do you use a dictionary for? .....
3 What do you put in a socket? .....
4 What do you use a rubber for? .....
5 Why do you share a book? .....
6 What do you use a highlighter pen for? .....
7 What do you use a pencil sharpener for? .....
8 What do you use a ruler for? .....

32.3 Here are some answers about *swap*. Write the questions.

1 A: What does 'swap' mean?
B: It means to change something for something else.
2 A: .....
B: Like shop or stop.
3 A: .....
B: S-W-A-P.
4 A: .....
B: You could say: *I can't see the board from here. Could you* ***swap*** *places with me?*

32.4 Read the sentences on the left, then write a suitable request on the right.

1 You want to look up a word.	Could I borrow your dictionary?
2 You can't hear the CD player.	Could you .....
3 You need to borrow a dictionary.	Could you .....
4 You didn't hear what the teacher said.	Could you .....
5 You want to know the difference between *lend* and *borrow*.	Could you .....
6 You need to use someone's ruler.	Could I .....
7 You want to sit in someone else's seat.	Could we .....

32.5

Over to you

Think about your last lesson (in English or any other subject). Did you do any of these things:

use a highlighter pen? look up any words? swap places with anyone? share a book with anyone? borrow anything? use a ruler? use a rubber? lend someone a pencil?

33 School education

A The school system

This is the **system** for **state education** in most parts of England and Wales. State schools are free and operated by the country. Parents pay to send their children to **private** schools.

age	education
3	Almost all children **attend** [go to; *fml*] **nursery school** for up to 15 hours a week.
5	Everyone starts **primary school**.
11	**Pupils** [students at school] go to **secondary school**.
16	Pupils **take/do** GCSE **exams**, in up to ten subjects. Then they can **leave school** and **get a job**, or go to a college for **vocational** [job] **training**, e.g. hotel management or travel and tourism courses, or they can **stay at school** for two more years.
18	Pupils take 'A' level exams in three or four subjects, and then they can leave school and get a job or **go on to** university [continue their education at university], or go to a college for further education/training, e.g. teaching or business studies.

B The school timetable

The school day is **divided into** about 5–7 lessons, and over the course of a week, most pupils **do/study** about ten **subjects**, including English, maths, history, science, etc. There's usually a one-hour lunch **break** [period of rest between work], and a break in the morning and afternoon as well.

Language help

In American English the subject is **math**, but in British English it is **maths**.

The school year is usually divided into three **terms** [periods of study], with each term being about 13 weeks, although some schools are now having shorter terms and more frequent holidays. At the end of the school year, pupils usually **take/do** exams before they **break up** [end classes for the term]. After the summer holidays, they **go back** [return] for the new school year.

C School rules*

"**In the past** schools generally had more rules, and if you **broke the rules**[1], you were **punished**. At my school, for example, pupils sometimes had to **stay behind**[2] and write an essay. I used to **get into trouble**[3] for wearing **lipstick**.

I remember we had to **call** the **male** teachers 'sir' and **female** teachers 'miss', and we had to **wear** a horrible **uniform**[4]. Nowadays, the **atmosphere**[5] is more **relaxed**[6]: older pupils can often **dress**[7] the way they want – as long as they're reasonably **smart**[8] – and the teachers are not as **strict**[9]."

* instructions telling you what you must or must not do

[1] did something wrong
[2] stay in a place when others leave
[3] do something wrong and be punished
[4] special clothes
[5] the feeling in a place or situation
[6] comfortable and informal
[7] wear clothes
[8] well dressed and not too casual
[9] A strict teacher punishes pupils who do something wrong.

lipstick

Exercises

33.1 **Match the words on the left with the words on the right.**

1 go	[e]	a the rules
2 leave	[ ]	b a uniform
3 take	[ ]	c into trouble
4 wear	[ ]	d at school
5 study	[ ]	e to school
6 stay	[ ]	f school
7 get	[ ]	g an exam
8 break	[ ]	h a subject

33.2 **Complete the sentences about state schools in England.**

1 When they're three, children can go to nursery school.
2 At the age of five they go to ..... school.
3 At the age of eleven they go to ..... school.
4 When they're sixteen they ..... exams, and afterwards they can ..... school if they want.
5 Many pupils ..... at school for another two years and do 'A' levels.
6 Nowadays, a lot of pupils ..... to university after they leave school.

33.3 **Choose the correct word to complete the sentences. Sometimes both are correct.**

1 We *take* / *do* exams in the summer. Both are correct.
2 The school *timetable* / *schedule* is more or less the same every day.
3 The day is divided *into* / *out of* seven lessons.
4 The pupils *do* / *study* about ten subjects.
5 There is usually a *rest* / *break* three times a day.
6 Schools often *break out* / *break up* after they finish exams.
7 After pupils leave school, many of them *take* / *get* a job.
8 Pupils can *wear* / *dress* the way they want.

33.4 **Complete the sentences.**

1 There were three terms in the school year.
2 I had to ..... a uniform.
3 I had to call the ..... teachers 'sir' and ..... teachers 'miss'.
4 I occasionally got into ..... at school for doing things I shouldn't do.
5 The teachers at my school were strict, and they ..... pupils who broke the rules.
6 My school had a really nice, relaxed ..... .

33.5

Over to you

Answer the questions about the education system in your country. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

1 Do you have state schools and private schools?
2 Do all children have nursery education?
3 When do children go to primary school and secondary school?
4 Do all schools have the same terms?
5 When can children leave school?
6 Do pupils normally have to wear a uniform, or can they wear what they want?
7 Are teachers usually quite strict?
8 Is the atmosphere quite relaxed in most schools?

34 Studying English and taking exams

A How are they getting on?*

This is what Katya, an English teacher, thinks about some of her students.

Katya

"Ayumi has a **wide vocabulary** [knows a lot of words] and speaks very **accurately** [without mistakes], but she needs to practise her speaking more in order to become more **fluent** [able to speak naturally without stopping]."

"Cesar is quite fluent, but his **accent** [the way he pronounces words] is not very good. In particular, he has problems with certain **consonants**. [letters of the **alphabet** (a–z), which are not the **vowels** a, e, i, o, u]"

"Emre has no problem **making himself understood** [saying things in a way people understand], but he needs to **increase** his vocabulary [make it bigger], because at the moment it's quite **basic** [elementary; *syn* **simple**]."

"Olga is always **willing to** [happy and ready to] **experiment** with language [try something new to see what it is like]. For that reason she sometimes **gets things wrong** [makes mistakes], but she learns from her mistakes and she's making a lot of progress."

"Andreas is a fantastic language learner. He **picks things up** [learns things without trying] very quickly, and he **has a good ear for language** [is good at hearing, repeating and understanding sounds and words]."

*What progress are they making?

Common mistakes

We use adjectives with nouns, and adverbs with verbs.
He's a **fluent** speaker. (NOT He's a ~~fluently~~ speaker.) She speaks **accurately**. (NOT She speaks ~~accurate~~.)
I need to speak English **well**. (NOT I need to speak English ~~good~~.)

B Examinations

Language help

You can **take** or **do** an exam (NOT ~~make~~ an exam). If you are successful and do well, you **pass**; if you are not successful and do badly, you **fail**. Before taking an exam, you **revise for** the exam [study / prepare for the exam]. Sometimes you can also **retake** an exam [do it again].

"My students are **taking** the Cambridge First Certificate **exam** in June, and for some of them it will be **hard work**[1]. I think Cesar might fail, but he's **doing his best**[2], so with a bit of luck he might pass. I expect most of the others to pass. Andreas is a strong **candidate**[3], and I'm sure he'll get a good **grade** (*syn* **mark**). I think Ayumi and Olga will also **do well**.

At the moment I'm trying to **get through**[4] the coursebook so that we can do some **revision**[5]. I think the most important thing is to do some **exam preparation**[6]. Today I want the students to **do/write an essay**[7]. Most of them still find it difficult to write accurately, so I need to **work on** that with them."

[1] work that requires a lot of effort
[2] making as much effort as he can; *syn* **trying his best**
[3] someone who is taking an exam
[4] finish
[5] revise for the exam
[6] getting ready for the exam
[7] a short piece of writing about a particular subject

Exercises

34.1 **Choose the correct word to complete the sentences. Sometimes both are correct.**

1 We *made* / (got) something wrong in the first question.
2 I had to *do* / *write* an essay.
3 My sister picks *up* / *out* languages very quickly.
4 I will have to *revise for* / *revise* my exam next week.
5 The students always *do* / *make* their best.
6 Tomas wants to *do* / *take* the exam in June.
7 Karin *failed* / *lost* the exam, but she can retake it next year.

34.2 **Complete the sentences. The first letter has been given to help you.**

1 There are twenty-six letters in the a*lphabet* .
2 A+ is the highest g..... you can get.
3 There are over 100 c..... taking the exam.
4 We had to write an e..... for homework in not more than 200 words.
5 I need to w..... on my grammar; it's not very good.
6 I need to i..... my vocabulary; it's still very b..... .
7 A and E are v..... ; B, C and D are c..... .
8 Studying for my exam is h..... w..... , but it will be worth the effort.
9 Our teacher was always w..... to help us with our exam preparation.

34.3 **Rewrite the sentences on the left starting with the words given. Keep a similar meaning.**

1 Can you retake the exam?	Can you do *the exam again* ?
2 They will need to revise for the exam.	They will need to do some ..... .
3 I will work as hard as I can.	I will do ..... .
4 We need to prepare for the exam.	We need to do some ..... .
5 I make mistakes.	I get ..... .
6 I can listen and repeat things accurately.	I have a good ..... .

34.4 **Complete the dialogues.**

1 A: Do you think Hiroko will do well?
B: Yes, I'm sure she'll *pass* the exam.
2 A: Is her pronunciation good?
B: No, she has quite a strong ..... .
3 A: Can she speak naturally without stopping?
B: Yes, she's quite ..... .
4 A: And does she make many mistakes?
B: No, she's quite ..... when she speaks.
5 A: Does he know a lot of English?
B: No, but he can make himself ..... .
6 A: Will you finish the book?
B: Yeah, we should get ..... it.
7 A: Did Amy do ..... in her exam?
B: Yes, she got 80%.

34.5 **Over to you**

Answer the questions. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

Do you think you ...

... can make yourself understood?	... have a wide vocabulary?
... have a strong accent?	... have a good ear for language?
... are quite accurate?	... pick things up quickly?
... are quite fluent?	... often experiment with new language?

35 University education

A Subjects

You can **do/study** these subjects at university but not always at school.

medicine (to become a doctor)
engineering (to become an engineer)
economics (to become an **economist**)
business studies (to become a **businessman/woman** and **go into business**)
law (to become a lawyer)
architecture (to become an **architect**)
psychology (to become a **psychologist**)

B Studying at university

Some students go to university because they enjoy studying, others just want a **qualification**[1]. First, however, you have to get good **grades** in your final school exams to **get a place** at many universities. You can then **study for / do a degree**[2]. If you complete the course **successfully**, you get your **degree**[3] and receive a **certificate**[4]. In the UK, most degree courses **last**[5] three years, although some take longer, e.g. medicine or law.

Teachers at university are usually called **lecturers**, and most of the **teaching** is done through **lectures**[6]. The most senior lecturers have the title **Professor**. Students doing **arts** subjects, e.g. English or history, will spend time working in the **library** and writing **essays**[7]. Students doing **science** degrees, e.g. physics or chemistry, will probably spend a lot of their time working in a **laboratory** (*infml* **lab**).

library

laboratory (lab)

[1] something that you get when you are successful in an exam
[2] do a course at university
[3] (also the word for) a university qualification
[4] a document that shows you have completed a course successfully
[5] continue for
[6] the lecturer talks and the students listen
[7] short pieces of writing on a particular subject

Language help

noun	verb	adjective
qualification	**qualify**	**qualified**
success	**succeed (in sth / in doing sth)**	**(un)**successful

C Postgraduate degrees

When students are doing their first degree, they are called **undergraduates**. When they complete their degree, they are **graduates**. Some graduates **go on to do** [do something in the future] a Master's, e.g. in the UK an MA (Master of Arts) or MSc (Master of Science). These are called **postgraduate degrees**. The longest one is a PhD (Doctor of Philosophy) where students **do research** [make a detailed study of one particular subject] for at least three years.

Exercises

35.1 **Complete the sentences.**

1 To become a psychologist you need to study psychology.
2 To become an engineer you need to study .....
3 To become a doctor you need to study .....
4 To become an economist you need to study .....
5 To become a lawyer you need to study .....
6 To become an architect you need to study .....

35.2 **Put the sentences in the correct order.**

I did a degree course. ☐
I passed with good grades. ☐
I got a Master's. ☐
I did a postgraduate course. ☐
I did my final exams at school. 1
I became an undergraduate. ☐
I got a place at university. ☐
I got a degree in business studies. ☐

35.3 **Are the sentences about English universities true or false? If a sentence is false, correct it.**

1 The teachers are all called professors. False. Most teachers are called lecturers.
2 Anyone can go to university if they want to. .....
3 Some students go to university just to get a qualification. .....
4 Most university degree courses in the UK last two years. .....
5 Students go to lectures at university. .....
6 If you are unsuccessful, you get a degree. .....
7 Students studying for their first degree are called graduates. .....
8 Science students have to write a lot of essays. .....
9 A PhD is a postgraduate degree. .....
10 If you study arts subjects, you work in a laboratory. .....

35.4 **Complete the text.**

Stephen got very good [1] grades in his final school exams, and he went to university and got a [2] ..... in economics. He then [3] ..... to do an MSc. The course [4] ..... a year, and at the end of it, he had an offer to go [5] ..... business with a friend. After two years though, he decided to go back to university to do [6] ..... for a PhD. He knows it will be three years' work without much money, but he loves studying, and never went to university just for a [7] ..... that would get him a good job earning a lot of money.

35.5 **Over to you**

Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

1 Do you need to pass exams before you can go to university in your country?
2 How long do most degree courses last?
3 In England the first degree is called a BA or BSc. What are they called in your country?
4 Do you have similar postgraduate degrees in your country?
5 Do you get a certificate when you finish your degree?

36 Jobs

A Working with your hands

builder
[**builds** or **repairs** homes]

carpenter
[makes things using **wood**]

plumber
[**installs** and **repairs** water pipes, etc.]

electrician
[**installs** and **repairs** electrical things, e.g. lights]

mechanic
[**repairs** cars when there is a problem]

Language help

When something is damaged or broken, we often use **repair** or **fix**.
*Dad **repaired/fixed** the window for me.* *I need someone to **fix/repair** the computer.*

With small pieces of equipment we can also use **mend**; with clothes we often use mend.
*Could you **fix/repair/mend** my watch?* *I've **mended** your trousers for you.*

B Professions*

job	what he/she does
architect	**designs** buildings
lawyer	**represents** people with legal problems
engineer	**plans** the building of roads, bridges, machines, etc.
accountant	controls the financial situation of people and companies
university lecturer	teaches in a university, e.g. gives **lectures**

* jobs that need a lot of training and/or education

C The medical profession

These people **treat** people or animals. [give medicine or medical help]

GPs [general practitioners: doctors who don't work in a hospital], **dentists** [people who look after your teeth] and **vets** [animal doctors] all work in a place called a **surgery**. In hospital there are **nurses** who look after people, and **surgeons** who **operate on** people [open the body to remove or repair a part that is damaged].

D The armed forces and the emergency services

My son **joined** the army when he was 18. [became a member of]

soldier
(in the **army**)

sailor
(in the **navy**)

pilot
(in the **air force**)

police officer
(in the **police force**)

fireman/ firefighter
(in the **fire brigade**)

Exercises

36.1 Match the job on the left with something the person uses on the right.

1 lecturer	[c]	a a gun
2 plumber	[ ]	b wood
3 accountant	[ ]	c books
4 builder	[ ]	d pipes
5 soldier	[ ]	e bricks
6 carpenter	[ ]	f numbers

36.2 Write down *one* job from the opposite page that would be difficult for the person in 1–6, and *three* jobs that would be difficult for the person in 7–9.

1 Someone who didn't go to university. dentist
2 Someone who is always sick on a boat. .....
3 Someone who is not interested in cars. .....
4 Someone who is afraid of dogs. .....
5 Someone who is afraid of heights and high places. .....
6 Someone who is terrible at numbers and maths. .....
7 Someone who isn't good at working with their hands. ....
8 Someone who cannot see very well. ....
9 Someone who will not work in the evening or at weekends. ....

36.3 Test your knowledge. Can you write down what these people do without looking at the opposite page?

1 A university lecturer teaches university students.
2 A vet .....
3 An architect .....
4 An electrician .....
5 A lawyer .....
6 A surgeon .....
7 A mechanic .....
8 A dentist .....
9 An engineer .....

36.4 Complete the dialogues.

1 A: She's a police officer.
B: Really? When did she join the police force?
2 A: He's a sailor.
B: .....
3 A: He's a fighter pilot.
B: .....
4 A: She's a soldier.
B: .....
5 A: He's a firefighter.
B: .....

36.5 **Over to you**

Write a list of friends, relatives or neighbours who have jobs. What does each person do?

37 Talking about your work

A What do you do?

People can ask what job you do in different ways; you can answer in different ways.

A: **What do you do?**

A: **What's your job?**

A: **What do you do for a living?**

B: **I'm a** doctor/ hairdresser, etc.

B: **I work in** sales / marketing / a bank, etc.

B: **I work for** Union Bank / Fiat / Sony, etc.

B What does that involve?*

James and Emma are business **consultants** [people who help others in a particular area]. Their work involves **advising** people who want to **set up** [start] a business, especially in health and fitness. James **deals with** the marketing [does the work in marketing; *syn* **handle**], while Emma is **responsible for** [in control of; *syn* **in charge of**] **products** [things that people make/**produce**] such as towels, equipment, beauty products, etc.

Common mistakes

I have a lot of work to do. (NOT I have a lot of ~~works~~ to do.)
She **advises** me. (NOT She ~~advices~~ me.) BUT She gives me **advice**. (NOT She gives me ~~advise~~.)
My job involves a lot of travel. OR My job involves travelling. (NOT My job involves ~~to travel~~.)

Amy is a manager in a veterinary surgery. She **runs** [organises or controls] the **day-to-day** [happening every day] business of the surgery and is in charge of a small team: three receptionists, an accounts manager and a secretary. Her work involves a lot of **admin** [short for administration] such as buying food, medicine and equipment; she also handles any **complaints** that customers make [when customers **complain** / say that something is wrong or is not satisfactory].

* What do you have to do exactly?

C Pay

Most workers **are paid** [receive money] every month; this is called a **salary**. Your **income** is the total amount of money you receive in a year. This might be money from one job; it might be money from two jobs. We can express this in different ways:
My **income** is about £25,000. OR I **earn/make** about £25,000 **a year** [every year].
Some of that income you can keep, but some goes to the government; in the UK this is called **income tax**, e.g. *I lose 20% of my income in income tax.*

Language help

A **salary** is money paid to professional people, e.g. doctors or teachers, and to office workers for the work they do, and is usually paid into a person's bank account every month. **Wages** are usually paid for each hour/day/week of work to people who do more physical jobs, e.g. building or cleaning.

D Conditions*

Most people work **fixed** hours [always the same], e.g. 9 am to 5.30 pm. We often call this a **nine-to-five** job. Other people have to **do/work overtime** [work extra hours]. Some people get paid for overtime; others don't. Some people have good working conditions, e.g. nice offices, paid holidays, extra time **off** [not at work] for a new mother and father when a baby is born, etc. There is also a **minimum wage** [an amount of money workers receive, and employers cannot pay less than this].

* the situation in which people work or live

Exercises

37.1 **Tick (✓) the words which are directly connected with *money*.**

pay ✓	earn	handle	wages
salary	income	consult	product

37.2 **Match the words on the left with the words on the right.**

1 set up	[b]	a clients
2 in charge	[ ]	b a company
3 deal	[ ]	c overtime
4 earn	[ ]	d with complaints
5 do	[ ]	e of a small department
6 advise	[ ]	f money

37.3 **Rewrite the sentences on the left starting with the words given. Keep a similar meaning.**

1 What do you do?	What's your job?
2 I'm a marketing assistant.	I work
3 I'm employed by the government.	I work
4 I earn £22,000 a year from my two jobs.	My
5 What do you have to do exactly?	What does your job
6 I'm responsible for the reception area.	I'm in
7 What's your job?	What do you do for
8 I have to read government reports.	My job involves
9 I advise clients.	I give
10 I complained about the service.	I made

37.4 **Complete the texts. Put one word in each gap.**

Alexander Carpenter works [1] *in* sales, and he's a regional manager. He [2] ..... the north-west region and he's [3] ..... for a small team of five other sales people. His job [4] ..... a lot of travelling within the region, and he's in contact with his team on a day-to-[5] ..... basis. It's not a nine-to-[6] ..... job: Alexander has to do a lot of [7] ..... . Fortunately he can [8] ..... a lot more money by doing this, and his working [9] ..... are quite good. After income [10] ..... he makes £60,000 [11] ..... year. Recently his wife had a baby, but the company gave him extra time [12] ..... to be with her after the birth.

Kelly Bradbury is a financial adviser for a bank. She specialises in mortgages, which means that she [13] ..... people who want to buy a flat or a house. At the moment Kelly spends a lot of her time [14] ..... with young people who are trying to buy a property for the first time, which is not easy. She works [15] ..... hours – 9 am to 5 pm – and she doesn't have to [16] ..... overtime.

37.5

Over to you

Answer the questions about working conditions in your country. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

1 What are normal working hours for most office jobs in your country?
2 How much income tax do most people pay? (e.g. 10% or 20% of what they earn)
3 Do male and female workers normally get time off if they have a baby? If so, how much?
4 Is there a minimum wage? If so, do you know what it is?

38 Making a career

A Getting a job*

"When I left school, I **applied for**[1] jobs in different companies, and finally, after sending out lots of CVs[2] and having some **interviews**[3], a small company **employed** me[4]. I didn't earn a lot, but the company gave me some **training**[5], which was good."

* finding a job
[1] wrote a letter of **application** for
[2] a document which describes your education and the jobs you have done
[3] a meeting where someone asks you questions to see if you are suitable for a job
[4] gave me a job
[5] help and advice to learn how to do a job or activity

Common mistakes

I had **some training**. (NOT I had ~~a training~~.) You can also **go on / do** a **training course** [a period of organised help and advice, often in a different place] (NOT ~~formation~~ or ~~stage~~).

B Promotion

"I worked hard and soon I was **promoted** [given a better job with more responsibility]. They also gave me a good **pay rise** [more money]. It was really good **experience** [knowledge you get from doing something such as a job], and when my boss left the company a few years later, they gave me an important **promotion** [a move to a higher job in the company]."

C Resignation*

"By my mid-twenties, I was getting a bit bored, and decided I wanted to work **abroad** [in another country]. So, I **quit my job** [told the company I was leaving; *syn* **resign**] and started looking for jobs in the UK. After a couple of months I got a job in London. At first I liked it, but ..."

* when you say officially you are leaving a job

D Unemployment*

"After six months, I got fed up with the job – and I think I was enjoying myself too much to work very hard. Finally, the company **sacked** me [told me to leave the company; *syn* **gave me the sack**], and after that I was **unemployed** [without a job; *syn* **out of work**] for two months. Finally I got a **part-time** job [working only part of the day or week; *opp* **full-time** job] in the kitchen of a restaurant."

* when people do not have a job

Common mistakes

Claudio didn't **have a job**. (NOT He didn't have ~~a work~~.)

E Success and retirement*

Claudio

"I loved the restaurant. I learned how to cook, and two years later I became manager. Three years after that I opened my **own** restaurant [belonging to me / it was my restaurant]. It was very **successful** [it did well and made money], and twenty years later, I **owned** five restaurants, and I was the **owner** of two hotels. I believe anyone can **succeed** [be successful] if they work hard enough – and have a little bit of luck. Last year, aged fifty, I **retired** and went back to Italy."

* the time when people stop work, often at 60 or 65

Exercises

38.1 **Match the answers on the right with the questions on the left.**

1 Why did they sack him?	[c]	a Because he was 65.
2 Why did they promote him?	[ ]	b Because he needed more training.
3 Why did he apply for the job?	[ ]	c Because he was late for work every day.
4 Why did he retire?	[ ]	d Because he was out of work.
5 Why did he quit his job?	[ ]	e Because he was the best person in the department.
6 Why did he go on the course?	[ ]	f Because he didn't like his boss.

38.2 **Complete the table.**

verb	noun	adjective
employ	(un)employment	
promote		
retire		
resign		
	success	
own		

38.3 **Complete the sentences.**

1 Lucy is hoping to *get* ..... a job in a travel agency when she leaves school.
2 I decided to work ..... to see what life was like in another country.
3 I don't want a full-time job. I'd prefer to work ..... .
4 She ..... her job when her boss refused to give her a pay ..... .
5 I didn't earn much money in the job, but it was still good ..... because the company sent me on several training ..... .
6 After they sacked me, I was out of ..... for six months.
7 It's not easy to ..... in business; you need ability and luck.
8 I think you should definitely ..... for that job.
9 Brett was terrible as a tour guide; that's why they gave him the ..... .
10 I've worked for other people most of my life, but I'd really like to run my ..... company.
11 I used to ..... a company but it wasn't a ..... ; I lost a lot of money.
12 If she's interested in that job, she'll have to write a letter of ..... .

38.4

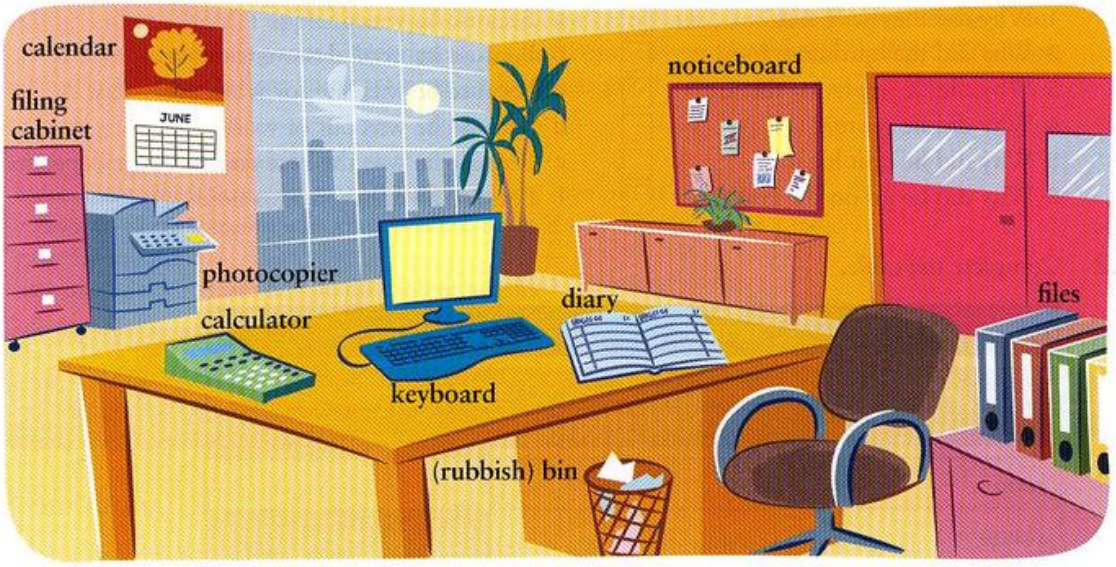
Over to you

If you have a job, answer the questions. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

1 Have you been promoted since you started working at your present company?
2 Do you normally get a good pay rise at the end of each year?
3 Have you been on many training courses since you started work?
4 Would you like to go on more training courses in the future?
5 Have you ever resigned from a job, or been given the sack?

39 Working in an office

A Office equipment



B Office work

Josh works for a company which **produces**[1] furniture. He doesn't work in the factory where the furniture is produced, but in the offices across the road.

His job **involves**[2] quite a lot of **paperwork**[3]. He **types**[4] letters to different companies, sends out **invoices**[5] to customers and sends emails.

He also has to **arrange**[6] visits to other companies, **make appointments**[7] for his boss, and sometimes he **shows** visitors **round** the factory. Occasionally he has to **attend**[8] meetings with his boss, but one of Josh's most important tasks is to **organise**[9] the office party every year.

[1] makes
[2] includes doing
[3] work that uses paper, e.g. reports, forms
[4] writes using a keyboard
[5] documents showing how much the customer has to pay
[6] plan and prepare
[7] arrange a time when you meet someone
[8] go to; *fml*
[9] plan and arrange

Language help

verb	noun	verb	noun
arrange	**arrangement**	attend	**attendance**
organise	**organisation**	produce	**production**

C Office problems

Josh is having a bad day today. The photocopier has **broken down**[1], the computer **isn't working** and the printer has **run out of**[2] paper. On top of that, two of his **colleagues**[3] are **absent**[4], just when there is **loads of**[5] work to do.

[1] stopped working
[2] has no more
[3] people you work with
[4] not in the office; *syn* **off**
[5] lots of; *infml*

Exercises

39.1 **Finish the noun in each sentence.**

1 I've just got myself a new *key* board .
2 I threw all that stuff in the *rubbish* .
3 He put most of the stuff in the *filing* .
4 It's a very boring job and I spend most of my time doing general *paper* .
5 I told him to put the details on the *notice* .

39.2 **Which words are being defined?**

1 The place where you throw away paper you don't want. bin
2 People you work with. .....
3 Something you put on a wall which tells you the date. .....
4 A book where you write down appointments and things you have to do. .....
5 A piece of paper which shows a customer what they have bought and what they must pay. .....
6 An electronic device that helps you to add up numbers and do maths. .....
7 An informal word meaning 'lots'. .....

39.3 **Complete the dialogues.**

1 A: What does the company do?
B: It produces electronic equipment.

2 A: I've ..... to see the bank manager on Friday, but I think I'm going to be away.
B: OK. Do you want me to make another ..... for you?
A: Yes, please. That would be great. Next Thursday or Friday, if possible.

3 A: Why can't we use the printer?
B: It's ..... of ink.

4 A: Do you have to ..... meetings?
B: Yes, sometimes, if my boss is away and he can't go.

5 A: We've got some visitors coming tomorrow.
B: Right. Would you like me to ..... them ..... the factory?

6 A: What does your work ..... ?
B: Basically, I have to ..... people's travel arrangements and hotel accommodation.

39.4 **Rewrite the sentences using the words in capitals. Keep a similar meaning.**

1 My boss isn't here today. OFF — My boss is off today.
2 The photocopier is broken. WORK — The photocopier .....
3 We're very busy today. LOADS — We .....
4 I have to go to a meeting. ATTEND — I have to .....
5 We don't have any more paper. RUN OUT — We .....
6 Why isn't he here this morning? ABSENT — Why .....

39.5 **Over to you**

Have you got a job? If so, are these statements true for you? If you haven't got a job, answer for someone you know.

I do lots of paperwork.	I attend meetings.	I send loads of emails.
I organise events.	I type letters.	I show people round.
I use a photocopier.	I send invoices.	I repair things that break down.

40 Running a company

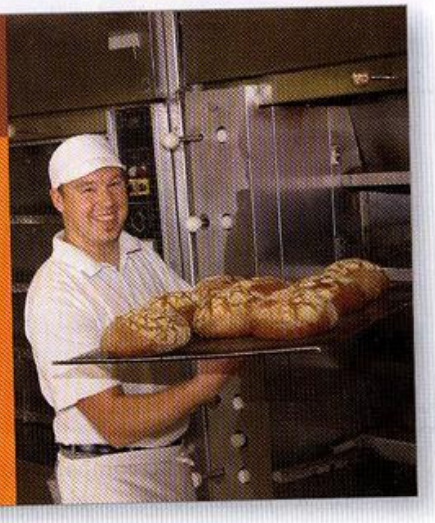
A A successful business

This is the story of a company that has **achieved a great deal** [a lot] in a short period of time.

Language help

If you **achieve** something, you have been successful in something that needed a lot of work and effort. The noun is **achievement**, e.g. *Writing a book has been my greatest* ***achievement***.

DENHAM FARM BAKERY



DENHAM FARM BAKERY[1] is a family business, with three different **generations** (father, son and granddaughter) of the family **currently**[2] working with a team of 90 **employees**. The company **was set up**[3] in 1991 with the **aim**[4] of producing **a variety**[5] **of** bread of the highest **quality**[6]. The Denham family saw there was a **growing demand**[7] for organic products in the 1990s, and they soon became **experts**[8] **in** the field of organic bread-making. The company is **run**[9] from a factory in Ilminster, where the bread is baked **daily**[10] and then **delivered**[11] to shops across the south-west of England. The **firm**[12] has **expanded**[13] a great deal in the last 20 years, but it still remains a family business.

[1] place where bread and cakes are made or sold
[2] now, at the moment (NOT ~~actually~~)
[3] started (used about a company or organisation)
[4] a plan of what you hope to achieve
[5] different types
[6] how good or bad something is
[7] when more people want to buy something
[8] people with skill/knowledge in something
[9] organised and controlled
[10] every day
[11] taken (to shops)
[12] company or business
[13] become bigger

B A view of a company

Morgan & Stenson are a firm of **accountants**[1]. They were **formerly**[2] Stenson & Son, but were **taken over**[3] by JS Morgan five years ago. James Morgan **took up** the **position**[4] of senior partner, and the company changed its name to Morgan & Stenson. The **headquarters**[5] of the firm are in Newcastle, but they have five other **branches**[6] in different parts of the north-east of England.

James Morgan is a **former** owner of a football club, with many **contacts**[7] in the football world, so many of his **clients**[8] are footballers.

Last year the company **attracted** a lot of **attention**[9] when it became the first firm of accountants to advertise on local TV and radio. At the time, James Morgan said it was his **ambition**[10] to change the **image**[11] that people have of accountants.

[1] people who control a person or company's money
[2] in the past but not now
[3] JS Morgan got control of Stenson & Son
[4] started in the job
[5] the place where the main office is
[6] offices that are part of the company
[7] people you know
[8] people who pay someone for a service
[9] caused people to notice it
[10] something someone wants to achieve
[11] the way that people think of them

Language help

We usually talk about an **ex**-wife/boyfriend, etc., but a **former** president/career/banker, etc.
Shops and organisations have **customers**; lawyers, accountants, etc. have **clients**.
We **take up** a job or activity, but we **set up** a company.

Exercises

40.1 **Tick (✓) the words which refer to people.**

headquarters	employee ✓	branches	expert	bakery
accountant	quality	client	contacts	variety

40.2 **Replace the underlined word(s) with a word or phrase that has a similar meaning.**

1 The food is delivered <u>every day</u>. daily
2 There is a real <u>need</u> for food of this quality. .....
3 Our <u>plan</u> is to open another branch. .....
4 The <u>company</u> is doing well. .....
5 We have 25 <u>workers</u>. .....
6 I <u>started</u> the business ten years ago. .....
7 Their <u>main offices</u> are in Sheffield. .....
8 He's hoping for a <u>position</u> in the company. .....
9 The firm is <u>getting bigger</u>. .....
10 The company made <u>a lot</u> of money last year. .....

40.3 **Choose the best word to complete the sentences.**

1 They're experts (in) / *on* farming.
2 When did you *set up* / *take up* tennis?
3 Her law firm has many famous *clients* / *customers*.
4 She's actually my *ex-* / *former* wife; we got divorced last year.
5 When did they *set up* / *take up* the company?
6 The shop assistant was serving a *client* / *customer*.
7 Marcel used to work here, but he's *currently* / *actually* working abroad.
8 Are they planning to *take up* / *take over* the company?
9 George Bush is *a former* / *an ex-* president of America.

40.4 **Rewrite the sentences using the words in capitals. Keep a similar meaning.**

1 He makes different cakes. VARIETY — He makes a variety of cakes.
2 They were very successful. ACHIEVE — They .....
3 I know a lot of people in banking. CONTACTS — I .....
.....
4 They used to be called BMG. FORMERLY — They .....
5 I've always wanted to fly a plane. AMBITION — It's .....
.....
6 She has a great knowledge of finance. EXPERT — She .....
7 People noticed the adverts. ATTRACT — The adverts .....

40.5 **Complete the text.**

Danielle Spinks set up her motorbike courier service (DCS) in 1979. If you wanted to send documents across London, Danielle promised to [1] deliver ..... them in less than one hour. It was only a small [2] ....., but DCS [3] ..... immediate success, so Danielle set up another [4] ..... of the company in Manchester, which was [5] ..... by her brother, Darren. The business soon [6] ..... rapidly, and it is now Danielle's [7] ..... to have a branch of her courier service in every major city in England.

41 Business and finance

A Rise and fall

These verbs describe **trends** [movements] **in sales** [how much you sell], prices, etc.

When sales or prices **rise / go up / increase**, they can do it in different ways:

They can rise **slightly**. [a bit] →

They can rise **gradually**. [slowly over a long period] ⟶

They can rise **sharply**. [quickly and by a large amount] ↗

The opposite can also happen. Prices or sales can **fall / go down / decrease** slightly, gradually or sharply. If prices don't rise *or* fall, they **stay the same.** ⟶

We use certain prepositions to say by how much something rises or falls.
The price has risen **by** 10 pence. Sales fell **from** 8,000 units **to** 6,500 units.

Rise/increase and **fall/decrease** can also be used as nouns, with certain prepositions.
There's been a **gradual rise in** prices. We've seen a **slight increase in profit.**
There's been a **sharp fall in sales.** Profits were £5 million, which is a **decrease of** 10%.

Language help

Profit is the money you receive from your business after you have paid all your costs (*opp* **loss**).
Last year the company ***made a profit of*** *€2 million but this year they could* ***make a loss.***

B Financial language

With the **economy**[1] now improving, banks are reporting positive **signs**[2] that the number of **loans**[3] is increasing.

Figures[8] published yesterday show that **trade**[9] between the two countries has now risen for the fifth year **in a row**[10].

With **inflation**[4] expected to rise, there are **growing fears**[5] that **interest rates**[6] could go up by as much as **2%**[7] next year.

Although the **value**[11] **of** the pound fell slightly against the dollar yesterday, the news that sales rose in the last **quarter**[12] has **raised**[13] hopes that we may be coming out of **recession**[14].

[1] the system by which a country's trade, industry and money are organised
[2] something which shows something is happening
[3] money that you borrow
[4] the rate at which prices increase
[5] increasing worries
[6] (see language help below)
[7] this is spoken as *two per cent*
[8] an amount shown in numbers, e.g. 500
[9] buying and selling between countries
[10] one after another with no break
[11] the money that something can be sold for
[12] (in business) a period of three months
[13] increased; you can also **raise prices**
[14] a time when the economy is not successful

Language help

Interest is what the bank **charges** you [asks you to pay] when you borrow money from them, and the **interest rate** is how much you must pay as a **percentage**, e.g. **5%**, **8%**, etc. So, if you borrow £100 for a year and the interest rate is 15% a year, you'll have to **pay back** £115.

Exercises

41.1 **Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.**

1 We made a profit *of* / *for* six million euros.
2 Sales rose *to* / *by* 10% last year.
3 The value of the shares fell *from* / *for* 240 pence to 225 pence.
4 There was a fall *of* / *from* 5% in the value of the shares.
5 There has been a gradual rise *with* / *in* profits.
6 The company made a loss two years *on* / *in* a row.
7 What's the current value *of* / *in* the euro?

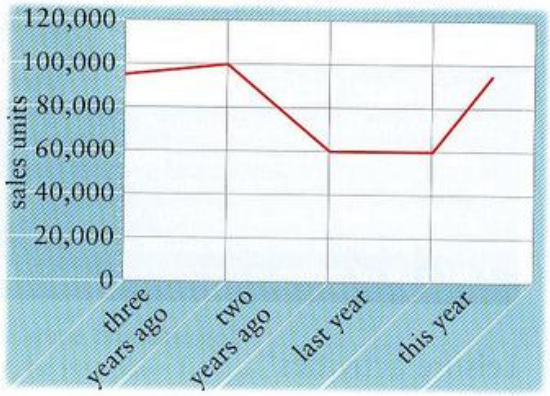
41.2 **Which words or phrases are being defined?**

1 The amount of money that something can be sold for. value
2 Money you borrow from a bank for your business. .....
3 What the bank charges you when you borrow money. .....
4 The rate at which prices increase. .....
5 The money that a company receives for its goods after paying all the costs. .....
6 Buying and selling goods and services between countries. .....
7 A movement in sales, prices, etc. over a period of time. .....

41.3 **Complete the two short texts, then answer each of the two questions.**

1 If you get a bank ..... of €500 for one year and the bank ..... you 20% ....., how much will you have to ..... to the bank at the end of the year? .....
2 If you take out a similar amount from another bank, and the interest ..... is 15 ....., how much will you ..... at the end of the year? .....

41.4 **Look at the graph and complete the text.**



The [1] graph ..... shows sales [2] ..... for the last three and a half years. Three years ago sales [3] ..... slightly and reached 100,000 units by the end of the year. The company [4] ..... a profit of almost £500,000 and decided to [5] ..... the price from £8.95 to £10.25. It had an immediate effect: there was a [6] ..... [7] ..... in sales over the year. It was bad news, and the company made a [8] ..... . And in the next year sales [9] ..... the same. However, in the first two [10] ..... of this year, they have [11] ..... [12] ..... for the first time in many years.

41.5

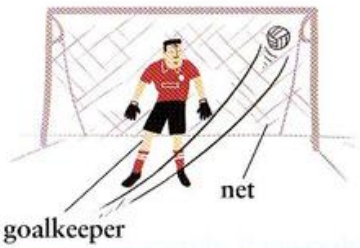
Over to you

Can you answer these questions about your own country?

1 What is the inflation rate at the moment?
2 If you borrow money from the bank, what is the approximate interest rate you will be charged?
3 Do you think the economy is doing well or badly?
4 When was the last time your country was in recession?
5 What is the value of your currency against the dollar?

42 Sport and leisure

A Sports



sport	person	verb(s)	place
athletics	**athlete**	run, jump, throw, etc.	**track** (in a **stadium**)
motor racing	**racing driver**	drive/**race**	track
swimming	**swimmer**	swim/race	pool
boxing	**boxer**	**box**/fight	**boxing ring**
skiing	**skier**	**ski**	ski slopes
football	footballer	play	**pitch** (in a stadium)
ice hockey	ice hockey player	play	ice hockey **rink**
golf	golfer	play	golf **course**
basketball	basketball player	play	basketball **court**
sailing	**sailor**	**sail**	on the sea or a lake

Language help

We **play** sports such as football, ice hockey, tennis, golf and basketball.
*I **play** football in the winter. I **play** basketball twice a week.*
We use **go** with other sports and activities, especially those ending in ***-ing***.
*I **go** swimm**ing** in the lake during summer. We often **go** rock climb**ing** in the mountains.*
We use **do** with **a lot of** / **a bit of** + -ing.
***I did a bit of sailing** in the holidays. I don't **do a lot of running** these days.*

B Leisure activities*

camping

rock climbing

jogging

yoga

going to the gym

We often **go camping** in the summer, and we usually **do a bit of rock climbing** as well.
My best friend **does a lot of yoga.** She **works out** in the gym two or three times a week as well.
My brother enjoys jogging, and it **keeps him fit.** [helps his body to stay in good condition]
My mum does a bit of jogging as well – just **for fun.** [because she enjoys it; *syn* **for pleasure**]
I'm afraid I don't **do** any **exercise** at all.

* activities in your free time

Exercises

42.1 Put the words into the correct columns.

~~swimming~~	golfer	court	track	jump	pitch	net
motor racing	stick	basketball	athlete	box	skis	race
goalkeeper	racing driver	sail	rink	skiing	swimming costume	

sport	person	place	verb	equipment
swimming				

42.2 Complete the sentences with the correct verb.

1 We play football in the winter at my school.
2 Do you ..... much exercise?
3 I ..... basketball in the summer and winter.
4 We always ..... in the winter, as long as there is enough snow.
5 I ..... a bit of yoga when I was younger.
6 We used to ..... camping in the mountains.
7 I ..... a lot of swimming in the summer.
8 If you want to ..... fit, you need to run three or four miles every other day.
9 I used to ..... in the gym, but I'm getting a bit old for that now.

42.3 What is the sport and who is the person?

1 skiing / skier
2 ..... / .....
3 ..... / .....
4 ..... / .....
5 ..... / .....

42.4 Complete the last word in each sentence.

1 Do you know the size of a boxing ring ?
2 I used to play ice ..... .
3 We played golf in Scotland, where they have some fantastic golf ..... .
4 My dad plays golf. He's not a serious golfer; he just plays for ..... .
5 If the girls go swimming, they must remember to take their swimming ..... .
6 We watch a lot of motor ..... .
7 I love swimming, and it helps to keep me ..... .
8 My sister enjoys rock ..... .
9 You can't go camping unless you have a ..... .
10 Running is good exercise, so four or five times a week I go ..... .

42.5

Over to you

Answer these questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

1 What sport or leisure activities do you do? Why do you do it/them?
2 What sport do you watch, and where?

43 Competitive sport

A Winning and losing

In football, you can talk about the **score** [the number of goals a team has] like this:

Spain played Poland and they **won** the game.	= Poland **lost** the game.
Spain **won** 2–0 (spoken as *two nil*).	= Poland **lost** 2–0.
Spain **beat** Poland (2–0). (NOT Spain ~~won~~ Poland.)	= Poland **lost** (2–0) **to** Spain.
Spain **defeated** Poland (2–0).	= Poland **were defeated** (2–0) **by** Spain.

Spain and Italy **drew** 1–1 (spoken as ***one all***) OR It was **a** 1–1 **draw between** Spain and Italy.

Language help

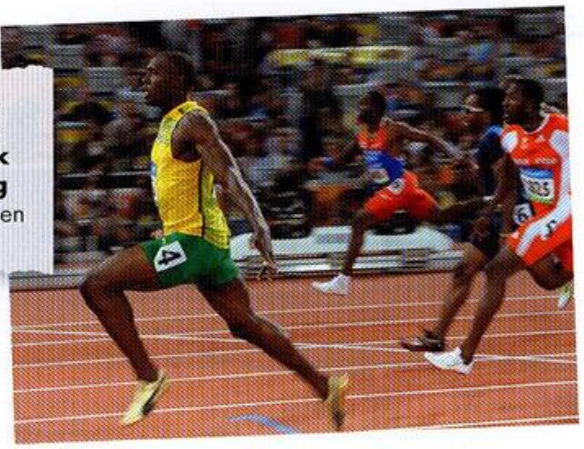
The **score** at the end of a game is also the **result**.
The final score/result was 2–0. The score at half-time was 1–0. (NOT The ~~result~~ at half-time was 1–0.)

B Competitions

A **competition** is an organised event in which people try to win something by being the best, the fastest, etc. **Individuals**, such as tennis players Serena Williams or Rafael Nadal, and **teams** such as Manchester United, **take part in** [join with others in] different types of competition. Tennis players and golfers enter **tournaments** such as the French Open; football and ice hockey teams play in **league** competitions, where they **play against** different teams. Many teams also play in **cup** competitions (similar to tournaments), e.g. the FA Cup or the World Cup, which ends with two teams playing against each other in a **final**. The **winners** (*opp* the **losers**) are the **champions**, e.g. Spain became World Cup champions in 2010, and Iker Casillas received the cup as **captain** of the winning team.

C Reporting sports events

In one of the most **incredible races** of all time, Jamaican Usain Bolt ran a time of 9.69 seconds to win the Olympic 100 metres final, and **break** his own world **record**[1]. It was an **outstanding** race, and Bolt was celebrating his **victory**[2] fifteen metres before he reached the finishing line.



[1] run faster than anyone in the world before
[2] when you win a game/race; *opp* **defeat**

Kim Clijsters won the women's US Open last night for the second time. She first won the **championship**[3] in 2005, but **gave up**[4] tennis in 2007 to have a baby. She returned in 2009, and is the first mother to win a grand slam for 29 years.

[3] an important competition to decide who is the best
[4] stopped playing

There was a **superb** race for the Canadian Grand Prix. The **winner**[5], Lewis Hamilton, passed Mark Webber with 20 laps of the race remaining and won by two seconds. He now **leads**[6] the drivers championship with 109 points.

[5] the person who wins
[6] is in front of others during a competition, e.g. At half-time, Milan are leading 1–0.

Language help

Superb, incredible and **outstanding** can describe something or someone that is very good and of a very high quality, e.g. *Pelé was a **superb** footballer.*

Exercises

43.1 Complete the verb forms with the correct past tense and past participle.

1 win / won / have won
2 lose / ..... / .....
3 beat / ..... / .....
4 draw / ..... / .....
5 break / ..... / .....
6 give up / ..... / .....

43.2 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences. Sometimes both are correct.

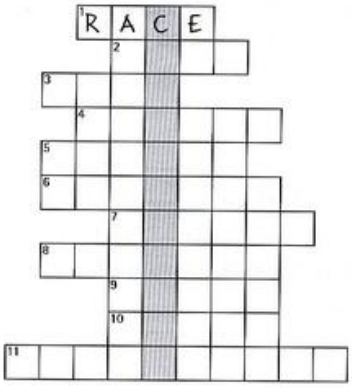
1 It was a fantastic *victory* / *defeat* for the team.
2 Lionel Messi was *outstanding* / *incredible* for Barcelona.
3 At half-time in the game, the *score* / *result* is 1–0 to Arsenal.
4 The French Open is a famous tennis *cup* / *tournament*.
5 Croatia *beat* / *defeated* Germany 3–2.
6 We *won* / *beat* the other team 4–1.
7 The UEFA Cup is a great *competition* / *league*.

43.3 Complete the sentences.

1 It was a good game but unfortunately we lost 3–2.
2 The ..... at half-time was 2–1, but the final ..... was a draw.
3 Holland ..... England 2–1, so they are in the semi-final.
4 Brazil ..... 1–1 with Argentina last night.
5 Venus Williams has won the Wimbledon ..... at least five times.
6 Carolina Kluft broke the heptathlon world ..... again last night.
7 There are 20 teams in the ..... , and each team plays the other teams twice.
8 Bradley Wiggins ..... part in the *Tour de France* last year and finished fourth.
9 I think Roger Federer is going to win. He's ..... 5–2 in the final set.
10 Argentina are playing ..... Brazil next week.

43.4 Complete the crossword. What is the vertical word in grey?

1 competition in which people run, drive, etc.
2 the opposite of *win*
3 a group of people who play together
4 a synonym for *outstanding*
5 stop doing a regular activity
6 the leader of a team
7 someone who wins something
8 when you win a competition
9 the last part of a competition
10 the opposite of *winner*
11 a type of sports competition



43.5 **Over to you**

Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

1 Have you ever taken part in a sports competition?
2 Have you ever won anything?
3 Have you ever been captain of a team?
4 Have you ever come first, second or third in a race?
5 Have you ever watched an individual or team in a final, at the game or on television?

44 Books and films

A Books

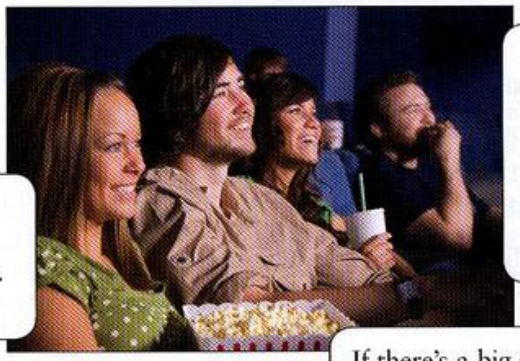
"I used to hate **literature**[1] at school, but now I read a lot. I started off with **fiction**[2]. I read hundreds of **novels**[3], mostly **thrillers**[4] and **science fiction**[5]. My favourite **author**[6] is John le Carré.

Recently, I've started reading quite a lot of **biographies**[7], and even some **poetry**[8]. Two of my favourite **poets** are Antonio Machado and Federico García Lorca. They both wrote **poems** in the early 20th **century**."

[1] serious and important writing
[2] stories about imaginary people and events
[3] fiction books
[4] exciting stories, often about crime
[5] stories about the future
[6] someone who writes books
[7] stories of a person's life, written by another person
[8] pieces of creative writing in short lines

B Films

How do you decide which films you are going to see?



If it's a **horror film** [a film that makes people frightened, e.g. *Dracula*], I usually go and see it. I love horror films.

If a film gets good **reviews** [opinions in a newspaper or magazine], then I often go and see it.

If there's a big **star** [a famous actor] in it, then I am more likely to see it. I don't normally go and see films if I don't recognise the names of the **actors** [the people who are in films].

For me, the **film director** [the person who tells the actors what to do, e.g. Spielberg] is the most important thing. I always go and see the **latest** film [the newest, most recent] by directors I really like such as Pedro Almodóvar.

I look to see **what's on** [what films are being shown at the cinema], and go to anything that I **fancy** seeing [want to see; *infml*].

I'm not interested in films that are serious or **complicated** [difficult to understand]; I only go to the cinema for **entertainment** [things you see or do to enjoy yourself].

I like **comedies** [films that are funny] and especially **romantic comedies** [comedies that have a love story]. I'll go and see anything that Ashton Kutcher is in!

Language help

noun	person	verb
entertainment	**entertainer**	**entertain**
review	**reviewer**	**review**
acting	actor	**act**
directing	director	**direct**

Exercises

44.1 Find twelve more words, across or down, connected with books and films.

act .....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

L	I	T	E	R	A	T	U	R	E
P	E	S	A	U	T	H	O	R	T
A	C	T	O	R	N	R	G	D	R
C	H	F	I	C	T	I	O	N	E
T	A	P	U	R	F	L	S	F	V
E	N	O	V	E	L	L	T	I	I
P	O	E	T	R	Y	E	A	L	E
C	O	M	E	D	Y	R	R	M	W

44.2 Cross out one wrong word in each sentence. Write the correct word at the end.

1 Many ~~poems~~ are around 300 pages. novels
2 Cinema grew in popularity in the first half of the 20th year. .....
3 I enjoy science fiction because I like stories about the past. .....
4 What's happening at the cinema? .....
5 We went to see the film because there was a good article in the newspaper. .....
6 I've been reading a new autobiography of Alfred Hitchcock by Donald Spoto. .....
7 Comedies should make people frightened. .....

44.3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word on the right.

1 William Wordsworth is a very famous poet . POETRY
2 I thought the film was good ..... . ENTERTAIN
3 Johnny Depp is one of my favourite ..... . ACT
4 My daughter wrote a lovely ..... for her school magazine. POETRY
5 I thought the ..... in the film was a bit unnatural. ACT
6 I like him very much; he's a great ..... . ENTERTAIN
7 I didn't agree with what the ..... said. REVIEW
8 Who's your favourite ..... ? DIRECT

44.4 Complete the dialogue.

A: What's [1] on ..... at the cinema?
B: Er, there's the [2] ..... film by Fernando Meirelles. It only came out yesterday.
A: Oh, the guy who [3] ..... *City of God*. He's a very good [4] ..... , but I don't understand some of his films – they're a bit [5] ..... for me. Anything else [6] ..... ?
B: Well, a couple of romantic [7] ..... , which may be fun. And they're showing *The Kite Runner* again.
A: Oh, what's that?
B: It's a film based on the [8] ..... by Khaled Hosseini. It's a very good book. Do you [9] ..... seeing that?
A: Yeah, why not.

44.5 **Over to you**

Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

1 Do you read novels or poetry? If so, what do you like? Who are your favourite authors?
2 Do you go to the cinema? If so, how do you decide which films to go and see?
3 Do you often read film reviews?
4 What are your favourite films? Who are your favourite actors?

45 Music

A Musical taste*

People's **taste in** music is different. I like **pop music**, my brother likes **folk music** [music written and played in a traditional style], and my dad prefers **classical music**.

Common mistakes
Classical music (NOT ~~classic music~~)

My brother and I like going to concerts to see groups **perform** [play] **live** [in front of a large group of people, called an **audience**; pronounced to rhyme with *five*]. My dad just listens to music at home; he isn't interested in **live performances**.
When I listen to music I am mostly interested in the **tune** [the musical notes], but my brother is more interested in the **lyrics** [the words of a song].

*the type of music that you like

B Musical instruments and musicians

C People in music

A **composer** is someone who writes music, usually classical music.
A **songwriter** is someone who writes songs, e.g. Paul McCartney, Sting, Chris Martin.
A **conductor** is someone who stands in front of an **orchestra** [a large group of musicians who play different instruments] and **conducts** [leads] them.
An **opera singer** is someone who sings **opera**. [a play in which the words are sung]
A **ballet dancer** is someone who dances in a **ballet**.
A **solo artist** is someone who sings or plays music but is not part of a group, e.g. Beyoncé, Jay-Z, etc.
Famous **groups/bands** are Coldplay, U2, etc.

D Making an album

When groups **record** an **album** [put eight or ten songs onto one CD] or a **single** [one song on a CD], they do it in a **recording studio**. Then, when the album **comes out** [is in the shops for people to buy], it is usually **advertised** in the media [there are **adverts** on TV, in newspapers, etc.]. As well as buying CDs, many people also **download** their favourite **tracks** [individual songs from an album] or albums from the Internet.

Exercises

45.1 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

1 classical	[c]	a studio
2 solo	[ ]	b singer
3 recording	[ ]	c music
4 musical	[ ]	d dancer
5 opera	[ ]	e artist
6 ballet	[ ]	f instrument

45.2 Complete the sentences.

1 There was a very big *audience* for their last concert – nearly 10,000 people.
2 I think their new ..... is a great song.
3 The new ..... has songs written by other people. It ..... out next week.
4 I've listened to a lot of their music but I've never seen them perform ..... .
5 Their new album was ..... in a studio near my home.
6 The band has a new album out and it's being ..... on TV.

45.3 Find five more pairs of words. Why are they pairs?

~~flute~~	ballet	audience	album	dancing	orchestra	concert
conductor	~~flautist~~	composer	classical music	recording studio		

A flautist is a person who plays a flute.

45.4 Can you complete this music quiz with words from the opposite page?

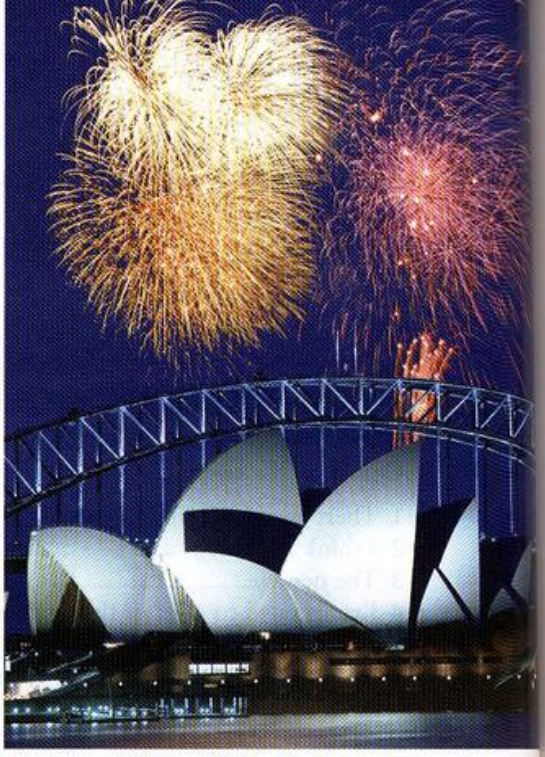
1 Chris Martin is the main singer and *songwriter* for his group Coldplay.
2 The Berlin Philharmonic is an ..... . Herbert von Karajan was the ..... from 1955 to 1989.
3 Placido Domingo and Luciano Pavarotti were both great ..... .
4 *Waterloo* was Abba's first Number 1 hit ..... .
5 *Sergeant Pepper* is the most famous ..... by The Beatles.
6 Eric Clapton is a great rock ..... .
7 Yo Yo Ma is a great classical ..... .
8 Rachmaninoff is a famous ..... .
9 Puccini composed ..... such as *La Bohème*.
10 Who was the very famous ..... artist who sang *Thriller*? .....

45.5 **Over to you**

Answer the questions. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

1 What music do you like? Is your taste in music different from your parents'?
2 Who's your favourite solo artist, group or composer?
3 What was the last single or album you bought or downloaded?
4 When was the last time you heard or saw a group or orchestra perform live?
5 Are you usually more interested in the tune or the lyrics of a song?
6 Do you play a musical instrument? What do you play?

46 Special events



A A fireworks display

The Sydney **fireworks**[1] **display**[2] is **held**[3] every year, and more than one million people **gather**[4] at Sydney **harbour**[5] on New Year's Eve to **celebrate**[6] the new year.
All age groups are **involved**[7] in the event. At 9 pm there is 'Family fireworks' for families with younger children. After that a large number of boats **parade**[8] around the harbour. Finally, at midnight, there is a **spectacular**[9] fireworks display for almost fifteen minutes in which more than 4,000 kilograms of fireworks light up the night sky.

[1] (see picture)
[2] a show for people to watch
[3] organised
[4] come together
[5] area of water where ships are kept and are safe from the sea
[6] do something enjoyable on a special day
[7] included (in an event or activity)
[8] move around as part of a group, often to celebrate something (*parade* is also a noun)
[9] looking extremely good or exciting

B An arts festival

The Edinburgh **Festival**[1] is an **annual**[2] event, and is the largest arts festival in the world. It **consists of**[3] at least six different festivals which **take place**[4] in the city and **last**[5] for almost six weeks during August and early September. The most **popular**[6] festival is The Fringe, which has **up to**[7] 500 daily performances in dance, music, drama and comedy in 180 places across the city.

[1] a number of special events often continuing for several days
[2] happening once a year
[3] is made of
[4] happen
[5] continue
[6] liked by many people
[7] the maximum (is 500)

C The Chinese Spring Festival

The Spring Festival (or Chinese New Year) is the biggest **traditional** festival in China. It has been celebrated for about 4,000 years, and takes place every year at some point between 21 January and 20 February. On the day before the festival starts, people from **all over**[1] China return to their family homes and gather for a big meal. The next day, many people **dress up**[2], and children receive money from their parents in red envelopes to **bring them luck.** Another popular **custom** is to put two-line poems on the gates outside each home.

[1] everywhere (in China)
[2] wear special clothes

Language help

A **custom** is something that people usually do. A **tradition** is a very old custom that has continued for a long time. The adjectives are **traditional** and **customary**.
*It is **traditional** to give each other presents.*
*It is **customary** to take your shoes off before you enter a mosque.*
*We went to a **traditional** Greek wedding* (NOT a ~~Greek traditional~~ wedding).

Exercises

46.1 Complete the definitions.

1 A display is a show for people to watch .
2 If you are involved in an activity, you are ..... in it.
3 If you can have up to 25 people, 25 people is the ..... .
4 If an event is spectacular, it looks very good or ..... .
5 A harbour is a place where ..... are kept.
6 If people parade round the streets, they ..... round the streets in a group.

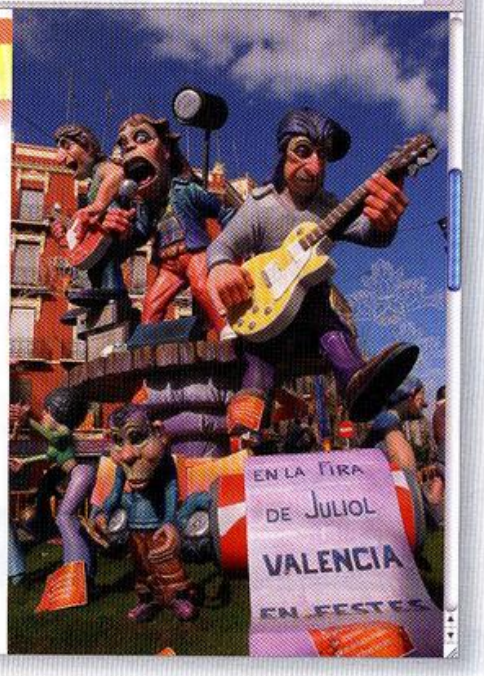
46.2 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals. Keep a similar meaning.

1 The festival happens in the summer. TAKE — The festival takes place in the summer.
2 The children wear special clothes. DRESS — .....
3 People come from everywhere in Japan. ALL — .....
4 They hold the event every year. HELD — .....
5 Do you do anything special for your birthday? CELEBRATE — .....
6 The festival happens every year. ANNUAL — .....

46.3 Complete the text.

The Fallas is a [1] traditional [2] ..... in Valencia, Spain, which [3] ..... for five days and finishes on March 19th. The Fallas [4] ..... place right across the city, and it [5] ..... St Joseph, as well as the end of winter and the birth of spring. The festival [6] ..... of music, dancing, cooking (the famous paella) and parades, and each area in the city produces a falla, which is a figure made of paper, cardboard, wood, etc. that is burnt on the final day. The fallas are very important, and artists spend months making them.

But the festival is also famous for [7] ..... fireworks displays. Every day crowds [8] ..... in different parts of the city at 2 pm, when loud firecrackers are set off. [9] ..... displays continue every night, and on the final night, there is a huge display when all the fallas are burned. This is called the Crema.



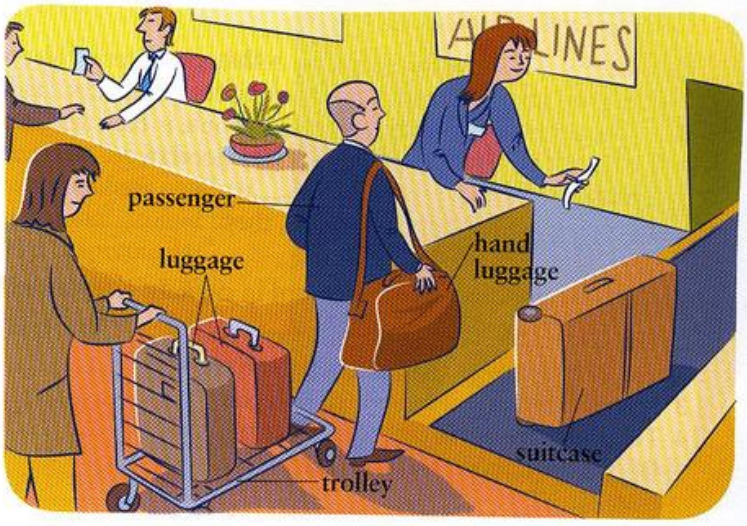
46.4 **Over to you**

Think about a festival you know and answer the questions. If possible, ask someone else.

1 What kind of festival is it? Is it an arts festival or a traditional festival?
2 How often is it held?
3 When and where does it take place?
4 How long does it last?
5 What does it consist of?
6 Are there any special traditions or customs as part of the festival?

47 Air travel

A Departure*



When you arrive at an airport, the **departures board** will show you the **flight numbers** (e.g. BA735), departure times (e.g. 08.40), and **destinations**[1].
At **check-in / the check-in desk**, someone will check your ticket and **weigh**[2] your luggage. If it is more than, for example, 20 kilograms, you will have to **pay excess baggage**[3]. You can take your hand luggage with you on the **aircraft**[4]. You also get your **boarding card**[5] and then you can go through **passport control**, where someone **checks your passport**[6], and into the departure lounge, where you can buy things in the **duty-free** shop, e.g. cigarettes and perfume.
Shortly before **take-off**[7], you go to the place where you get on the plane, e.g. **Gate** 3 or **Gate** 5. When you **board the plane**[8], you can put your hand luggage in a small cupboard above your seat called an **overhead locker**. You then have to **fasten your seat belt**. If there are no **delays**[9], the plane moves slowly to the **runway**[10], then it takes off.

fastening a seatbelt

* when you leave a place, at the start of a journey
[1] where the flights are going to
[2] see how heavy something is
[3] pay extra for your luggage
[4] plane
[5] a piece of paper you must show to get on the plane
[6] looks at your passport carefully
[7] when the plane takes off / leaves the ground
[8] get on the plane
[9] when you have to wait longer than expected
[10] the large road that planes use for take-offs and **landings**

Common mistakes
My **flight** number is BA640. (NOT My ~~fly~~ number is BA640.) I slept the whole **flight**. (NOT I slept the whole ~~fly~~.)

B Arrival*

When the plane **lands**[1], there is always an **announcement**[2] from a member of the **cabin crew**[3] telling passengers to wait until the plane completely stops before they stand up. Then you get off the plane and walk through the **terminal building**[4] to the **baggage reclaim**[5]. When you've got your luggage, you **go through customs**[6] and leave the airport.

* when someone or something arrives
[1] arrives on the ground
[2] spoken information to a group of people
[3] the people on the aircraft who look after the passengers
[4] the airport building
[5] the place where you collect your luggage
[6] go through the area where your luggage may be checked to make sure you don't have anything illegal.

Exercises

47.1 Complete the words or phrases using words from the box.

~~board~~	number	crew	card	control	luggage
reclaim	free	baggage	building	desk	locker

1 departures board
2 excess .....
3 check-in .....
4 hand .....
5 terminal .....
6 duty .....
7 flight .....
8 overhead .....
9 boarding .....
10 cabin .....
11 baggage .....
12 passport .....

47.2 Answer the questions.

1 What's the place where the airline staff check your ticket? the check-in desk
2 Who are the people that travel on a plane? .....
3 What do airline staff weigh at the check-in desk? .....
4 What's the piece of paper they give you at the check-in desk? .....
5 What do we call the place you're travelling to? .....
6 What do airport staff do at passport control? .....
7 What do we call the place where you get on the plane? .....
8 What do you call the bags that you can take on the plane with you? .....
9 What's the part of the airport where the plane takes off and lands? .....

47.3 Complete the email.

Delete Reply Reply All Forward Print

Hi Tom

I've just arrived in Rome but I'm still recovering from a really terrible [1] flight . When we were in the airport in Manchester there was an [2] ..... telling us that there would be a one-hour [3] ..... because of bad weather, but when we finally [4] ..... the plane, there was a further delay before we could [5] ..... . There was more bad weather over France, and we all had to [6] ..... our seat belts, which worried me a bit. In fact, I was almost sick, but the cabin [7] ..... were really nice.

It was still raining and very windy when we [8] ..... in Rome and I was really glad to get off the plane and get into the [9] ..... building. I really hope the return [10] ..... is a lot better.

See you soon.

Ellie

47.4 **Over to you**

Answer the questions. If you don't fly very much, ask someone else.

1 What is the best part and the worst part of the flight?
2 When do you often have delays, and why?
3 What do you usually do on the aircraft during the flight?
4 What's the first thing you do on arrival?
5 Do you ever have anything to declare when you go through customs?

48 Hotels and restaurants

A Hotel facilities and rooms

Hotel Le Rouge ★★★★

The hotel is located near The Louvre, Notre Dame and top department stores right in the **heart**[1] of Paris.
Hotel **facilities** include: **room service**[2], **internet access**[3], **air conditioning**[4] and **parking**.
Our choice of **single**[5], **double**[6] or **twin**[7] rooms are all equipped with **satellite TV**[8], air conditioning, direct-dial telephone, **mini-bar**[9], and personal **safe**[10]. Bathrooms come with a bath or shower and hair dryer.

[1] centre
[2] staff will bring food and drink to the room
[3] use of the Internet
[4] a system that keeps the air cool
[5] a room for one person
[6] a room for two people with one big bed
[7] a room for two people with two beds
[8] TV with many channels from different countries
[9] a small fridge
[10] a box to keep money and valuable items in

B Staying in a hotel

Rooms are often **available**[1] during the week, but many hotels are **fully booked**[2] at weekends or during the holidays, so you may need to **book a room**[3] **in advance**[4]. When you arrive, you **check in at reception**[5]; at the end of your **stay**[6], you **check out**[7].

[1] you can find one
[2] all the rooms are taken
[3] arrange/plan to have a room; *syn* **reserve**
[4] before you go
[5] say you have arrived and get your room key
[6] the period of time you spend in a place
[7] pay your bill and leave the hotel

C Going to a restaurant

It's often a good idea to **book a table / make a reservation** if you go to a restaurant at the weekend. Many restaurants offer **three-course** meals which **include** [have as part of the meal] a **starter** (e.g. soup), **main course** (e.g. meat or fish) and **dessert** (e.g. fruit with ice cream). Prices sometimes include 10% **service** as well [amount of money you pay for being served by the waiter]. If service isn't **included**, it's normal to leave a **tip** [extra money you give to the waiter/waitress].

D Ordering a meal

WAITER: **Are you ready to order?** [Have you decided what to eat?]
CUSTOMER: Yes, I think so. I'd like to start with the spicy prawns, and then **I'll have** the fillet steak, with French fries and a **mixed salad** [lettuce with other vegetables].
WAITER: How would you like your steak? (**Rare, medium or well-done?**)
CUSTOMER: **Medium**, please. And I'd like some mineral water as well.
WAITER: **Still** or **sparkling?**
CUSTOMER: Er, sparkling.

Common mistakes
I'll have the steak. (NOT ~~I take~~ the steak.)

Exercises

48.1 Put the words into the correct columns. Write titles for the other two groups.

~~rare~~	starter	mini-bar	sparkling	main course
room service	medium	dessert	still	well-done	safe

steak			water
rare			

48.2 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

1 service	g	a room
2 room		b access
3 double		c meal
4 three-course		d conditioning
5 main		e service
6 internet		f TV
7 air		g included
8 satellite		h course

48.3 Complete the sentences.

1 Have you booked a room ... ?
2 Could you first check in at ... ?
3 Do you want a single or a ... ?
4 Does the price include ... ?
5 I ... the soup, and then the fish for my main course.
6 The hotel ... included internet access, 24-hour reception and a restaurant.
7 Service wasn't included, so I left a 10% ... .
8 The hotel is in the ... of the town, close to all the main attractions.
9 Would you like a ... salad with your main ... ?
10 At the end of your ... at a hotel, you normally have to ... out by midday.

48.4 Rewrite the sentences on the left starting with the words given. Keep a similar meaning.

1 I was able to use the Internet.	I had internet access .
2 Did you book a table?	Did you make a ... ?
3 The hotel was fully booked.	There were no rooms ... .
4 You don't pay extra for service.	Service is ... .
5 Did you book it before you went?	Did you book it in ... ?
6 Is there somewhere to leave the car?	Do you have ... ?
7 Have you decided what you want to eat?	Are you ready ... ?

48.5 *Over to you*

You are staying in a hotel in your own country. Are these facilities important to you? Why? / Why not?

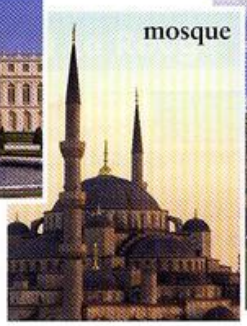
mini-bar	24-hour room service	air conditioning	satellite TV
internet access	parking	restaurant	a personal safe

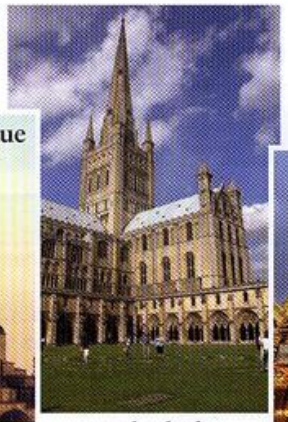
49 Sightseeing holidays

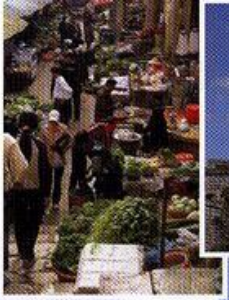
A Things to see

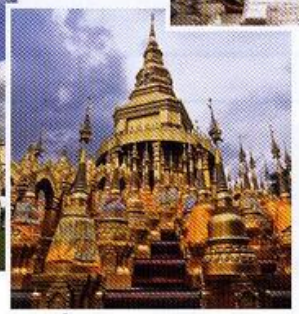
palace

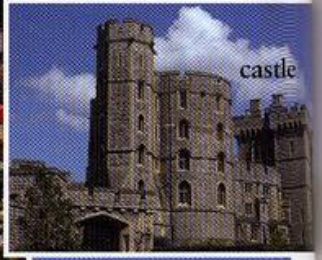
fountain


mosque


cathedral


market


temple


castle

statue

B Tourist activities

activity	example
• **go sightseeing** [visit famous places; also **see the sights**]	We **went sightseeing** almost every day. I like to **see the sights** when I visit a place.
• **do** a bit of / a lot of **sightseeing**	I didn't **do** a lot of **sightseeing** in Warsaw.
• **have a look round** [visit a place casually, often on foot]	We **had a look round** the shops. I want to **have a look round** the museum.
• **explore** [go round a new place to see what is there]	We **explored** the flower market.
• **go out** [leave home / your hotel to go to a social event, e.g. restaurant or theatre]	On holiday we **went out** every night.
• **get lost** [lose one's way]	I **got lost** three times in London.
• **have** a great/nice/terrible **time**	They **had a lovely time** in Venice.
• buy **souvenirs** [something you buy or keep to remember a place or holiday]	We bought some dolls as **souvenirs**.

C Describing places

The word **place** can describe a building, an area, a town, or country, e.g. Bruges is a lovely **place** [town] and we found a really nice **place** [hotel] to stay.

"The **guidebooks** [books with information about places] say the Alhambra in Granada is **magnificent** [very good or very beautiful], but it's always **packed** [very crowded] with tourists in the summer."

"São Paulo is a **lively** place [full of life and activity], and there's **plenty** [a lot] to do in the evening."

"St Petersburg has lots of **historic monuments** [important places built a long time ago] but the Hermitage Museum was the main **attraction** for me [something that makes people come to a place or want to do a particular thing]."

"If you go to Poland, it's definitely **worth** visiting Kraków."

Language help

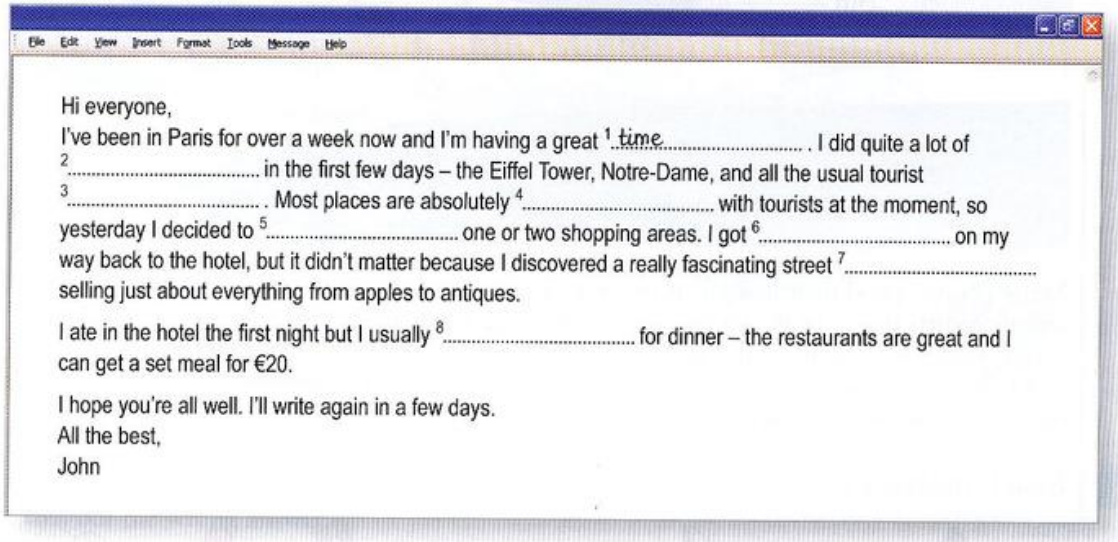
We use **worth** + noun/*-ing* to say that it is a good idea to do something or go somewhere.
*It's **worth hiring** a car if you go to Scotland. Glasgow is **worth a visit** as well.*

Exercises

49.1 Tick (✓) the words which refer to religious places.

castle	church ✓	temple
statue	market	cathedral
fountain	mosque	palace

49.2 Complete the email.


File Edit View Insert Format Tools Message Help

Hi everyone,

I've been in Paris for over a week now and I'm having a great [1] time. I did quite a lot of [2] ..... in the first few days – the Eiffel Tower, Notre-Dame, and all the usual tourist [3] ..... . Most places are absolutely [4] ..... with tourists at the moment, so yesterday I decided to [5] ..... one or two shopping areas. I got [6] ..... on my way back to the hotel, but it didn't matter because I discovered a really fascinating street [7] ..... selling just about everything from apples to antiques.

I ate in the hotel the first night but I usually [8] ..... for dinner – the restaurants are great and I can get a set meal for €20.

I hope you're all well. I'll write again in a few days.
All the best,
John

49.3 Complete the dialogues, but without using a word from the question.

1 A: It's a fabulous city, isn't it?
B: Yes, it's a wonderful ..place..... .
2 A: It was very crowded, wasn't it?
B: Yes, it was absolutely ..... .
3 A: It's lively in the evening, isn't it?
B: Yes, there's ..... .
4 A: Did you enjoy yourselves?
B: Yes, we had a ..... .
5 A: Kyoto is a good place to go to, isn't it?
B: Yes, Kyoto is definitely ..... .
6 A: You know a lot about this castle, don't you?
B: Yes, I bought a ..... .
7 A: St Petersburg has got many famous old places to see, hasn't it?
B: Yes, lots of historic ..... .
8 A: The Taj Mahal was impressive and so beautiful.
B: Yes, it was ..... .
9 A: Did you explore the town centre?
B: Yes, we had a ..... .

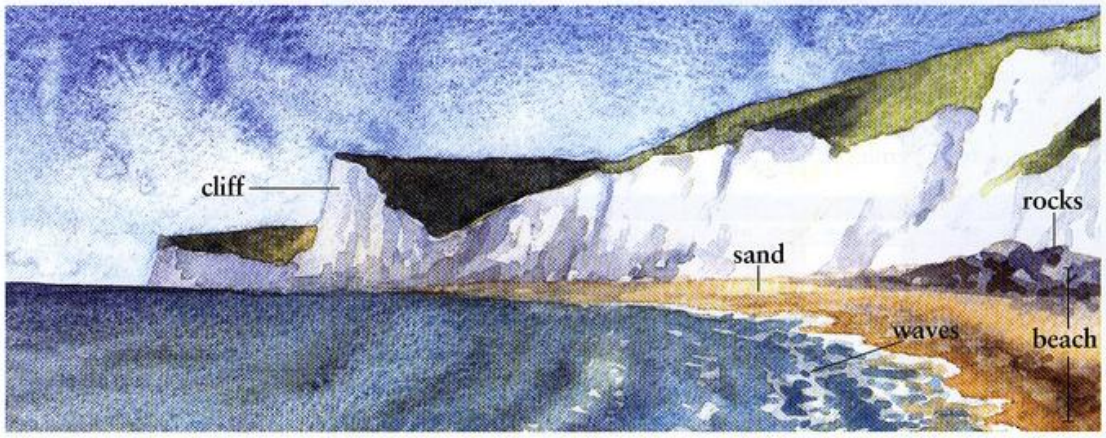
49.4 **Over to you**

Think about your own country and write answers. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

1 Write down a place that is worth visiting and a place that is not worth visiting and say why.
2 Is there a place that is particularly famous for its historic monuments? What are they?
3 What typical souvenirs do tourists buy when they visit?
4 What are the main attractions for tourists to your country? Do you think they are worth seeing?

50 Holidays by the sea

A The beach



Many people **spend** their holiday at the **coast** [the land close to the sea], where there are a lot of **seaside resorts** [towns by the sea for tourists] and they can go to the beach every day. Generally people prefer beaches that are **sandy** [with lots of sand], where you can go for a **stroll** [a casual walk] along the **shore** [the place where the sea meets the land] in the **sunshine** [when it is sunny]. On the beach, you also sometimes get a **breeze** [a nice gentle wind] that blows off the sea.

B Beach activities

surfing windsurfing diving playing volleyball sunbathing

Volleyball is a popular beach game and some people enjoy water sports such as **surfing**, **windsurfing** or **diving**. If the sea is **calm**[1], you can **go for a swim**, but a lot of people just want to lie on the beach and **sunbathe** and get a nice (**sun**)**tan**[2]. However, there are now worries about the dangers of **sunbathing**. People who lie in the sun without any **protection**[3] can get **sunburn**[4], and worse still, they are **at risk of**[5] getting skin cancer. Doctors now **recommend**[6] that people do not sit in the sun without using **sunscreen**[7]. It may be safer just to sit in the **shade**[8].

[1] without waves (does not move very much); *opp* **rough**
[2] when the skin becomes brown
[3] something to keep someone safe
[4] when the skin becomes red and very sore
[5] if you are at risk of something, there is a danger that something bad may happen to you
[6] say what someone should do
[7] cream that gives protection from the sun; *syns* **sunblock, sun cream**
[8] an area where there is no light from the sun, so it is darker and less hot

Language help

We can **go for a walk**, a **drive** (a journey in the car for pleasure), **a swim**, **a coffee** [drink some coffee], **a drink** (often an alcoholic drink, e.g. wine, beer). We can also **have a swim**, **a coffee**, **a drink**.

*We **went for a drive** along the coast. I **had a coffee** at Caffé Nero. Let's **go for a drink** tonight.*

Exercises

50.1 Write down four more words beginning with *sun*.

sun shine sun..... sun..... sun..... sun.....

50.2 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

1 sun	[d]	a shade
2 wind	[ ]	b sea
3 seaside	[ ]	c surfing
4 sit in the	[ ]	d tan
5 sandy	[ ]	e resort
6 rough	[ ]	f beach

50.3 Cover the opposite page. What are these people doing?

1 playing volleyball 2 ..... 3 ..... 4 ..... 5 .....

50.4 Cross out the wrong answer.

1 The beach was	a lovely	b ~~calm~~	c sandy	d dirty
2 We went for a	a drive	b shop	c drink	d stroll
3 The sea was	a sandy	b calm	c rough	d cold
4 I enjoy	a surfing	b diving	c getting sunburn	d windsurfing
5 We walked	a along the beach	b by the shore	c on the waves	d on the sand
6 The beach was	a near the cliffs	b by the breeze	c by the rocks	d very sandy

50.5 Complete the sentences.

1 I love sunbathing, so I can get a nice suntan.
2 Doctors ..... that you stay out of the sun completely in the middle of the day.
3 We used to sunbathe for hours, but then we didn't know we were at ..... of getting skin cancer.
4 I always take a beach umbrella to give me ..... from the sun when it is very hot.
5 In the city it feels like there's no air, but you often get a nice ..... by the sea.
6 I love going for a ..... along the beach, especially in the evening when it's quiet.
7 I don't like sitting in the sun; I prefer to sit in the ..... .
8 We decided to ..... a swim before lunch.

50.6 **Over to you**

Answer the questions. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

1 Do you ever spend time at seaside resorts? Where do you go, and how often?
2 Do you enjoy any of the beach activities on the opposite page? Which ones?
3 Do you like sunbathing? Why? / Why not?
4 Do you get a suntan easily? Have you ever had sunburn? Do you often use sunscreen?
5 What do you like to do in the evening after a day on the beach?

51 Newspapers and television

A Newspapers

Most **papers** [newspapers] are **daily**, which means that they **come out** [appear in shops; *syn* **are published**] every day. Some are **national** [for the whole country], others are **regional** [for a part of the country]. Some newspapers are published online; these are called **e-papers**. You can also get **mobile editions** [you read a newspaper on your phone]. Magazines are usually **weekly** or **monthly**.

B Contents of* newspapers

Reports [pieces of writing about news items, written by **reporters/journalists**, e.g. a **report in** *The Times* **on/about** a crime]
Articles [pieces of writing about an important subject, e.g. an **article on/about** drugs]
Headlines [titles written in large letters above reports/articles, e.g. GOVERNMENT LOSES VOTE]
Reviews [pieces of writing giving an opinion, e.g. **a review of** a new book]
Advertisements or **adverts** [words and pictures about a product, to make people buy it, e.g. **an advert for** shampoo]

*information in

C Television

If you **broadcast** something, you send it out on TV, radio or the Internet. There are now many broadcasting companies and many programmes. People watch:

- **the news** [information about world events]
- **the weather forecast** [a description of what the weather will be like in the next few days]
- **documentaries** [programmes that give facts about real situations and real people]
- **chat shows** [programmes where famous people are asked questions about themselves]
- **a series** [a number of programmes that have the same characters or deal with the same subject]
- **soap operas** [a regular series of programmes, often two or three times a week, about a group of characters who live in the same area]
- **reality TV shows** [programmes which follow ordinary people or **celebrities** [famous people] through a number of situations or challenges. **Well-known** [famous] examples include: *Pop Idol*, *The X Factor* and *Strictly Come Dancing*].

Language help

We usually use **channel** to talk about television broadcasting, e.g. *The news is on* ***Channel*** *4*; and **station** to talk about radio broadcasting, e.g. *A: What* ***station*** *are you listening to? B: Radio 1 – it's mostly pop music.*

D Media reporting*

Common mistakes

It says in the paper / **According to** the paper ... (NOT ~~It's written~~ in the paper ...)

Many newspapers also have online **forums** where people can leave messages and discuss topics. News is also reported online through **podcasts** [a radio programme that you download from the Internet and play on your computer or MP3 player], e.g. Have you heard the latest business **podcast** on the CNN website?

When we refer to something that someone has said or written, we do it in these ways:
It said in *The Times* that the plane crashed in the sea.
According to the news on TV last night, the plane crashed in the sea.

*reporting in newspapers, on TV or the Internet

Exercises

51.1 Tick (✓) the words which describe a type of TV programme.

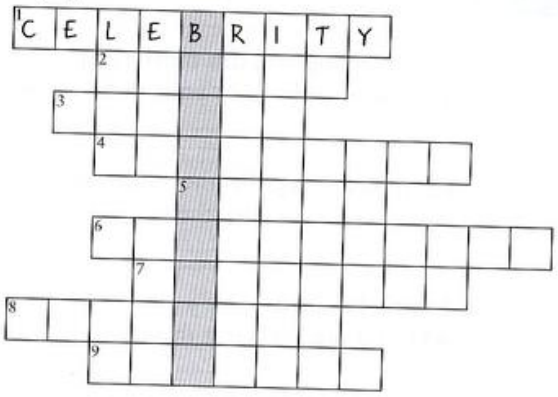
the news ✓ documentary headline soap opera
chat show review article series

51.2 Complete the dialogues.

1 A: Have you heard of 'Radio Five Live'?
B: Yes, it's a very popular *station* .
2 A: Is the magazine published every day?
B: No, it ..... monthly.
3 A: Is it a national paper?
B: No, it's a ..... paper for the south-west.
4 A: Can we watch the news now?
B: Yes, it's on ..... Four.
5 A: Are they mostly famous people?
B: Yes, they're all ..... .

51.3 Complete the crossword. What is the vertical word in grey?

1 a famous person
2 a number of programmes with the same characters
3 a piece of writing about a news item
4 programmes several times a week about the same people
5 happening every day
6 a factual programme about real people and situations
7 relating to the whole country
8 a programme that interviews famous people
9 a piece of writing about an important subject



51.4 Complete the sentences.

1 Did you read that *article* in the paper yesterday about space?
2 The manager was interviewed for the paper by one of their well-known ..... .
3 Do you understand this ..... ? '*200 WOMEN GIVEN WRONG DIAGNOSIS*'
4 Rock FM is the name of a radio ..... .
5 It ..... in the paper that the interest rate is likely to go up soon.
6 I read a ..... of his latest film. It doesn't sound very good.
7 You often see ..... in the paper which promise that you can learn a language in ten hours with this method. It isn't true.
8 ..... to the weather ..... last night, it's going to rain today.
9 I never watch ..... operas.
10 I love *The X Factor*; in fact, I love all ..... TV shows!

51.5 **Over to you**

Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

1 How many daily national newspapers are there?
2 How many newspapers only come out on Sunday in your country?
3 What parts of the newspaper do you read?
4 What types of TV programme do you watch?

52 Phoning and texting

A Starting a phone conversation

The call on the left is between two friends: Joe and Rosie. When British people answer the phone at home, they usually just say 'hello'. The call on the right is a more formal business call.

JOE: Hello?
ROSIE: **Is that** Joe?
JOE: Yeah.
ROSIE: Hi. **It's** Rosie.

Common mistakes
We say: **Is that** Joe? (NOT ~~Are you~~ Joe? or ~~Is it~~ Joe?)
And we say: **It's** Rosie. (NOT ~~I am~~ Rosie or ~~Here is~~ Rosie.)

RECEPTIONIST: Good morning. Chalfont Electronics.
PAUL SHARP: Oh, **could I speak to** Jane Gordon, please?
RECEPTIONIST: Yes. **Who's calling,** please?
PAUL SHARP: **My name is** Paul Sharp from Bexel Plastics.
RECEPTIONIST: Right, Mr Sharp. **I'm putting you through** [I'm connecting you] ... (*pause*) ...
JANE GORDON: Hello?
PAUL SHARP: Mrs Gordon?
JANE GORDON: **Speaking.** [Yes, this is Mrs Gordon.]

B Problems on the phone

I tried to **ring** you this morning [phone you] but I think you were **on the phone** to your mother [using the phone].

I **gave her a ring** this morning [phoned her], but I couldn't **get through** [make contact / speak to her]; the line was **engaged** [being used, someone was on the phone].

I think I **dialled** [made a phone call to a particular number] **the wrong number** (e.g. 451 and not 351) this morning – I got a very angry person on the phone!

I **left a message** (e.g. Please ring me) on Dan's **answerphone** as he was **out** [not there; *syn* **not in**], but he never **phoned me back** [returned my phone call], so I don't know if he got my message.

C Phone numbers

Q: What's your **home** phone number? (also **landline**) A: 603 884
Q: What's your **mobile number**? A: 07723 259369
Q: What's the **emergency number** for the police, fire or ambulance? A: 999
Q: What's the **dialling code** for the UK when you are phoning from Hungary? A: 0044

D Mobile phones and texting

Many people use their mobile **mostly/mainly** [most of the time] for **texting** [sending short written messages from one phone to another]. Do you **text** your friends and family all the time?

These are common text **abbreviations** [letters which represent words].

ASAP = as soon as possible
BF = boyfriend (GF = girlfriend)
B4 = before
2DAY = today
2MORO = tomorrow
Y = why
PLS = please
X = kiss
CUL8R = see you later
IMO = **in my opinion** [this is what I think]
OIC = Oh, **I see** [I understand]
B4N = **bye** for now [goodbye for now]
FYI = for your information
U = you
THX = thanks
LOL = laughing out loud

Exercises

52.1 **Answer the questions.**

1 What are two more ways of saying *I called him*?
I phoned him. ....

2 You phoned Tom but weren't able to speak to him. What are three possible reasons for this?
.....
.....
.....

3 You can ring a phone number. What are three other numbers you can ring?
..... number ..... number ..... number

52.2 **Complete the phone conversations.**

A: Hello?
B: Good morning. Could I [1] speak to ..... Colin James?
A: Who's [2] ....., please?
B: [3] ..... Paul Matthews.
A: One moment, please. I'm [4] ..... you through.
C: Hello?
B: [5] ..... Mr James?
C: [6] ..... .

A: Good morning. Boulding Limited. Can I help you?
B: Yes. I'm trying to contact Simon Fallow. He left a [7] ..... on my [8] ..... .
A: I see. Well, I'm afraid Mr Fallow's [9] ..... at the moment. Can I ask him to [10] ..... you ..... later?

A: Hello.
B: Hi. [11] ..... Carlos?
A: Yeah, speaking.
B: Hi Carlos. [12] ..... Serena.
A: Oh hello. I was expecting you to ring last night.
B: I did, but I couldn't get [13] ..... ; the line was [14] ..... .
A: Oh yes, I'm sorry about that. I was [15] ..... the phone to my brother for about an hour.

52.3 **What do these text abbreviations mean?**

1 GRT = great .....
2 X = ...
3 CUL8R = ...
4 OIC = ...
5 B4N = ...
6 IMO = ...
7 ASAP = ...
8 FYI = ...
9 LOL = ...
10 THX = ...
11 BF = ...
12 U = ...

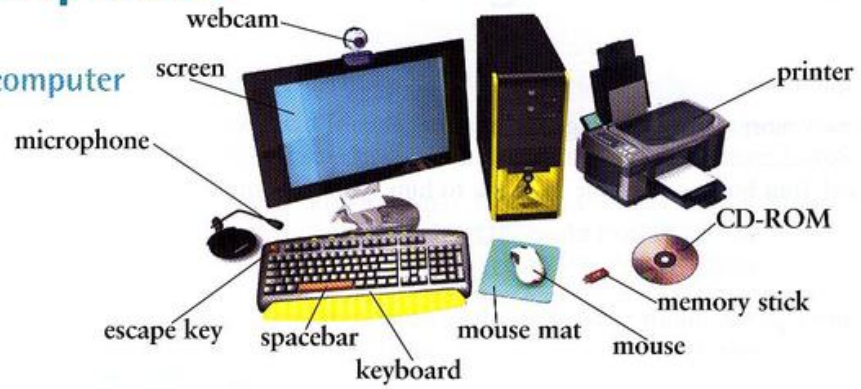
52.4 **Over to you**

Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

1 How often do you use a mobile phone? What do you use it for? How often do you text people? Who do you text?
2 In your country, what is the emergency number for the police, fire brigade or ambulance?
3 From your country, what's the international dialling code for the United Kingdom?
4 How do you feel about people who use their mobile phone on a train?

53 Computers

A The computer



B Using a computer

After you have **switched on** [turned on] your computer, you may need to **log in/on** (*opp* **log out/off**) with your **username** and **enter** your **password** [put a special word into the computer that only you know]. If you then **double-click** on an **icon** [a small picture on the screen], you can open an **application** [email, Internet browser, etc.].
Computers can **store** [keep] large amounts of information, but when you're working it is important to **back up** the **files** you are working on [make an extra copy of the files; *syn* **make a backup**], so you don't lose the files if something goes wrong.

open a new **document** | open an **existing** document | **save** the data in this document | **print** | **cut** | **copy** | **paste**

To **create** [make or start] a new document, select NEW from the **File menu.**
You can **copy** and **paste** information from one file into another.
If you save the document, you can **print** it **out** later (OR you can get a **hard copy / a printout** later). It is also important to save the document in case the computer **crashes** [suddenly stops working]. Press the Escape key to **exit** [stop using an application].

C FAQs* about computers

example question	explanation
• Do you have a **PC** or a **laptop**?	PC is short for personal computer; a laptop is a small computer that you can carry around.
• What **hard drive** do you have?	the part inside the computer that stores large amounts of information (also **hard disk**)
• What **operating system** are you using?	computer software, e.g. Windows or Mac OS, that controls how the computer works
• Have you **installed** any new **software**?	put new programs onto your computer
• What software applications are you **running**?	What software applications are you using?
• Do you have **anti-virus software**?	A **virus** is a program put on a computer to destroy or steal the information on it. Anti-virus software is a program to stop a virus entering your computer.

*frequently asked questions

Exercises

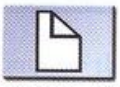
53.1 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

1 CD-	[e]	a system
2 memory	[ ]	b on
3 operating	[ ]	c key
4 hard	[ ]	d software
5 log	[ ]	e ROM
6 anti-virus	[ ]	f mat
7 mouse	[ ]	g copy
8 escape	[ ]	h stick

53.2 Complete these words.

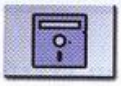
1 soft*ware*
2 lap.....
3 key.....
4 space.....
5 user.....
6 pass.....

53.3 Test your knowledge. Can you remember what these icons mean without looking at the opposite page?


1 *open a new document*

2 .....

3 .....


4 .....

5 .....

6 .....

7 .....

53.4 Complete the definitions.

1 Computer software that controls how different parts work together is the *operating system*.
2 The part inside the computer that stores large amounts of information is the .....
3 A program secretly put on a computer to destroy the information on it is a .....
4 A small computer that you can carry round with you is a .....
5 The special word you type into your computer that only you know is your .....

53.5 Complete the dialogues.

1 A: What do I do when I finish?
B: You can press the escape key to *exit*.
2 A: How often do you ..... your files?
B: At the end of every day if I can remember.
3 A: Is the data ..... on the hard disk?
B: Yes, but I always make a .....
4 A: Did you ..... the software yourself?
B: No, I don't understand anything about computers. My wife did it for me.
5 A: How do I ..... a new document?
B: Just select NEW from the File .....
6 A: There was a warning on the news this morning about a new computer .....
B: Well, I should be OK. I've got ..... software.

53.6 **Over to you**

Do you have a computer? If so, can you answer all the questions in section C on the opposite page?

54 Email and the Internet

A Using email

Think about the way you use email.

- How often do you **check your email**? [look to see if you have any messages]
- How many emails do you send a week? Are they all **essential**? [important /necessary]
- How many emails do you get every week? Do you read them **immediately**? [without waiting]
- How quickly do you **reply to** [answer] the emails you receive?
- Do you **delete** emails **regularly**? [remove them from your computer often]
- Do you get much **spam**? [emails that you do not want, usually adverts; also called **junk mail**]
- Have you got **anti-virus software**? [a program that stops a virus entering your computer]
- How often do you send or receive **attachments**?

Language help

In English an email address may be written as pd@freeserve.co.uk, but we say it like this: pd **at** freeserve **dot** co **dot** uk.

B Getting started on the Internet

To go **on the Internet**, you need an **ISP** (Internet service provider) that will **connect** [join or link] your computer to the Internet and give you **access to** [the ability to use] email and other services. When you **go online** [use the Internet], you can then send and receive emails, or you can **browse** the Internet [look at websites]; you do this using a **browser** such as Internet Explorer or Firefox. Many **websites** also have **links**: if you **click on** a link, it will take you to a different website, or move you from one part of the website to another.

C Using the Internet

Many people now have internet **access** and internet use is changing all the time. These are common uses.

- Students **search** the Internet [look for information on the Internet; also **do an Internet search**] to help with their studies.
- People **download** [copy onto their computer; *opp* **upload**] information, pictures, music, **video clips** [small parts of a video recording], etc.
- People buy books, clothes and food online, book their holidays online, take out insurance online, etc. People go to a website, select the **item** [product, e.g. a book] they want and click **add to basket/bag**. When they have finished shopping they go to **checkout** and pay for their items, usually with a credit card.
- Some people have a personal website to provide news about a particular subject, or just write about events in their life. These are called **blogs**, and people who write them are **bloggers**.
- Some people just like to spend hours **surfing the web**. [looking at different websites]
- Some people spend a lot of time on **social networking sites** [places on the Internet where you can have a discussion with other people, e.g. Facebook, Twitter, etc.]. On these sites people **post** comments [leave messages] to their friends.
- Some people do a lot of **instant messaging**. [send and receive messages in real time]

Exercises

54.1 **Match the words on the left with the words on the right.**

1 go	[b]	a the web
2 do	[ ]	b online
3 surf	[ ]	c emails
4 delete	[ ]	d on a link
5 download	[ ]	e an Internet search
6 click	[ ]	f music

54.2 **Answer the questions.**

1 What can you do when you go online? Send emails and use the Internet
2 What does ISP stand for? .....
3 What does an ISP give you? .....
4 What are Safari, Internet Explorer and Firefox? .....
5 What do bloggers write about? .....
6 What is spam? .....
7 How do you say this: Zac@hotmail.com? .....
8 What do people do on social networking sites? .....

54.3 **Complete the dialogues. The first letter of each answer has been given to help you.**

1 A: A friend of mine has got his own blog.
B: Oh yeah. What does he write about?
2 A: Do you always reply to emails i.....?
B: Yes. I think it's rude if you don't reply as soon as you receive an email. Don't you do that?
A: No. I don't reply at once unless it's really e.....
3 A: How can I view information about the computers they sell?
B: Just c..... on that l....., and it will take you to the website which has the details.
4 A: Do you have internet a..... at your school?
B: We do in school hours, but not before or after school.
5 A: I sent you an email earlier with an a..... . Did you get it?
B: Oh, I'm afraid I haven't c..... my email today yet. I'll do it now.
6 A: Do you d..... much stuff from the Internet?
B: Well, music naturally, and I also d..... a few video c.....
7 A: I keep getting viruses on my computer.
B: Ah, you will need to get some a..... v..... software.
8 A: Do you delete emails r.....?
B: Yes, every day. I have to, because I receive so many, and most of them aren't important.

54.4 **Over to you**

Answer the questions. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

1 Do you go on the Internet? If so, what are your favourite websites?
2 Do you have a blog or read other people's? Whose blog do you read?
3 Do you download material from the Internet? What do you download?
4 Do you watch video clips on the Internet? What video clips do you watch?
5 Do you use social networking sites or instant messaging? Which websites do you use? Who do you talk to?

55 Crime

A Different crimes

A **crime** is an activity that is wrong and not allowed by law. A person who **commits a crime** is a **criminal.**

crime	person	verb
theft [stealing something, e.g. a car]	**thief**	**steal/take** (something)
robbery [stealing from a person or place, e.g. a bank]	**robber**	**rob** (someone, a place)
burglary [getting into a building, usually someone's home, and stealing something]	**burglar**	**steal** something **burgle** (a place)
murder [killing someone]	**murderer**	**murder**

Someone's **stolen/taken** my handbag.
I don't know who **robbed** me.
Our flat was **burgled**, but they only took money.

There's been another **burglary** in the area.
Did you hear about the **bank robbery** yesterday?
Do they know who **murdered** the boy?

B Reporting crimes in the media

Two women robbed a jeweller's shop in West London early this morning. They **broke in**[1] around 7 o'clock and stole jewellery **worth**[2] over £10,000.

[1] entered the building using force, e.g. broke a window
[2] with a value of

The two men **attacked**[3] Mr Crawford while he was walking home yesterday afternoon. Police say the two men **hit** him in the face several times, then took his money and **escaped**[4] through Bushy Park.

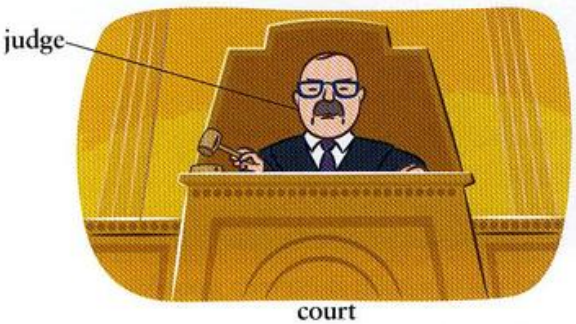
[3] used physical violence to hurt him
[4] left the place to avoid danger; *syn* **got away**

Detectives[5] **arrested**[6] a man this morning in connection with the murder of shop assistant, Tracey Miles.

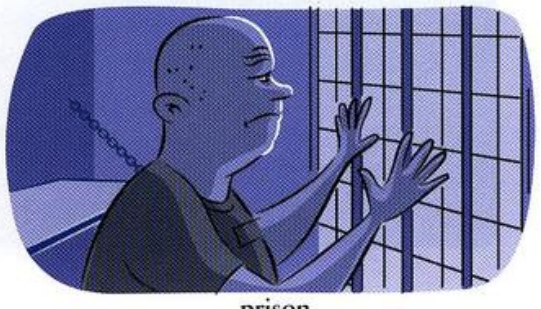
[5] police officers who try to find information to solve crimes
[6] If you *arrest* someone, you take them to the police station because you believe they committed a crime. That person is then **under arrest.**

C Punishment*

If you commit a crime and the police **catch** you [find you and arrest you], you will be **punished.** For **minor offences** [crimes that are not very important; *opp* **serious**], the punishment may only be a **fine** [money you have to pay], but for serious crimes, you will have to go to **court.** If you are found **guilty** [the **judge**, or a **jury** of 12 people, decides you committed the crime; *opp* **innocent**], you may be sent to **prison** (*syn* **jail**).



court


prison

* what a person must suffer if they do something wrong

Exercises

55.1 Test your knowledge. Can you complete this table without looking at the opposite page?

noun	person	verb
crime	criminal	
murder		
theft		
robbery		
burglary		

55.2 Find five more pairs of words that have a similar meaning.

~~catch~~ theft crime jail prison ~~arrest~~ get away
steal offence hit escape attack

catch – arrest ....

....

55.3 Complete the dialogues.

1 A: Is it being decided by a judge?
B: No, there will be a jury.....
2 A: Have the police caught the man?
B: Yes, he's under .....
3 A: Is she guilty?
B: No, the jury found her .....
4 A: He killed his wife?
B: Yes, he's under arrest for .....
5 A: Was it a serious crime?
B: No, just a minor .....
6 A: Will she go to prison?
B: No, she just has to pay a .....
7 A: Have you ever broken the law?
B: Yes, but I've never committed a serious .....
8 A: How do you think he will be .....?
B: Well, it wasn't a very serious crime, so it'll probably be a fine.

55.4 Complete the news report.

Two men are [1] under arrest for [2] ..... clothes from a warehouse* in Bristol. The two men [3] ..... into the warehouse late yesterday evening, [4] ..... the guard and tied him up, then [5] ..... a collection of expensive designer outfits [6] ..... over £40,000. A passer-by saw lights on in the warehouse and rang the police, but the two men managed to [7] ..... through a back door and then drove off with the stolen clothes. However, one of the men was later caught and [8] ..... at his home, and [9] ..... caught the second man just hours later hiding at a friend's house. Both men have now been charged with [10] ..... and will appear before a judge in [11] ..... on Monday. If they are found [12] ....., the two men will go to [13] ..... for a number of years. The guard who was attacked has now been released from hospital.

* A warehouse is a large building for storing goods that are going to be sold.

56 Politics

A Elections in the UK

When you **vote for** someone, you choose them by putting a cross (X) on an official piece of paper (called a **secret ballot** because no one knows who you vote for), or by putting up your hand. In the UK, a **general election** is when the people **elect**[1] the next **government**[2]. These **elections** are **held**[3] at least every five years. Each **constituency**[4] elects one person from one **political party**. That person then becomes the **MP** (Member of Parliament) for that area, and the political party with the most MPs – there are 650 at the moment – forms the next government. The **leader**[5] of the party **in power**[6] is the **prime minister**.

[1] choose by voting
[2] the group of people who control the country
[3] organised
[4] an area where people vote
[5] the person in control
[6] in control (of the country)

Language help

noun	person	adjective
politics	**politician**	**political**
power		**powerful**

B Political policies

People usually vote for a political party because they **believe in** the party's ideas [think the ideas are good or right], and these ideas become **policies** [sets of plans and ideas that a political party has agreed on].

VOTE FOR US AND WE WILL ...

- ✓ **provide**[1] free nursery education **for** all children
- ✓ provide more **care**[2] and **support**[3] for **elderly**[4] people
- ✓ **reduce**[5] unemployment
- ✓ create a **fair**[6] **tax**[7] system

Above all[8], we will **treat**[9] people as **equal**[10].

[1] give something to those who need it (also **provide** someone **with** something)
[2] looking after people, especially old people
[3] help (sometimes in the form of money)
[4] old
[5] make less; *syn* **cut**
[6] dealing with everyone in the same way; *opp* **unfair**
[7] money people must pay the government
[8] most importantly
[9] behave or deal with someone in a particular way
[10] having the same importance; *adv* **equally**

Language help

verb	noun
believe in sth	**belief**
reduce	**reduction**

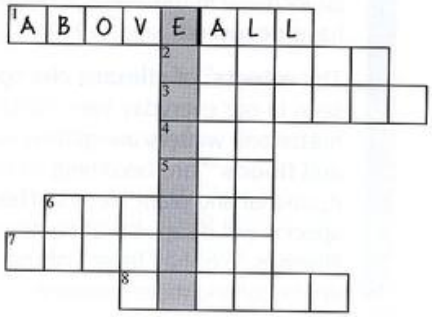
Exercises

56.1 **Complete the sentences using the correct form of the word on the right.**

1	Have they set the date for the *election* ?	ELECT
2	Employment is an important ..... issue.	POLITICS
3	My political ..... are important to me.	BELIEVE
4	The president is a very ..... man.	POWER
5	I hope there will be a ..... in my tax.	REDUCE
6	Do you believe what ..... say?	POLITICS

56.2 **Complete the crossword. What is the vertical word in grey?**

1 Most importantly
2 Person in control of a political party
3 Another word for 'old'
4 A synonym for 'reduce'
5 Money people must pay to the government
6 A set of plans and ideas that a group agree on
7 Help, often in the form of money
8 Not fair



56.3 **Rewrite the sentences on the left starting with the words given. Keep a similar meaning.**

1	They are in control of the country.	They are in *power* .
2	They elected her.	They voted ..... .
3	Elections take place every five years.	Elections are ..... .
4	They will give hospitals more money.	They will provide ..... .
5	No one knows who you vote for.	It's a secret ..... .
6	It's a fair system for everyone.	The system treats ..... .
7	Our policy is to look after old people.	Our policy is to provide ..... .

56.4 **Complete the text.**

In Canada, [1] *elections* work in a similar way to the UK. Canada is divided into 308 political [2] ..... , but they are called 'ridings' in Canada, and altogether there are 19 registered [3] ..... parties in the country. [4] ..... are held every five years, and people [5] ..... for just one person in each riding to become their member of [6] ..... . The [7] ..... that wins the most ridings is then asked by the Governor-General to form the next [8] ..... , and the leader of that party becomes [9] ..... minister.

56.5 **Over to you**

Answer the questions. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

1 How many major political parties are there in your country?
2 Which party is in power at the moment?
3 When were they elected?
4 Who is the leader of this party?
5 Did you vote in this election?

56.6 **Over to you**

Look at the policies in section B on the opposite page. What do you think of them? If you were in power, would you have these policies? What policies would you have? If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

57 Climate change

A The problem

Many **greenhouse gases**, e.g. carbon dioxide, methane and ozone, **exist**[1] naturally and are needed to **create**[2] **the greenhouse effect** that keeps the Earth warm enough to **support**[3] human life. However, the use of **fossil fuels**, e.g. **oil**, natural gas and coal, has produced **excessive**[4] amounts of greenhouse gases, and the **result**[5] is **global warming**: an increase in the average temperature on Earth. Of the 20 warmest years **on record**[6], 19 have **occurred**[7] since 1980.

The **effects**[8] of **climate change** can already be seen in our everyday lives. Summers are getting hotter and winters are getting wetter, so **drought**[9] and **floods**[10] are becoming more common. With it, animal and plant life is **suffering**[11] – some species will disappear altogether – and certain illnesses, e.g. hay fever, asthma and skin cancer, are becoming more common.

To stop global warming from **destroying**[12] our **environment**[13], we need to act now.

[1] are real or present
[2] make something happen or exist
[3] help (human life) to continue
[4] more than you want or need
[5] something that happens because of something else that has happened
[6] If information is *on record*, it has been written down or kept on a computer.
[7] happened; *fml*
[8] a change or result that is caused by something
[9] a long time without rain when people do not have enough water
[10] when water covers an area that is usually dry, often from too much rain
[11] experiencing something which is unpleasant
[12] damaging something so badly that it does not exist or cannot be used
[13] the air, land and water around us

B The solution* – or part of it

To **reduce** global warming [make it less], the nations of the world will have to **act** together [do something to solve a problem; *syn* **take action**]. In the meantime, individuals can also help.

Six ways to reduce global warming:

- Don't **throw** things **away** – **recycle** paper, glass, plastic, etc. so that it can be used again.
- Don't **waste**[3] water, e.g. turn off the **tap** when you are brushing your teeth.
- **Save**[1] **energy**[2] e.g. **switch off** lights when you leave a room.
- Change **light bulbs** for more **energy-efficient**[4] ones
- Drive less and walk more.
- **Plant trees**[5] because trees reduce the amount of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere, and so reduce greenhouse gases.

*the answer to a problem
[1] don't waste
[2] gas and electricity
[3] use it badly
[4] working well and not wasting energy
[5] put a new tree in the ground

Exercises

57.1 How do you pronounce the underlined letters? Use the index to help you.

1 gl<u>o</u>bal Is it like g<u>o</u> or g<u>o</u>t? *go*
2 fl<u>oo</u>d Is it like f<u>oo</u>t or f<u>u</u>n?
3 f<u>u</u>el Is it like f<u>oo</u>d or f<u>e</u>w?
4 dr<u>ou</u>ght Is it like n<u>o</u> or n<u>ow</u>?
5 s<u>u</u>ffer Is it like s<u>o</u>n or s<u>oo</u>n?
6 climate Is it like educate or comfortable?

57.2 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

1 the greenhouse	[c]	a warming
2 global	[ ]	b change
3 fossil	[ ]	c effect
4 greenhouse	[ ]	d fuels
5 climate	[ ]	e gases

57.3 How can we help with global warming? Cover the opposite page and complete the text.

- Don't [1] *throw away* ..... paper, glass and plastic; [2] ..... it.
- Don't [3] ..... water: turn off the [4] ..... when you brush your teeth.
- [5] ..... energy by [6] ..... off lights when you leave a room.
- [7] ..... trees in order to [8] ..... the amount of carbon dioxide.
- [9] ..... action now, before it's too late.

57.4 Complete the explanations.

1 We don't have to create greenhouse gases; they *exist* ..... naturally.
2 Greenhouse gases in the atmosphere ..... the greenhouse effect.
3 Global warming is the ..... of an increase in the amount of greenhouse gases.
4 Two ..... of climate change have been hotter summers and wetter winters.
5 A ..... is often the result of too much rain when the rivers are full.
6 A ..... is a long period without rain, and they are ..... more frequently now.
7 The ..... is the air, land and water around us.
8 If you ..... something, it is so badly damaged, it cannot be used again.
9 If something is ..... , it works well and doesn't waste energy.
10 ..... is the power that comes from gas, electricity, etc.

57.5 Complete the tables. Use a dictionary to help you.

verb	noun
recycle	*recycling*
waste	
destroy	
exist	

verb	noun
	solution
reduce	
support	
suffer	

57.6

Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, talk to someone else about the problems.

1 Can you see the effects of global warming and climate change in your country? What do you see?
2 What things do people recycle every week?
3 Do you think you often waste water and energy? How?
4 What more could you do to solve the problem? Does it worry you?

58 War and violence

A The job of the army

These men are **soldiers**, and they are **carrying guns**[1]. They are members of an **army**, and part of the responsibility of an army is to **defend** their country from **attack**[2] and to **protect** the people[3]. Sometimes this means they have to **fight** the **enemy**[4]. A long period of fighting is called a **war**, e.g. the First World War, 1914–1918, and during a war there will be a number of **battles**[5].

[1] have guns with them
[2] stop others who use violence against their country
[3] keep them safe
[4] the people they are fighting against
[5] fights between two armies

Language help

Violence is when someone tries to hurt or kill someone; the adjective is **violent**.
*The **violence** has increased in recent weeks; There have been a number of **violent** attacks.*

B Reporting in war

Ten people were **killed** and many more were injured when a **bomb exploded** (see picture) in **the heart of**[1] the city. The attack happened just before midday, and **destroyed**[2] several buildings. The army are now **searching**[3] the area where the attack **took place**[4]. Most of the attackers **escaped**[5], but the army believe they may still be **hiding**[6] in other parts of the city.

During the attack, one soldier was **shot**[7] and later died. It also appears that another soldier is **missing**[8]. The number of **deaths**[9] is expected to rise.

[1] the centre of
[2] damaged them so badly that they don't exist now; NOT ~~completely damaged~~
[3] trying to find someone or something
[4] happened
[5] left the place without being caught; *syn* **get away**
[6] staying in a place where you cannot be seen or found
[7] injured by a gun
[8] It isn't known where someone or something is
[9] people who are dead / have **died**

Language help

Several words in the unit can be used as verbs and nouns with a similar meaning.

*They're **searching** for them.* *They're continuing their **search** for them.*
*He can't **escape**.* *There is no **escape**.*
*When did they **attack**?* *Where did the **attack** take place?*

Exercises

58.1 Are these words *nouns*, *verbs*, or *nouns* and *verbs*?

protect	verb	shoot	
search	noun and verb	war	
die		defend	
attack		escape	
death		hide	

58.2 Complete the sentences with the correct verb.

1 The soldiers have been fighting for days, and so far three have been injured.
2 The woman was ..... with a small handgun, but wasn't seriously injured.
3 One of the soldiers managed to ..... under the house where no one could find him.
4 There are 20 soldiers surrounding the house, so the men inside cannot ..... .
5 The bomb ..... inside the café. Nobody was ..... but several people were injured.
6 I understand the army are ..... houses in an effort to find the gunman.
7 The bomb completely ..... the building, but fortunately no one was inside at the time.
8 My men had to ..... the village from outside attacks.
9 Were the police ..... guns when they saw the men?

58.3 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences. Sometimes both are correct.

1 One man was found but the other is still *lost* / (*missing*).
2 The *battle* / *war* lasted for two hours.
3 The attack happened in the *heart* / *centre* of the city.
4 One of the buildings was completely *damaged* / *destroyed*.
5 Three of the men are *died* / *dead*.
6 One woman *escaped* / *got away*.
7 The boy was badly injured and later *died* / *killed*.
8 Some of the policemen are not allowed to *hold* / *carry* guns.
9 They don't know who *shoot* / *shot* the man.

58.4 Complete the text.

The [1] attack happened early this morning. The [2] ..... were out on patrol when they saw the [3] ..... about half a mile away. Moments later a [4] ..... exploded quite close to them, and was followed by a [5] ..... gun battle which lasted two hours. Two soldiers were [6] ..... and several were injured. An [7] ..... captain said that they have now taken control of the area where the attack [8] ..... .

58.5 Use a dictionary to develop these word families, and write example sentences for the new words.

verb	noun	example
protect	protection	The army gave the families protection.
destroy		
explode		
defend		

59 Time

A Phrases with *time*

We got to the meeting **in time.** [before the meeting started]
My brother is always **on time.** [not early or late]
It's time (**for** us) **to** go. [used to say that something should happen now]
Do you **have time for** a cup of coffee? [have enough time to do something]
Call me **the next time** you're in London. [on the next occasion]
The weather was wonderful **the last time** we were there. [on the last occasion]
Sophie and I arrived **at the same time,** 9 o'clock exactly.

B Time prepositions often confused

I'll be here **until** 4.30. [I won't leave before 4.30]
I'll be there **by** 8.15. [not later than 8.15]

I've worked here **for** six months. (*for* + a period of time, e.g. a week, ten days, two years)
I've worked here **since** May. (*since* + a point in time in the past, e.g. last Friday, March, 2001)

I worked on a farm **during** the summer. (this tells you 'when')
I worked on a farm **for** a month. (this tells you 'how long') (NOT ~~during~~ a month)

I'm going back to Brazil **in** ten days' **time.** [ten days from now] (NOT ~~after~~ ten days)

C Approximate periods of time – past, present and future

Past
I've known Lucia **for ages.** [for a long time, e.g. many years]
I haven't been to the dentist **recently/lately.** [e.g. in the last few months]
I saw Tom **recently.** [e.g. a few weeks ago / not long ago]
I used to go skiing, but that was **a long time ago.** [e.g. 5–10 years ago; *syn* **ages ago**]
My sister went to the zoo **the other day.** [e.g. a few days ago, perhaps a week]

Present
I don't see my brother much **these days.** [a period including the past and now; *syn* **nowadays**]

Future
This dictionary's fine **for the time being.** [for now / the near future – but not for a long time]
I'm sure I'll go to America **one day.** [in the future but I don't know when]

D Counting time

There are 60 **seconds** in a minute; 60 minutes in an hour; 24 hours in a day; 7 days in a week; 2 weeks in a **fortnight;** 52 weeks in a year; 10 years in a **decade;** 100 years in a **century.**

E *Take* and *last*

We use **take** to say how long we need to do something.
It takes me half an hour to get to school.
We can walk, but it'll **take** (**us**) a long time.

We use **last** to talk about how long something continues, from the beginning to the end.
The course **lasts for** ten weeks.
How long does the film **last?**
The battery in my camera didn't **last long.** [continue for a long time]

Exercises

59.1 **Complete the sentences.**

1 I'll see you the next time I come to London.
2 The shop closes at 5.30. If we don't hurry, we'll never get there ..... time.
3 I always get to meetings ..... time; I hate it when people are late.
4 I'm afraid I won't ..... time to see you this week.
5 I'll have to go soon. It's time ..... me to pick up the children from school.
6 Marcel and I got to the station at the ..... time.

59.2 **Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.**

1 I'll see you (in) / *after* ten days' time.
2 The teacher told us to finish our homework *by* / *until* Monday.
3 We can't leave *by* / *until* the others get back.
4 I've been in the army *for* / *since* I was eighteen.
5 They've worked here *for* / *since* / *during* six months.
6 I visit my uncle every week *for* / *since* / *during* the winter.
7 I was at university *for* / *since* / *during* three years.
8 She's going back to France *in* / *after* three months' time.
9 I haven't seen them *for* / *since* last Thursday.

59.3 **Replace the underlined words with more 'approximate' time expressions.**

1 I had my hair cut two weeks ago. recently
2 I went to Egypt with my parents but that was ten years ago. .....
3 I went to the library three days ago. .....
4 I haven't been to the cinema for the last three weeks. .....
5 I haven't been to a concert for three or four years. .....
6 This computer will be fine for the next year. .....

59.4 **Test your general knowledge. Can you complete these sentences with the correct number or period of time?**

1 Michael Jackson died in 2009 .
2 The Olympic Games usually last about a ..... .
3 Picasso was born in the .....th century, and died in the .....th century.
4 President Kennedy died in ..... . That's over ..... years ago.
5 It takes approximately ..... hours to fly from London to New York.
6 The best athletes can run 100 metres in less than ..... seconds.
7 The ..... was the decade in which the USA and USSR were trying to be the first country to put a man on the moon.

59.5

Over to you

Complete the sentences about yourself. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

1 I've been in my present school/university/job for .....
2 It takes me ..... to get to school/university/work.
3 A typical school/college/working day for me lasts .....
4 I've been studying English since .....
5 I haven't actually spoken English since .....
6 I saw ..... the other day.
7 Nowadays I don't .....
8 One day I hope .....

60 Numbers

A Cardinal numbers

379 = three **hundred** and seventy-nine
5,084 = five thousand and eighty-four
2,000,000 = two **million**
2,860 = two **thousand**, eight hundred and sixty
470,000 = four hundred and seventy thousand
3,000,000,000 = three **billion**

Language help
There is no plural 's' after *hundred, thousand, million* and *billion* when they are part of a number. When we are talking generally, they are plural, e.g. ***thousands*** *of people,* ***millions*** *of insects.*

B Dates

With dates, we write them and say them in a different way.
We can write **4 June** or **June 4th**, but say **the fourth of June** or **June the fourth.**
We can write **21 May** or **May 21st**, but say **the twenty-first of May** or **May the twenty-first.**
1997 = **nineteen ninety-seven;** 2010 = **two thousand and ten** or **twenty ten**

Common mistakes
The **seventh** of April (NOT The ~~seven~~ April); the **fourth** question (NOT the ~~four~~ question)

C Fractions and decimals

1¼ = one and **a quarter**
1½ = one and **a half**
1¾ = one and **three quarters**
1.25 = one **point** two five
1.5 = one point five
1.75 = one point seven five

D Percentages

26% is spoken as twenty-six **per cent.** More than 50% of something is the **majority of** it, less than 50% of something is the **minority:**
The **vast majority** of the students (e.g. 95%) agreed with the new plan, only a **small minority** (e.g. 5%) were unhappy.

E Calculations

There are four basic processes. Notice how they are said when we are **working out** [trying to calculate] the answer.

+ = **addition** e.g. 6 + 4 = 10 (six **plus/and** four **equals/is** ten)
– = **subtraction** e.g. 6 – 4 = 2 (six **minus** four is two)
x = **multiplication** e.g. 6 x 4 = 24 (six **multiplied by / times** four is twenty-four)
÷ = **division** e.g. 8 ÷ 2 = 4 (eight **divided by** two is four)

Some people are not very good at **adding up** numbers [putting numbers together to reach a total], and often **get stuck** [have a problem] if they have to work out something quite difficult. The easiest way is to use a **calculator** [a small electronic machine for working out numbers].

F Saying '0'

'0' can be spoken in different ways in different situations:
telephone number: 603449 = six **oh** three, **double** four nine OR six **zero** three, **double** four nine
mathematics: 0.7 = **nought** point seven; 6.02 = six point **oh** two OR six point **nought** two
temperature: –10 degrees = ten degrees below **zero** OR **minus** ten degrees

Exercises

60.1 How do you say these numbers in English? Write the answers in words, then practise saying them.

1 462 four hundred and sixty-two
2 2½ .....
3 2,345 .....
4 0.25 .....
5 1,250,000 .....
6 10.04 .....
7 47% .....
8 10 September .....
9 940338 (phone number) .....
10 -5 Celsius .....
11 in 1996 .....
12 2012 .....

60.2 Correct the mistakes.

1 Two thousand and five hundred. Two thousand, five hundred
2 After the game, I heard that the crowd was over twenty thousands. .....
3 We arrived on the seven June. .....
4 There were two hundred twenty altogether. .....
5 My birthday is the thirty-one August. .....
6 My phone number is seven twenty-three, six nought nine. .....

60.3 Complete the sentences.

1 Eight multiplied by seven is fifty-six.
2 The ..... were in favour of the new airport; about 80%, I think.
3 A small ..... did not support the idea, but it was only 5%.
4 I'm not very good at arithmetic. I always have to use a ..... .
5 When I tried to add ..... all the numbers, I couldn't ..... it out.
6 I can do simple calculations, but I get ..... if the numbers are very big.

60.4 Can you work out the answers? If you find it difficult, use paper or a calculator.

1 23 and 36 is fifty-nine .
2 24 times 3 is ..... .
3 80 minus 20 is ..... .
4 65 divided by 13 is ..... .
5 Add 10 and 6, multiply by 3, then subtract 15 and divide by 11. What number is left?
.....
6 Divide 33 by 11, multiply by 7, add 10, and subtract 16. What number is left? .....

60.5

Over to you

Answer the questions. Write your answers in words.

1 When were you born? .....
2 How tall are you? .....
3 What's the number of the flat or house where you live? .....
4 When's your birthday? .....
5 What's the approximate population of your town? .....
6 What's your body temperature? .....

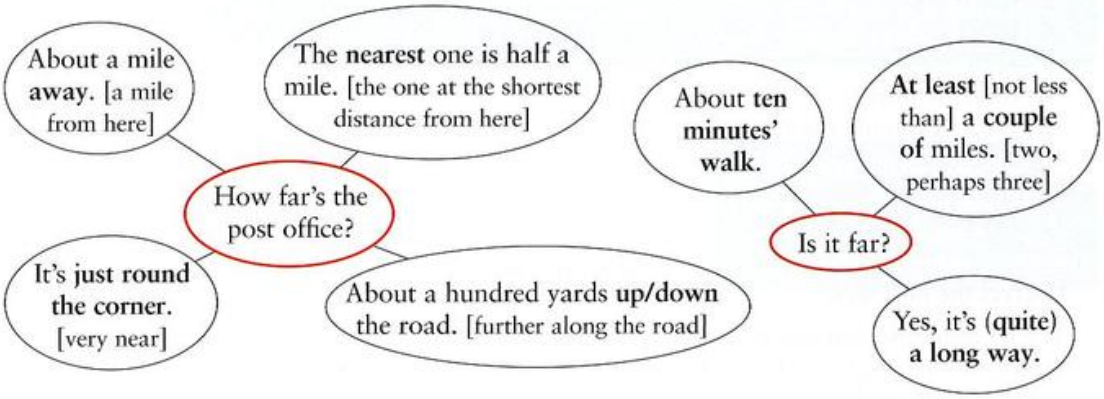
61 Distance, dimensions and size

A Distance: how far ...

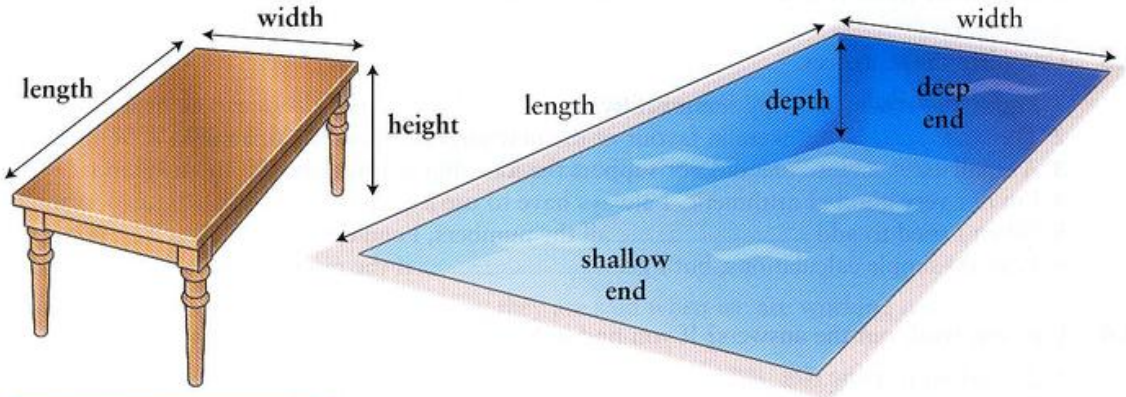
British people buy most things in metres, centimetres and millimetres, but they still often talk about distance using the old system of **miles** [1 mile = about 1.6 kilometres], **yards** [1 yard = almost 1 metre], **feet** [1 foot = 30 centimetres], and **inches** [1 inch = 2.5 centimetres].

Common mistakes

It's ten minutes' walk from here. (NOT ten minutes' ~~walking~~.)
It's a long way. (NOT It's ~~far~~.)
But we can say 'No, it isn't far.'



B Dimensions: how long or wide ...



Common mistakes

Paul is quite **tall** (NOT quite ~~high~~). It's a **tall** tree/building (NOT a ~~high~~ tree/building). It's a **high** mountain (NOT a ~~tall~~ mountain).

We can ask about the dimensions like this:

What's the **length** of the garage? OR How **long** is the garage?	It's five metres (**long**).
What's the **width** of the path? OR How **wide** is the path?	It's a metre (**wide**).
What's the **height** of the wall? OR How **high** is the wall?	It's two metres (**high**).
What's the **depth** of the pool? OR How **deep** is the pool?	It's three metres (**deep**).

C Size: how big or small ...

We use a range of adjectives to describe the size of something.

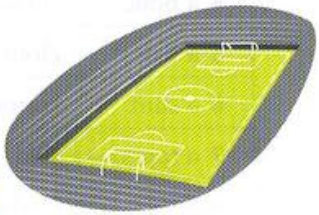
It was a very **thick** book – over 500 pages. (*opp* a **thin** book)
Their living room is **huge**. [very big; *syn* **enormous**; *opp* a **tiny** room]
We caught a **giant** crab. [very large or bigger than other similar things]
It was a very **narrow** road for a bus. (*opp* a **wide** road)

Exercises

61.1 Disagree with the speaker in each dialogue.

1 A: It's only a thin book, isn't it?
B: No, it's quite thick.
2 A: The water's deep in the middle, isn't it?
B: No, ...
3 A: Is the road very wide at that point?
B: No, ...
4 A: James is quite short, isn't he?
B: No, ...
5 A: They only live in a small place, don't they?
B: No, ...
6 A: Is it a really huge pool?
B: No, ...

61.2 Complete the questions (in two ways) about the lake, the mountain, the woman and the football pitch.



1 How deep ..... is the lake?
2 What's ..... the lake?
3 How ..... is the mountain?
4 What's ..... the mountain?
5 How ..... is she?
6 What's her ..... ?
7 How ..... is the pitch?
8 What's ..... the pitch?

61.3

Over to you

Think about the building you are in now, and answer the questions using expressions from the opposite page.

1 How far is it to the nearest shop? .....
2 How far is it to a bank? .....
3 Is it very far to the nearest bus stop? .....
4 Is it very far to a post office? .....
5 Is it a long way to the nearest swimming pool? .....
6 Is it a long way to the next big town? .....
7 How far is the nearest train station? .....
8 Is it far to the centre of town? .....

62 Objects, materials, shapes and colour

A Objects[1] and materials[2]

[1] things you can see or touch [2] what something is made of or from

object	material	description
1 a **bell**	**metal**	used in hotel receptions
2 a chair	wood	an **antique** [an object that is old and often rare or beautiful]
3 a hat	**fur**	made from a **real** animal
4 a **bone**	**rubber**	a **toy** for dogs
5 a **flag**	cloth, e.g. cotton	the Italian **national** flag
6 a shirt	**cotton**	it has red **stripes**
7 a top	**silk**	beautifully soft and stylish
8 a sofa	**leather**	**stylish** [fashionable and attractive]
9 a **ladder**	metal	light and easy to carry
10 a **tissue**	paper	a soft piece of paper that you use for cleaning your nose
11 a **bucket**	**plastic**	used to clean floors

Language help

Most of the materials above can be adjectives or nouns, e.g. *a cotton shirt*, or *a shirt made of cotton*; *a leather sofa*, or *a sofa made of leather*. The exception is wood: a chair made of wood is *a **wooden** chair*.

B Shapes and colours

a **grey** square a **pink** star a **navy blue** circle a **green** semi-circle a **purple** heart

a **round** ball a **square** box shoes with **pointed** toes

Language help

When we want to say that a shape is 'almost round' or a colour is 'a sort of green', we can also express this idea with the suffix **-ish**, e.g. *She had a **roundish** face*; *He wore a **greenish** tie*.

Exercises

62.1 Put the words into the correct columns.

~~bell~~ circle pink silk flag grey cotton purple plastic bucket fur ladder square navy blue

objects	materials	shapes	colours
bell			

62.2 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

1 a plastic	d	a	scarf
2 a silk		b	hat
3 a rubber		c	belt
4 a fur		d	toy
5 a cotton		e	tyre (on the wheel of a car)
6 a leather		f	T-shirt

62.3 Label the objects, and their shape or colour.

1 a grey sofa

3 .....

5 .....

2 .....

4 .....

6 .....

62.4 Which object is being described?

1 It's got a point at one end and that's the end you write with. a pencil
2 It's a shellfish. It is usually grey, but it goes pink when you cook it. .....
3 It can be metal or plastic and you often put water in it to wash floors. .....
4 It is usually made of wood or metal, and you climb up it. .....
5 At certain times of the month it's round; at others, it's closer to a semi-circle. .....
6 An adult human body has 206 of these. .....

62.5 **Over to you**

Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

1 Do you wear shoes with pointed toes?
2 What clothes do you have that are pink, purple or navy blue?
3 Do you wear anything that has stripes? If so, what?
4 Do you have any clothes that are made from silk or fur?
5 What things do you own that are made of leather?

63 Containers and quantities

A Containers and contents*

a bag of shopping

a bottle of apple juice

a jar of jam

a bowl of sugar

a jug of water

a packet of crisps

a can of cola

a box of chocolates

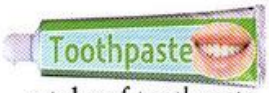
a packet of biscuits

a vase of flowers

a tin of fruit

a bar of chocolate

a carton of orange juice



a tube of toothpaste

* the things inside something

Language help

A **tin** usually has something we eat inside it; a **can** has something we drink.

B Quantities*

Just a **drop of** milk [a very small amount] and no sugar in my coffee, please.
I've cut three **slices of** beef; that should be enough for the sandwiches. (Or three **pieces of** beef)
I took my boss a **bunch of** flowers when I visited her in hospital.
I need a **sheet of** paper. (Or a **piece/bit of** paper)
Carl bought two **pairs of** trousers and a pair of shoes yesterday.
I bought **a couple of** books. [two, perhaps three]
We saw **several** churches on our way here. [some but not a lot, e.g. between three and eight]
I bought **half a dozen** eggs at the supermarket. [six]
There are a **dozen** students in the class. [twelve]
Could I have **a spoonful of** sugar in my tea?
We've got **plenty of** time. [a lot of]
The company is now making the toys **in large quantities.**

* the amount or number of something

three slices of beef

two sheets of paper

a spoonful of sugar

a bunch of keys

Language help

We can usually use **slice** when talking about pieces of bread, cakes and meat. We can use **bunch** to talk about flowers, grapes, bananas and keys.

Exercises

63.1 How do you pronounce the underlined letters? Use the index to help you.

1 t<u>i</u>n Is it like f<u>i</u>ne or w<u>i</u>nd? wind
2 p<u>air</u> Is it like c<u>ar</u> or c<u>are</u>?
3 v<u>a</u>se Is it like f<u>ar</u> or f<u>a</u>ce?
4 t<u>u</u>be Is it like n<u>oo</u>n or n<u>ew</u>?
5 c<u>ou</u>ple Is it like p<u>oo</u>l or c<u>u</u>p?
6 d<u>o</u>zen Is it like r<u>u</u>n or r<u>o</u>b?
7 qu<u>a</u>ntity Is it like r<u>a</u>n or w<u>a</u>nt?

63.2 Complete the phrases below.

1 a bottle of water
2 a ..... of spaghetti
3 a ..... of fruit
4 a ..... of coffee
5 a ..... of milk
6 a ..... of water
7 a ..... of matches
8 a ..... of soap
9 a ..... of apples

63.3 Correct the mistake with the container.

1 a ~~packet~~ of chocolate bar
2 a vase of jam .....
3 a tube of cigarettes .....
4 a tin of cola .....
5 a can of milk .....
6 a carton of toothpaste .....
7 a jar of flowers .....
8 a jug of biscuits .....

63.4 Complete the sentences with one word.

1 I need two pairs of socks inside these shoes.
2 I gave her a big ..... of flowers from my garden.
3 I cut about six ..... of bread and put them on a plate.
4 Could you get half a ..... more chairs?
5 The teacher told us to take out a blank ..... of paper.
6 I like to put a ..... of cream in my coffee.
7 There's no need to hurry – we've got ..... of time.
8 I met a ..... of friends – Adri and Danielle – on the way to the station.
9 She opened her bag on the table, turned it upside down, and all the ..... fell out.
10 Tennis is quite popular in our office. I know ..... people who play.

63.5 Cross out the wrong answer.

1 Could you get a carton of *milk / juice / ~~coffee~~*?
2 I bought a bunch of *grapes / bananas / apples*.
3 There were *a couple of / a pair of / several* people waiting at the bus stop.
4 Would you like a slice of *cake / bread / biscuit*?
5 It's nice with a spoonful of *sugar / jam / crisps*.
6 I bought two pairs of *socks / shirts / jeans*.
7 Have you got a *piece / bunch / sheet* of paper I could borrow?

64 Apologies, excuses and thanks

A Apologies with common replies

We can **apologise** [say sorry] in different ways in different situations.

A: **I'm (terribly/really) sorry** – I've forgotten your book.
B: **Never mind.** That's OK.

Terribly/really makes you sound 'more sorry'.

A: **I beg your pardon** – I didn't see you there.
B: **That's all right.** (also **That's OK.**)

I beg your pardon is a more formal apology, often used if you walk into someone.

A: **(I'm) sorry to disturb you.**
B: **Don't worry.** Come on in. I can finish this later.

We use this phrase when we **interrupt** / speak to someone who is busy working.

A: **(I'm) sorry to keep you waiting – I won't be long.**
B: OK. Fine.

We use this phrase when someone is waiting for us. *I won't be long* = I will be with you very soon.

A: **Excuse me,** I won't be a minute.
B: OK. Fine.

We use this phrase when we have to leave a room or go somewhere.

A: **I must apologise for** the noise last night.
B: That's all right. I understand.

This is a more formal apology, and it is often used in business letters.

A: **I'm (really) sorry I'm late.**
B: Don't worry.

Common mistakes
I'm sorry I'm late. (NOT I'm sorry ~~for be~~ late. OR I'm sorry ~~to be~~ late.)

B Excuses

We often give an explanation or **excuse** after an apology. An **excuse** is a *reason* for the apology, which may or may not be true. These are excuses students might give for being late for class.

I'm sorry I'm late for class ...
- There was a **delay / hold-up** on the underground. [when a train, plane, etc. leaves or arrives later than you expect]
- I was **held up** in traffic. [**hold up** – cause a delay and make someone late – is often used in the passive]
- My train **was cancelled** [the train company decided not to run the train], and I had to wait half an hour for the next one.
- I **overslept.** [slept longer than I planned or wanted to]

C Thanks and replies

These are some common ways of **thanking** people, with typical replies.

A: **Thanks (very much).**
B: **Not at all.** (also **That's OK.**)

A: I've brought your books.
B: Oh, **cheers.** (*infml*)
A: **No problem.** (*infml*)

A: I'll post those letters for you.
B: Oh, thank you. **That's very kind of you.** [This is polite and slightly more formal.]

Exercises

64.1 Find three more pairs of phrases that have a similar meaning.

~~thanks very much~~ I'm terribly sorry don't worry never mind I was held up ~~cheers~~ I beg your pardon there was a delay

thanks very much / cheers ....

....

64.2 Complete the dialogues with one word. Contractions (e.g. *I'm*) count as one word.

1 A: I'm terribly ..... sorry.
B: That's OK.

2 A: Thanks very much.
B: ..... at all.

3 A: Sorry to ..... you waiting. I won't be ..... .
B: That's all ..... .

4 A: I'm sorry ..... late. The 7:30 train was ..... , so I had to wait for the next one.
B: That's OK. No ..... .

5 A: I gave your parents a lift to the station.
B: Oh, thanks. That's very ..... of you.

6 A: I must ..... for missing the meeting yesterday afternoon.
B: ..... mind. I'll ask Janice to tell you what happened.

7 A: I ..... your pardon. I thought the room was empty.
B: That's OK.

64.3 What could you say in these situations? If it is an apology, give an explanation.

1 You walk into someone by accident and he/she almost falls over.
I'm terribly sorry. OR I beg your pardon. I didn't see you.

2 You arrange to meet some friends in town at 9 am but you are twenty minutes late.

3 Your car has broken down. You're pushing it to the side of the road and a man offers to help.

4 You need to speak to your boss but she's working. What do you say when you enter her office?

5 You have to leave a meeting to take an important phone call. What do you say to the others?

6 You are on the phone but a customer is waiting to talk to you. What can you say to them?

7 You are late for an appointment because you had to wait half an hour in traffic.

8 Your company promised to send some information to a customer last week. You still haven't sent the information and you must now write to explain. Write the first sentence of your letter.

64.4

Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

1 Are you ever late for class or work? If so, do you have to apologise to anyone? Do you normally give a reason why you are late? If so, what reasons are most common?

2 What other things have you apologised for recently? What did you say? Did you give an excuse?

65 Requests, permission and suggestions

A Requests and replies

A: Could you pass the salt? — B: Sure. / No problem.

A: Could you possibly help me? — B: Yes, of course.

A: Dima, I wonder if you could help me? — B: Sure.

A: I was wondering if you could lend me some money until tomorrow. — B: No, I'm afraid I can't. [I'm sorry but I can't.]

Language help

As the requests become bigger it is normal to use longer phrases which sound more **polite**.

B Asking permission and replies

A: Could I possibly have a look at your magazine? — B: Yes, help yourself.

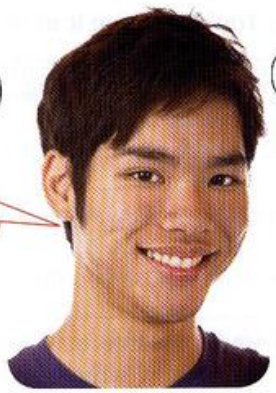
A: May/Could I open the window? — B: Sure, go ahead.

A: Do you mind if I watch TV? — B: No, go ahead.

Language help

When we answer **go ahead** or **help yourself**, we are giving someone permission to do the thing they have asked.

C Suggestions and replies



We could try that new restaurant.

How about going to a club?

What shall we do tonight?

I don't mind. You choose.

Let's go to the café in the square.

Why don't we go and see a film?

Do you fancy listening to some music? [do you want to; *infml*]

We can reply with different answers, from positive to negative.

Yeah, (that's a) great idea.	Yes, if you like.	No, I don't fancy that.
That sounds good.	Yeah, I don't mind.	Mm, I'd rather do something else. [I would prefer to do something else]

Exercises

65.1 **Correct six more mistakes in the dialogue.**

A: ~~Do~~ you like to go out this evening? Would
B: I'm afraid but I haven't got any money.
A: That's OK. I'll pay. How about go to see a film?
B: No, I think I'd rather to stay in. I have to do some homework.
A: Why you don't do your homework this afternoon?
B: I'm busy this afternoon.
A: Well, we could to go tomorrow.
B: Yeah, it's a great idea.

65.2 **Match 1–6 with a–f.**

1 Could you close the door?	[c]	a a suggestion
2 May I close the window?	[ ]	b a negative reply
3 We could go to the cinema.	[ ]	c a request
4 Yeah, great idea.	[ ]	d asking for permission
5 I wonder if you could close the door?	[ ]	e a positive reply
6 I don't fancy that.	[ ]	f a polite request

65.3 **Complete the dialogues with one word. Contractions (e.g. *don't*) count as one word.**

1 A: What would ..... you like to do this weekend?
B: I don't ..... . You decide.

2 A: Could you ..... open that window? It's very hot in here.
B: Yes, of ..... .

3 A: I was ..... if you could give me a lift to Luke's this evening.
B: Sure, no ..... .

4 A: What do you ..... doing this evening?
B: I don't ..... . Any ideas?
A: Why ..... we go to the cinema? We haven't been for ages.
B: Yeah, that's a great ..... .

5 A: Do you ..... if I use your phone?
B: No, go ..... .

6 A: OK. Where ..... we go on Saturday?
B: How ..... going to the beach if the weather's nice?
A: Yeah. Or we ..... try that new sports centre just outside town.
B: Mmm. I think I'd ..... go to the beach.
A: Yes, OK, if you ..... .

65.4 **Reply to the questions. Try to give a different answer each time.**

1 Could I borrow your pen for a minute? Yes, sure. .....
2 Could you possibly post a letter for me? .....
3 I was wondering if you've got a suitcase you could lend me? .....
4 Do you mind if I take this chair? .....
5 I've got some tickets for a concert. Do you fancy going? .....
6 How about going to a football match at the weekend? .....
7 Why don't we meet this afternoon and practise our English? .....

66 Opinions, agreeing and disagreeing

A Asking someone for their opinion

What do you think of his new book / Tom's girlfriend? [asking about a specific thing or person]
What do you think about global warming / cosmetic surgery? [asking about a general topic]
How do you feel about working with the others?

B Introducing your own opinion

Personally, I think Helena was probably right.
Personally, I feel that we should increase the price.
In my opinion [I think], we need to change the direction of the company.
My view/feeling is [my opinion is] that we need to wait a bit longer.

Common mistakes

Personally, I **don't think it's** a good idea. (NOT I ~~think it's not~~ a good idea.)
In my **opinion**, motorbikes are dangerous. (NOT ~~On~~ my opinion OR In my ~~meaning~~)
In most situations, it is probably easier and more natural to use **personally**.

C Giving the opinion of others

The newspaper **says** that his death was not an accident. (NOT ~~It's written~~ in the newspaper)
According to the paper [the paper says], the government didn't know about it.

D Agreeing and disagreeing (with someone)

I **totally agree (with you)**. [agree completely, 100%]
I **partly agree (with you)**. [agree but not completely]
I **agree (with you) to a certain extent**. [partly agree]

Common mistakes

I agree with you. (NOT ~~I'm agree~~ with you.)
Do you agree? (NOT ~~Are you~~ agree?)

In British English, it is common to agree with someone before giving a different opinion.
That's true, but I think ...
I see what you mean, [I understand what you are saying] **but** ...
I agree to some extent, but ...
I think that's a good **point** [idea or opinion], **but** ...
I take your point [I understand and partly agree with your opinion], **but** ...

E Giving a strong opinion

I **feel very strongly about** military service. I think everyone should do it.

I think you're **absolutely right/ wrong.** [100% correct/wrong]

I don't agree **at all.** [I completely disagree]

I **disagree completely.** [100% don't agree]

Exercises

66.1 **Complete the questions in different ways to ask people their opinion.**

1 What do you think *about* sending people to Mars?
2 ..... these shoes? Do you like them?
3 ..... having more responsibility?

66.2 **Complete the dialogues.**

1 A: Did you think he was right in what he said?
B: Not completely, but I *partly* agreed with him.
2 A: What did you think ..... the film?
B: Well, ... I didn't like it.
3 A: Do you agree with her?
B: Yes, to a certain ..... .
4 A: She feels very ..... about protecting the environment.
B: Yes, I know, and I think she's absolutely ..... .
5 A: ....., I think all politicians tell lies.
B: Sorry, but I ..... completely.
6 A: We can't send everyone to university.
B: Yes, that's ....., but we should give everyone a chance to go.
7 A: My ..... is that we should make all chocolate and sweets more expensive, and then people couldn't afford to eat so many things that are bad for them.
B: That's a good ....., but it seems unfair on people who don't eat too many sweet things.
8 A: I see what you ..... about spending more money, but can we afford it?
B: Well, in my ..... we have no choice.

66.3 **Rewrite the sentences using the words in capitals. Keep a similar meaning.**

1 I think you're right. AGREE *I agree with you.*
2 I think the club needs new players. OPINION .....
3 I completely disagree with you. AT ALL .....
4 The newspaper says the fire was started on purpose. ACCORDING .....
.....
5 I partly agree with her. EXTENT .....
6 I see what you mean, but I'm not sure I agree. POINT .....
.....

66.4 **Over to you**

Respond to the statements with your own opinion. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

1 I think most women are happy to stay at home and be a mother and housewife.
.....
2 Personally I don't think the government should give so much money to people who don't work.
.....
3 My feeling is that we should give more money to poor countries in other parts of the world.
.....
4 I think we should make it more expensive to drive a car in order to reduce the number of cars.
.....

67 Likes, dislikes, attitudes and preferences

A Likes and dislikes

	agree	disagree
I **love** rock music. I'm **really into** dance music. [like it very much; *infml*] I like a lot of pop music.	**So do I. / Me too.** **So am I.** / Me too. So do I. / Me too.	**Really?** I don't. Really? I'm not. Do you? I hate it.
I **quite** like salsa and samba. I **don't mind** jazz. [it's OK]	So do I. / Me too. Yeah, it's OK.	Oh, I'm not very keen. Oh, I can't stand it.
I'm **not very keen on** folk music. I **can't stand** classical music. [dislike it very much; *infml*] I **hate** opera.	**Neither am I. / Me neither.** **Neither can I.** / Me neither. So do I. / Me too.	Really? I love it. Really? I quite like it.

Language help

Many of these verbs can be followed by a noun or an *-ing* form, e.g. *I love driving, I like singing, I don't mind work, I dislike driving, I can't stand getting up early, I hate cold weather.*

B Attitudes and interests

My **attitude to** a lot of things has changed over the years. [how you think or feel about something]
I **used to** like chips. [I liked chips in the past but not now.]
I used to play computer games, but now they **don't interest** me. [I don't find them interesting.]
I'm very **interested in** modern architecture, but I used to think it was awful.
I used to go swimming a lot, but now I don't go **at all**. [*at all* makes a negative stronger]
Mark and I used to have the same **interests** [things we enjoy doing], but now it seems we **have nothing in common**. [have no interests that are similar; *opp* **have a lot in common**]

Common mistakes

I'm **interested in** seeing that. (NOT I'm ~~interest~~ in seeing that; OR I'm interested ~~to see~~ that.)

It takes time to **get used to** [become familiar with] **living** in a different country.
I didn't like my new glasses at first, but now I've **got used to** them.
I found the winters very cold at first, but you **get used to** it.

C Which do you, or would you, prefer?

A: Which do you **prefer** in general, tea or coffee? [like more]

B: Well, I **prefer** coffee **to** tea in the morning, but in the afternoon I usually drink tea.

A: Tonight, we can go to the cinema or the theatre. Which **would you prefer**?

B: I think **I'd prefer to** go to the cinema. (*syn* **I'd rather**)

Exercises

67.1 Correct the mistakes in B's replies.

1 A: I can drive.
B: So ~~do~~ I. can

2 A: I love modern art.
B: Yes, so I do. .....

3 A: Do you like chocolate?
B: Yes, I like very much. .....

4 A: Do you like it in England?
B: Yes, I'm getting used to live here. .....

5 A: I don't like shopping.
B: Me too. .....

6 A: Do you like football?
B: Yes, but I prefer rugby than football.
.....

7 A: Do you like this?
B: No, I'm not interest in music.
.....

67.2 Complete each sentence with one word.

1 My sister loves Robbie Williams, but I can't stand him.
2 The two boys have nothing in ..... ; they're completely different.
3 The others enjoyed the film, but I didn't like it at ..... .
4 I love the cinema, but this particular film doesn't ..... me.
5 Carole is really ..... modern art at the moment. Personally, I hate it.
6 I ..... to love cheese, but I never eat it now.
7 A: Would you like to go out? B: I'd ..... stay here, actually. Is that OK with you?
8 I didn't like raw fish at first, but I'm ..... used to it now.

67.3 Agree with the statements using *so* or *neither* and the correct verb. Then agree using *Me too* or *Me neither*.

1 I love this ice cream.	So do I.	Me too.
2 I like strawberries.	.....	.....
3 I don't like cold tea.	.....	.....
4 I can't work with music on.	.....	.....
5 I'm single.	.....	.....
6 I'm not married.	.....	.....
7 I've got a cat.	.....	.....

67.4 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals. Keep a similar meaning.

1 He likes salsa. INTO He's into salsa.
2 I hate these new shoes. STAND .....
3 She'd prefer to go home. RATHER .....
4 I don't like James Bond films very much. KEEN .....
5 I think the new building is alright. MIND .....
6 I went riding a lot in the past, but not now. USED .....
7 We have a lot of the same interests. COMMON .....
8 I'm becoming familiar with this new computer. USED .....
9 I don't feel the same way about work now. ATTITUDE .....

67.5

Over to you

Complete the sentences. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

I really like ..... .
I don't mind ..... .
I can't stand ..... .
I prefer ..... to ..... .
..... doesn't interest me.
I used to ..... .

68 Greetings, farewells and special expressions

A Greetings*

When we are **introduced to** a **stranger** [told the name of someone we have never met] in a formal **situation**, we usually **shake hands** and say *hello*, or perhaps **hello, nice to meet you.** In an informal situation, we usually just say *hello* or *hi*.

When we **greet** friends, there are no real rules in Britain. Men may kiss **female** friends [girls/women] on one **cheek** [side of the face], on both cheeks, or not at all. Women may kiss **male** friends and female friends **once, twice,** or not at all. We usually say things like this:

A: Hello. How are you? B: Fine, thanks. **How about** you?
A: Hi. **How's it going? / How are things?** (*infml*) B: **Not (so) bad,** thanks. And you?

* saying hello

B Farewells*

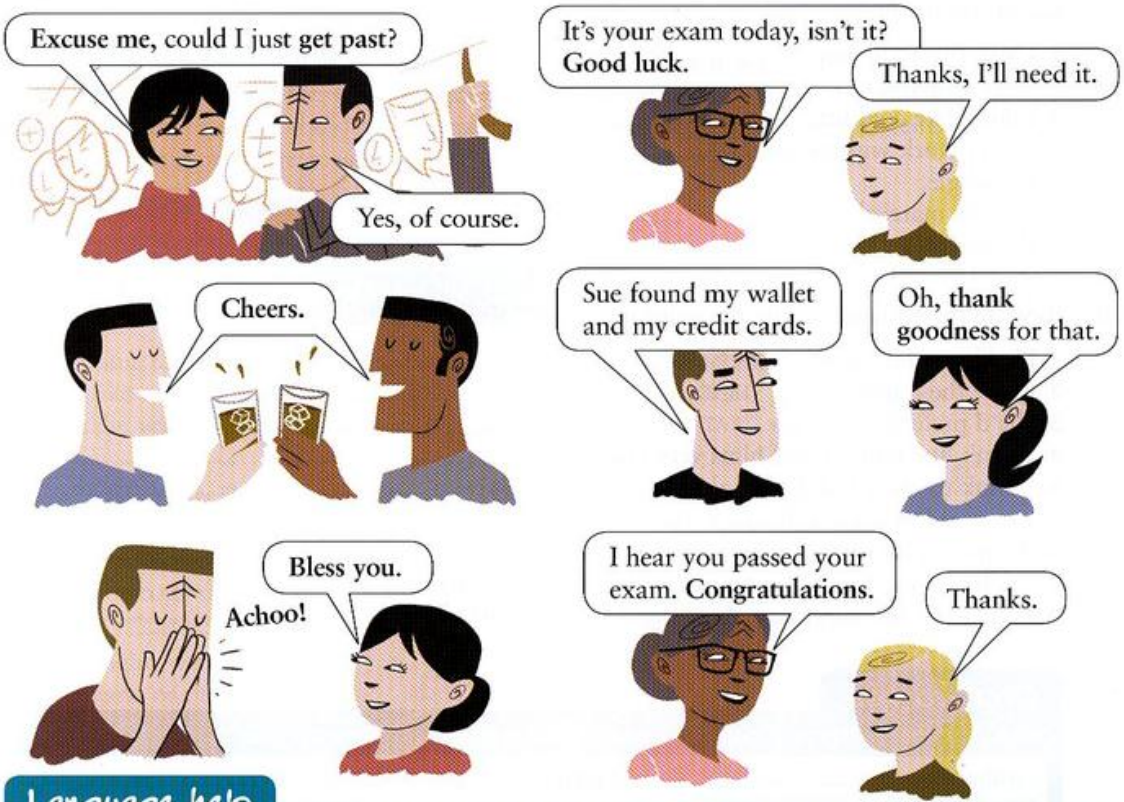
To someone we have just met for the first time we can say **Goodbye. Nice to meet you.**

With friends we can say **bye, cheers** (*infml*), **take care** (*infml*), or **see you** (soon/later/tomorrow, etc.).

When we say goodbye to a school or work friend on Friday afternoon we usually say:
A: Have a nice weekend.
B: Yeah, **same to you.** (NOT same ~~for~~ you)

* saying goodbye

C Expressions for special situations



Language help

We use **Thank goodness** when we are happy that something bad did not happen. A synonym is **Thank God** (*infml*), but there are some people who may not like the use of this expression. We can use *Goodness* on its own to express surprise, e.g. *Goodness, is it ten o'clock already?*

Exercises

68.1 Find five more phrases.

~~good~~	take	excuse	bless	~~luck~~	you
thank	me	goodness	not	care	bad

good luck ....

....

68.2 Complete the dialogues.

1 A: How are you?
B: Fine. How about ..... you?

2 A: How's it ..... ?
B: Not ..... . And you?

3 A: Have a nice weekend.
B: Yeah, ... you.

4 A: Nobody was hurt in the accident.
B: Oh, ... for that.

5 A: I'll see you tomorrow.
B: Yeah, ... care.

6 A: I've just passed my exam.
B: ..... !

7 A: I'm fine, thanks.
B: Good. And ..... Sarah?

68.3 What could you say in these situations?

1 A friend says, 'Have a good weekend'. What do you reply? Yeah, same to you.
2 You met a new business client for the first time fifteen minutes ago, and now you are leaving. What do you say? .....
3 You are on a crowded bus. It is your stop and you want to get off. What do you say to other passengers as you move past them? .....
4 A friend tells you they have just won some money. What do you say? .....
5 A friend is going for a job interview this afternoon. What do you say? .....
6 You are having a drink with friends. What do you say when you hold up your glasses to drink? .....
7 Someone sneezes next to you. What do you say? .....

68.4 Complete the sentences.

1 When you meet someone for the first time in a formal situation ..... , what do you say?
2 When you are ..... to someone in a formal situation, do you normally ..... hands?
3 What do you do and say when you ..... friends?
4 Do you usually kiss friends? If so, is it on one ..... or both ..... ?
5 When you say goodbye to friends, do you use informal expressions like *Cheers*, or *Take* ..... ? If so, what are they?

68.5

Over to you

Answer the questions in Exercise 68.4 about your country. If possible, ask someone from a different country the same questions.

69 Prefixes: changing meaning

A With adjectives

Prefixes, e.g. **un-**, **dis-**, **im-**, can be added to some adjectives to give the opposite meaning.

happy	**un**happy
possible	**im**possible
regular	**ir**regular

honest [tells the truth]	**dis**honest
correct [right ✓]	**in**correct
legal [allowed by law]	**il**legal

Dan used all the milk but said he didn't; he's very **dishonest**.
I got eight answers right, but two were **incorrect**.
It's **illegal** in the UK to ride a motorbike without a helmet.

B *un-*

Of the prefixes above, **un-** is the most common, and appears in a number of adjectives.

This chair is incredibly **uncomfortable**.
It was **unnecessary** for them to wait for us.
Xerxes – that's a very **unusual** name. [different, not common or ordinary]
I won the game; it was completely **unexpected**. [I didn't think I was going to win]
Marsha's hat is **unbelievable**. [surprising because it is either very good or very bad]
We tried to open the door, but we **were unable to** get in. [could not]
I need to do more exercise; I'm very **unfit**. [not healthy and not in good condition]
Carrick played well, and I thought he was **unlucky** to lose.
They're **unlikely** to get here before midday. [They probably won't get here before midday.]
The test was **unfair** because some of the students had more time to do it than others. [If something is *unfair*, it does not treat people equally.]

Language help

Adding a negative prefix does not usually change the pronunciation; the stress stays the same.
She was un'lucky. It's unbe'lievable. (NOT She was '~~unlucky~~. It was '~~unbelievable~~.)

C With verbs

With some verbs, these prefixes can have particular meanings.

dis- [the opposite of something]	I **disagree** with the others. [don't agree / have the same opinion] The plane **appeared** in the sky, then it **disappeared** behind a cloud.
un- [the opposite of an action]	I couldn't **unlock** the door this morning. [open the door using a key; *opp* **lock**] We had to **get undressed** in the cold. [take off our clothes; *opp* **get dressed**] I **unpacked** the bags. [took everything out of the bags; *opp* **pack**]
over- [too much]	The bank **overcharged** me. [asked me to pay too much money]
mis- [do something incorrectly]	I **misunderstood** what he said; I'm afraid my English isn't very good. I **misheard** her. I thought she said *Rita*, not *Brita*.
re- [again]	The teacher has asked me to **rewrite** my essay.

Exercises

69.1 Write the opposite.

1 ...unhappy
2 ...able
3 ...correct
4 ...usual
5 ...possible
6 ...comfortable
7 ...agree
8 ...necessary
9 ...regular
10 ...honest
11 ...fair
12 ...lucky

69.2 Which sentence on the right logically follows each sentence on the left?

1 She arrived home.	[b]	a She unpacked her suitcase.
2 Her essay was terrible.	[ ]	b She unlocked the front door.
3 She decided to go to bed.	[ ]	c She has disappeared.
4 He called her name.	[ ]	d She had overcharged me.
5 She's not here now.	[ ]	e She had to rewrite it.
6 He thought he was right.	[ ]	f She misheard it.
7 She got to the hotel.	[ ]	g She disagreed.
8 After I paid, I looked at the price.	[ ]	h She got undressed.

69.3 Complete the dialogues so that B agrees with A using different words. You only need one word for each gap.

1 A: Mireille is a strange name.
B: Yes, very unusual.
2 A: It's against the law, isn't it?
B: Oh yes, it's .....
3 A: You mean he took off all his clothes!
B: Yes, he got completely .....
4 A: He probably won't get back in time for the meeting.
B: I agree. It's very .....
5 A: A lot of the answers were wrong.
B: Yes, I'm afraid they were nearly all .....
6 A: He doesn't look in very good condition; he's a bit overweight.
B: I know. He looks terribly .....
7 A: Nobody thought this would happen.
B: Yes, it was completely .....
8 A: They never tell the truth.
B: I know. They're both .....
9 A: His business always seems to lose money, and it's not his fault.
B: I know. He's very .....
10 A: Ann always gives more attention to Sarah than she does to Lucas.
B: Yes, it's very ..... on poor Lucas.

69.4 These words all appear in other units of the book. Do you know how to form the opposites?

pleasant	unpleasant	fashionable	.....
kind	.....	reliable	.....
patient (adj)	.....	friendly	.....
suitable	.....	tidy	.....
like (v)	.....	ability	.....
do up	.....	sociable	.....

70 Suffixes: forming nouns

A Verb + noun suffix

Suffixes are used at the ends of words; they often tell you if a word is a noun, a verb, an adjective or an adverb. Two suffixes which form nouns from verbs are **-ion** and **-ment**.

verb	noun
invent [produce or design something completely new]	**invention**
discuss [talk about something seriously]	**discussion**
translate [change from one language to another]	**translation**
relax [rest, and feel calm and comfortable]	**relaxation**
improve [get better]	**improvement**
govern [control the affairs of a city or country]	**government**
manage [direct or control a business]	**management**
develop [grow or change and become more advanced]	**development**

His latest **invention** is a new board game.
Relaxation will help you to sleep better.
We had a **discussion about** politics.
The **management** has to change.
I need money for more **development**.
We need an **improvement in** the weather.

B Adjective + noun suffix

The suffixes **-ness** and **-ity** often form nouns from adjectives.

adjective	noun
weak (*opp* strong)	**weakness**
happy	**happiness**
ill [sick, not well]	**illness**
fit [in good condition, usually because of exercise]	**fitness**
stupid (*opp* intelligent, clever)	**stupidity**
popular [liked by a lot of people]	**popularity**
similar [almost the same; *opp* different]	**similarity**
able	**ability** (*opp* **inability**)

What is his main **weakness** as a manager?
Snowboarding is growing in **popularity**.
I'm frustrated by my **inability to** use computers.
Fortunately it wasn't a serious **illness**.
There is a **similarity between** them.
Her **happiness** is all that matters to me.

C *-er, -or* and *-ist*

These suffixes can be added to nouns or verbs. They often describe people and jobs.

-er	*-or*	*-ist*
ballet **dancer**	company **director**	**artist**, e.g. Picasso
pop **singer**	**translator**	**economist**
professional **footballer**	film **actor**	**scientist**

Language help

Adding a suffix to a verb, adjective or noun may change the position of the main stress, e.g. re'lax – relax'ation, 'stupid – stu'pidity, eco'nomics – e'conomist. (The ' symbol is before the syllable with the main stress.)

Exercises

70.1 Complete the tables and mark the stress on each word. (Stress is marked on the pronunciation of a word in a dictionary.) The last two in each column are not on the opposite page, but do you know or can you guess the noun formed from them?

verb	noun
dis'cuss	dis'cussion
improve	
invent	
relax	
hesitate	
arrange	

adjective	noun
stupid	
happy	
similar	
popular	
sad	
active	

70.2 Write down the names of the people who do these things as a job.

1 sing opera music *opera singers*
2 act in films .....
3 important managers in a company .....
4 change words from one language into another .....
5 play football .....
6 dance in ballets .....
7 paint pictures .....
8 work in science .....

70.3 Complete the text using words from the box with the correct suffix and spelling. One word also needs a prefix.

~~weak~~	improve	govern	economics	able	manage	discuss

"In his speech last night, the prime minister said that the present [1] *weakness* ..... of the economy was caused by the bad [2] ..... of the last [3] ..... and their [4] ..... to give the right kind of help for industry. He said he was now involved in detailed [5] ..... with ministers, bankers and [6] ..... about a range of different financial measures, and he hoped the people would be able to see a big [7] ..... in the economy by the end of the year."

70.4 Complete the dialogues.

1 A: He hasn't been well at all, has he?
B: No, it's quite a serious *illness* .....
2 A: Are they almost the same?
B: Yes, the ..... is amazing.
3 A: Has anyone made anything like this before?
B: No, it's a brand-new ..... .
4 A: Is her new novel going to be published in other languages?
B: Yes, someone is working on a ..... right now.
5 A: Does your daughter enjoy drawing too?
B: Yes, she's a very good ..... .
6 A: Jung gets tired after he's been playing for about ten minutes.
B: I know. If he wants to be in the team, he'll have to improve his ..... .
7 A: Do you think the organisation can still grow?
B: Yes, I think there is an opportunity for further ..... .

71 Suffixes: forming adjectives

Common suffixes that form adjectives include: **-able** (comfortable), **-al** (musical), **-y** (cloudy), **-ous** (famous) and **-ive** (attractive).

A *-al*

Adjectives ending **-al** are usually formed from nouns, and often mean 'relating to the noun', e.g. a **musical** instrument (from music), a **political** issue (from politics), an **electrical** fault (related to electricity), a **personal** opinion (the opinion of one person).

Shichi-Go-San (meaning 7, 5, 3) is an **annual** ceremony in Japan for three- and seven-year-old girls, and three- and five-year-old boys. It is on November 15, but it is not a **national**[1] holiday, so people often have it on the nearest weekend. Seven, five and three are seen as important years in the growth of a child, and the numbers also have **cultural significance**[2] because odd numbers (1, 3, 5, 7, 9, etc.) are lucky in Japan. This is one of the special days when the older boys and girls are allowed to wear **traditional**[3] clothes: a kimono for girls and hakama trousers for boys. Now it is quite **normal**[4] for children to wear western-style clothes at this ceremony. The children visit a shrine and are then given special sweets called *Chitose-Ame* by their parents.

[1] a holiday for the whole country
[2] they are important in Japanese culture
[3] in a style that has continued for many years
[4] usual

B *-able* /əbl/

This suffix forms adjectives from nouns *and* verbs, and the prefix **un-** often forms the opposite:
an **enjoyable** party [something that you enjoyed]
a **comfortable** chair (*opp* **uncomfortable**)
a **suitable** word or phrase [right/correct for a particular situation; *opp* **unsuitable**]
a **reliable** service; reliable information [able to be trusted or believed; *opp* **unreliable**]
fashionable clothes [popular now with many people; *opp* **unfashionable**]
a **reasonable** decision or price [fair; not a bad decision or price; *opp* **unreasonable**]
a **sociable** person [enjoys being with people; *opp* **unsociable**]

Sometimes the opposite form is the more common adjective:
an **unforgettable** experience [something that cannot be forgotten]
an **unbelievable** story [something that is very surprising and very difficult to believe]

C *-ful* and *-less*

The suffix **-ful** often means 'full of' or 'having the quality of the noun', e.g. a **colourful** room has a lot of colour in it; a **helpful** person gives a lot of help; a **peaceful** place is calm and quiet.
The opposite meaning is sometimes formed by adding the suffix **-less** to the noun.
a **useful** machine [having a lot of uses; *opp* a **useless** machine]
a **painful** injection [giving pain and being unpleasant; *opp* a **painless** injection]
a **careful** driver [drives with care and attention; *opp* a **careless** driver]

Common mistakes
The suffix is **-ful** (NOT ~~full~~), so **useful** and **careful** (NOT ~~usefull~~ or ~~carefull~~).

Exercises

71.1 Correct the spelling mistakes. Be careful: one word is correct.

1 enjoiable enjoyable
2 carful .....
3 relyable .....
4 peacefull .....
5 confortable .....
6 anual .....
7 unforgetable .....
8 reasonable .....
9 unbeleivable .....

71.2 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

1 a national	d	a injection
2 a useful		b mistake
3 a painful		c price
4 fashionable		d holiday
5 a careless		e man
6 an electrical		f bit of advice
7 an unsociable		g clothes
8 a reasonable		h fault

71.3 Write an adjective formed from these nouns or verbs. 11–15 are not on the opposite page, but you can find them in the index if you don't know them.

1 tradition traditional
2 attract .....
3 person .....
4 cloud .....
5 colour .....
6 fame .....
7 electricity .....
8 politics .....
9 enjoy .....
10 nation .....
11 wind .....
12 danger .....
13 create .....
14 emotion .....
15 fog .....

71.4 Tick (✓) the words which form opposites with the suffix *-less*.

wonderful No (wonderless)	useful	beautiful
careful	painful	peaceful

71.5 Complete the sentences.

1 You must be very careful when you drive in wet weather.
2 She told us an ..... story about a dog that could speak.
3 The tourist information office was very ....., and told us everything we needed to know.
4 The festival is an ..... event, held on the first Monday in September.
5 It was very ..... when I hit my leg against the corner of that table.
6 This bag is ..... ; it's too small for me to put anything in it.
7 We've never had any problems with our TV in ten years; it's been very ..... .
8 Most people agreed with it, so I think it was a ..... decision.
9 This is just my ..... opinion; others may not agree.
10 Travelling round China and the Far East was an ..... experience.
11 Children perform ..... dances at the ceremony, as they have done for hundreds of years.
12 Do you think this dress is ..... for a wedding?

71.6 Choose three adjectives from the opposite page which could describe these people or things.

1 a village: attractive, famous, peaceful
2 a jacket: ....., ..., ...
3 an event: ....., ..., ...
4 a person you know: ....., ..., ...
5 an opinion: ....., ..., ...
6 a room: ....., ..., ...

72 Nouns and verbs with the same form

A Nouns and verbs

Many words in English function as a noun and a verb with the same form, and often a similar meaning. When you use these words as nouns, you often need to know which verbs to use with them.

She **kissed** me.
She **gave** me a **kiss**.

He said 'Hi' and **smiled** at me.
He said 'Hi' **with** a big **smile**.

I **dreamt** about Ethan.
I **had** a **dream** about Ethan.

He **washed** the car.
He **gave** the car a **wash**.

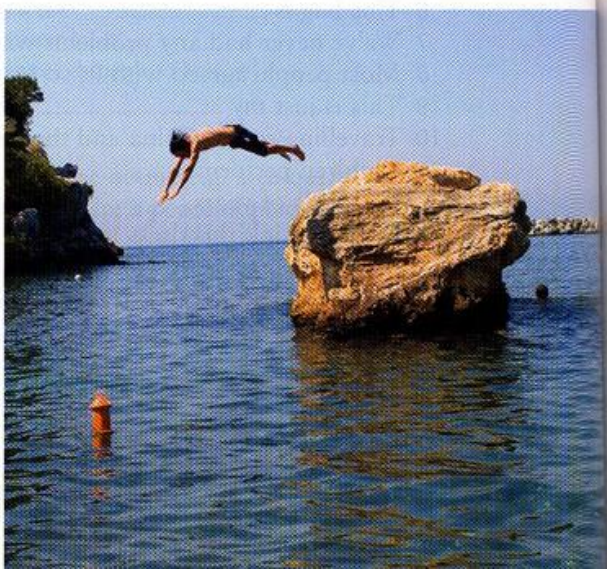
I **queued** for the bus.
I **waited/stood** in a **queue** for the bus.

I **braked**.
I **put on** the **brakes**.

I'll **ring** them / **give** them a **ring**. [phone someone]
We often **chat** / **have** a **chat**. [have a friendly conversation; *infml*]
If you don't know, **guess** / **have a guess**. [give an answer without knowing the facts]
Have you **replied** to his email yet? Have you **sent** him a **reply** yet?
It may help to **diet** / **go on a diet**. [eat less in order to lose weight]
Can doctors **cure** this? / Have doctors **found** a **cure for** this? OR **Is** there a **cure for** this? [make someone with an illness healthy again]

B A rescue attempt

"I **regret**[1] going to Three Cliffs Bay. I **promised**[2] my mother not to go there, but I'm not very good at **keeping promises**. I was swimming near the rocks with friends and I **dived** off one of the rocks. I thought it was a good **dive**, but I hit another rock as I entered the water. I hit my head and couldn't move. One of my friends **attempted**[3] to **rescue**[4] me, but couldn't reach me; someone else **made** an **attempt** to swim out to me. In the end, two of the boys pulled me to safety. I had to go to hospital, but I was lucky: there were several unsuccessful **rescue attempts** that summer."



[1] v + *-ing* feel sadness for something you did in the past (*n* **regret**)
[2] v + *inf* say that you will certainly do something
[3] v + *inf* try to do something
[4] v + *obj* make someone safe when they have been in a dangerous situation; *syn* **save**

Exercises

72.1 **Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.**

1 They attempted *saving* / *(to save)* the boy.
2 I regret *leave* / *leaving* home.
3 We had to wait *in* / *on* a queue.
4 I'd like to go *for* / *on* a diet.
5 She promised *helping* / *to help* me.
6 He gave *her a big kiss* / *a big kiss for her*.
7 I dreamt *about* / *for* you.
8 If you don't know the answer, *do* / *have* a guess.

72.2 **Replace the underlined words with a verb that keeps a similar meaning in the sentences. Make any other changes that are necessary.**

1 Can you phone him? Can you ring him?
2 We talked for a bit. .....
3 The policeman saved her from the burning car. .....
4 I tried to help James with his homework. .....
5 Have you answered the letter? .....
6 I am sorry that I left home. .....
7 I said that I would definitely go to the party. .....
8 They told us to wait in a queue if we wanted tickets. .....

72.3 **Rewrite the sentences using the underlined verbs as nouns.**

1 I'll ring him this evening. I'll give him a ring this evening.
2 I'll diet if necessary. I'll .....
3 Did you know, or did you guess? Did you know, or did you .....?
4 He always smiles at me when I see him. He always greets me .....
5 I dreamt about my mother. I .....
6 We can't cure this disease. We .....
7 I braked but it was too late. I .....
8 She washed the kitchen windows. She .....
9 They attempted to help her. They .....
10 We sat down and chatted. We sat down and .....

72.4 **Sometimes the same word can be a verb and noun but with a different meaning. Read the pairs of sentences. Do the verb and noun have a similar meaning, or are they different in meaning? Note: these words are not on the opposite page.**

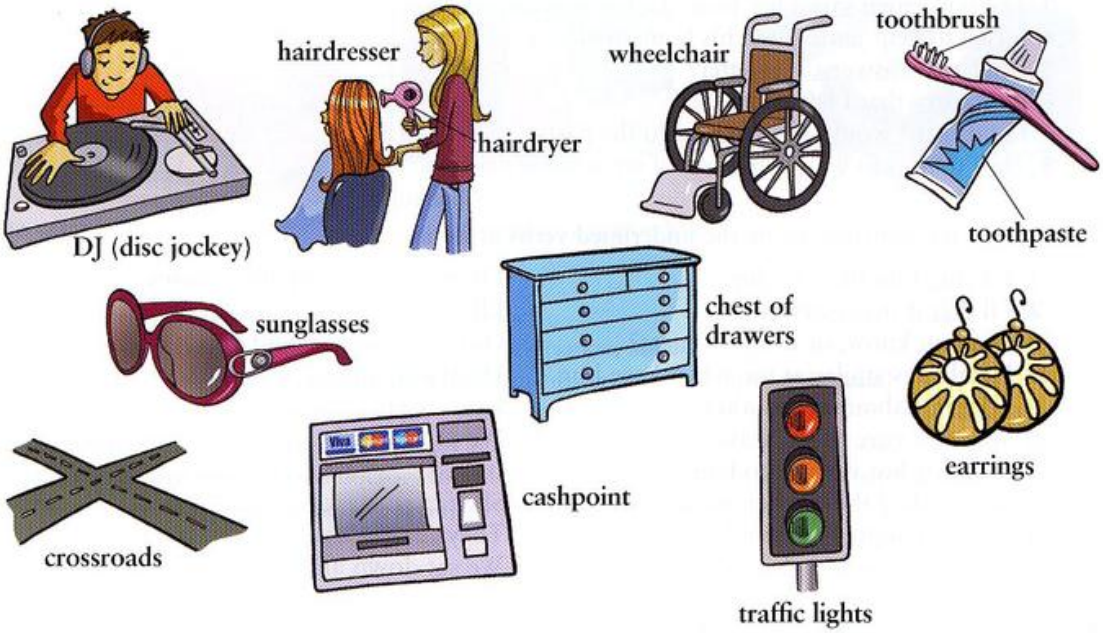
1 a We had a long wait for the bus. Similar
b We waited a long time for the bus.
2 a There's a book on the table.
b I had to book a table.
3 a I took a break at work.
b I broke my arm at work.
4 a How much did the holiday cost?
b What was the cost of the holiday?
5 a I dropped the milk.
b I had a drop of milk.
6 a Someone behind me screamed.
b I heard a loud scream.

73 Compound nouns

A Formation

We form compound nouns by putting two words together (or three) to create a new idea. Compound nouns are very common in English.

Ice hockey is a game of hockey played on ice.
Public transport is transport that can be used by the public.
A **campsite** is a **site** for camping. [a place used for a special purpose]
A **babysitter** is someone who looks after young children when their parents go out.
Income tax is money you pay to the government out of your **income.** [the total amount of money you receive every year from your work and other places]
Your **mother tongue** is the first language you learn as a child.
A **travel agent** is someone whose job is to make travel arrangements for you.
A **film-maker** is someone who makes films for the cinema or television.
A **full stop** is a punctuation mark at the end of a sentence.
A **haircut** is the act of cutting someone's hair, e.g. *That boy needs a haircut.*



B One word or two?

Some compound nouns are written as one word, e.g. **wheelchair**; a few are written with a hyphen, e.g. **T-shirt**; many are written as two words, e.g. **credit card, bus stop**. Use a dictionary to check if necessary.

C Pronunciation

The main stress is usually on the first part, e.g. '**haircut** or '**income tax,** but sometimes it is on the second part, e.g. **public** '**transport, full** '**stop**. Use a dictionary to check if necessary.

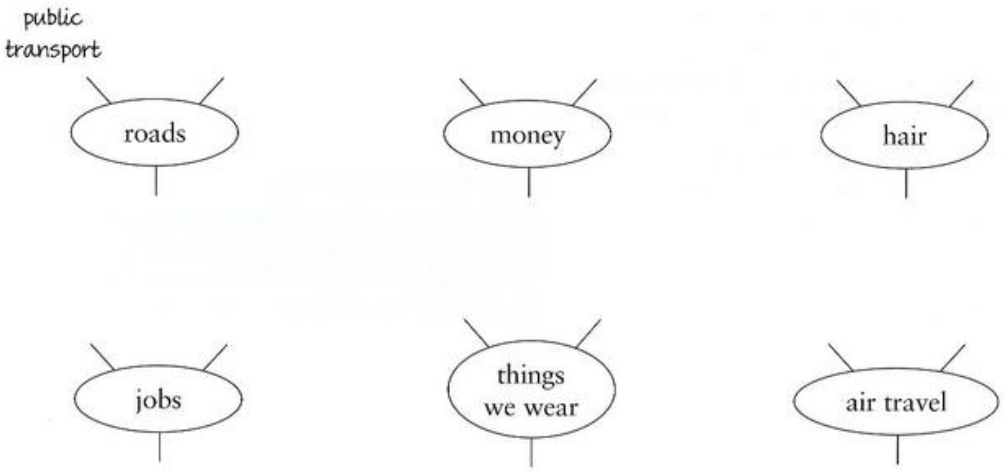
D Forming new compounds

One part of a compound often forms the basis for a number of compound nouns.

airport e.g. Heathrow	**bus driver**	**ID card (identity card)**
airline e.g. Lufthansa, KLM	**bus stop**	**credit card**
aircraft e.g. Airbus A380	**bus station**	**birthday card**

Exercises

73.1 Complete the circles with compound nouns from the opposite page.



73.2 Complete the sentences.

1 I got some money from the cashpoint .
2 I booked our holiday through a ..... .
3 We stayed on a very nice ..... , but unfortunately our tent wasn't really big enough.
4 He can't walk at all now, so he has to use a ..... to move around.
5 I sent her a ..... but she never received it; it must have got lost in the post.
6 Liz and Mark wanted to go out, but they couldn't find a ..... for the children.
7 When I'm driving I always wear ..... if it's very bright and sunny.
8 Most people have to pay ..... on their salary; the more you earn, the more you pay.
9 I washed my hair, then discovered that the ..... wasn't working.

73.3 Which words are being defined?

1 A substance that you use to clean your teeth. toothpaste
2 A piece of furniture for keeping clothes in. .....
3 Someone who plays music on the radio or at discos. .....
4 A card with your name, photograph and information to prove who you are. .....
5 The first language you learn as a child. .....
6 A game played on ice using sticks. .....
7 A punctuation mark at the end of a sentence. .....
8 A card you use to pay for things. .....

73.4 Make new compounds using one part of the compounds below. Answers for 1–6 are on the opposite page, answers for 7–12 are in other parts of the book.

1 airport airline .....
2 full stop .....
3 hairdresser .....
4 credit card .....
5 toothpaste .....
6 bus driver .....
7 living room .....
8 brother-in-law .....
9 sunglasses .....
10 traffic lights .....
11 wheelchair .....
12 film-maker .....

74 Word partners

A What do we mean by word partners?

If you want to use a word naturally, you often need to know other words that are commonly used with it. These are called word partners or collocations, and they can be different from language to language. For example:

I **spent time** in Paris. (NOT I ~~passed~~ time in Paris.) I **missed the bus**. (NOT I ~~lost~~ the bus.)
We **have** children. (NOT We ~~get~~ children.)

I **made** a mistake. (NOT I ~~did~~ a mistake.)
It was a **serious injury**. (also a **serious illness**)
It's **quite likely** that we'll stay here. [we'll probably stay here]
It **depends on** my parents. (NOT It depends ~~of~~ my parents. See Unit 77.)

Language help
More *word partners* can be found in the *Cambridge Learner's Dictionary* for intermediate learners and the *Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary*.

B Verbs and nouns

There are many verbs and nouns that are often used together.

Pavel **told** me a **joke** but I can't remember **it**. [told me a funny story]
I need to **lose weight**. [become less heavy; *opp* **put on weight**]
The doctor told my father that he should **go on a diet**. [eat less in order to lose weight]
It's very difficult to **predict the future**. [say what will happen in the future]
We won the game 2–1, and my brother **scored** the first **goal**[1].
My neighbour's **alarm went off**[2] in the middle of the night.
They **fell in love** and got married. Now Emily is **expecting a baby**[3].

1

2

3

C Adjectives and nouns

Many adjectives and nouns are often used together. These are all examples where the meaning is 'big' or 'a lot', but where we usually use a particular adjective.

We've got a **large number** of students/tourists this year. (*opp* a **limited/small** number)
I will need a **large amount** of money.
There's a **wide choice** of food available. (*opp* a **limited/narrow** choice)
Claude has a **wide vocabulary** in English. (*opp* a **limited vocabulary**)
It's only a toy gun but it makes a very **loud noise**.
Her family is of **great importance** to her.
We went to a party last night and it was **great fun**. [very enjoyable; we enjoyed it a lot]
There was **heavy traffic** on the motorway going out of town. (*opp* **light** traffic)

D Adverbs and adjectives

The adverbs in the first three sentences mean *very*, the adverbs in the last sentence mean *fully/completely*. In each case, the adverbs and adjectives are common word partners.

I'm **terribly sorry** I'm late.
She's **well aware** of the problem. [She knows all about the problem.]
It's **vitally important** that we get the right person for the job.
Lorna is **fast asleep**, but the other two are still **wide awake**.

Exercises

74.1 Correct the mistakes.

1 Why does she ~~do~~ so many mistakes? make
2 My sister got a baby last month. .....
3 I'm sorry I'm late; I lost the bus. .....
4 There was an accident and Tommy has a grave head injury. .....
5 I don't know if I can come – it depends of the weather. .....
6 We passed three days in Amsterdam. .....
7 I wouldn't like to try and say the future. .....
8 My sister is waiting for a baby next month. .....
9 Axel said me a very funny joke. .....
10 She gave us a big amount of money. .....

74.2 Complete the text.

My mum went to see the doctor, and he told her to go on a [1] diet . I think she knows that she needs to [2] ..... weight, but she's not happy about giving up chocolate. Anyway, I told her it's [3] ..... important that she keeps to the diet, because if she [4] ..... any more weight, it's quite [5] ..... that she'll end up with a more [6] ..... illness. Fortunately, I think she's [7] ..... aware of that.

74.3 Replace *big* or *little* with a more suitable adjective.

1 You won't need a ~~big~~ amount of money. large
2 Why are they making such a *big* noise? .....
3 I've got quite a *big* vocabulary in French. .....
4 There is only a *little* choice of things we can buy. .....
5 We had a very *big* number of tourists this year. .....
6 I think the event had *big* importance for her. .....
7 Lola only has a *little* vocabulary in English. .....

74.4 Complete the sentences and dialogues.

1 A: Why were they late? B: They got stuck in heavy traffic.
2 When I went into her bedroom, she was ..... asleep.
3 A: Did you enjoy last night? B: Yes, it was ..... fun.
4 I met Sasha in town. She told me she's ..... a baby in June. Isn't that fantastic news?
5 A: We won 1–0. B: Who ..... the goal?
6 Leif ..... me a joke, but I'm afraid I didn't understand it.
7 A: Are the boys asleep? B: No, they're still ..... awake.
8 My neighbour's burglar alarm ..... at 2 o'clock this morning and woke me up.
9 A: Why is she staying in Paris? B: She ..... in love with a French guy.
10 I'm ..... sorry, but I've lost your book – I'll buy you a new one.

74.5

Over to you

Look at the verbs and nouns in section B, and the adjectives and nouns in section C on the opposite page. Are they the same in your language? If possible, compare with someone else who speaks your language.

75 Fixed phrases

A What are fixed phrases?

There are many groups of words which you need to learn as complete phrases, because they often have a meaning which is different from the words on their own. Many of these are called idioms.

They arrived **out of the blue.** [I didn't know they were coming; it was unexpected]
Does the name Merchant **ring a bell?** [sound familiar]
You'll have to **make up your mind** soon. [make a decision]

Some fixed phrases are easier to understand, but the same idea may be expressed in a different way in your language.

I think we'll have to **get rid of** some of this furniture. [remove it, e.g. sell it, throw it away, give it away, etc.]
I'm afraid I can't talk to you now; I'm **(just) about to** leave. [I am going to leave very soon]
I don't know what Martin said, but Natalie **burst into tears.** [suddenly started crying] She was very upset.
Everyone was there **apart from** Yasmine. [not including Yasmine; *syn* **except for**]

B Time phrases

He's leaving **in four days' time.** [four days from now; also in three weeks'/six months'/two years' time, etc.]
I got here **the week before last.** [during the week/month, etc. before the previous one]
The course is fine **so far.** [up until now]
I rang our local doctor and fortunately she was able to come **at once.** [now, immediately; *syns* **right away / straight away**]
He's so busy at work; he comes home late **night after night.** [every night; also **day after day**, etc.]

C Pairs of words

A number of fixed phrases consist of two words, usually joined by **and**, and sometimes **or**.

I go to the theatre **now and again.** [occasionally; *syns* **now and then**]
Andy had **one or two** [a few] suggestions.
I've got a house in the country, and I like to go there whenever possible for a bit of **peace and quiet.** [a calm situation without noise]
I've been **up and down** the street, but I can't find their house. [first in one direction, then the other]
I've been to Paris **once or twice.** [a few times]
I'll finish this report **sooner or later.** [I don't know when, but I'll finish it.]

D Introducing advice, opinions, etc.

Many fixed phrases are used to introduce advice, an opinion, an example, etc.

If I were you [in your situation], I'd accept the job they offered you.
In general [usually, or in most situations; *syn* **on the whole**] the summers are quite warm in this part of the country.
There were lots of questions. **For instance** [for example], how much will it cost?
I'm sure you'll have a great holiday. **By the way**, what time does the train leave? (used to introduce a new subject to the conversation)
To be honest, I didn't like her boyfriend very much. (used to say what you really think)

Exercises

75.1 Using all the words in the square, find eight more phrases.

~~ON~~	DAY	SOONER	~~AND~~	RIGHT
SO	AND	NOW	TWO	LATER
UP	OR	~~OFF~~	PEACE	AFTER
FAR	AND	ONE	AWAY	AGAIN
AND	DAY	QUIET	OR	DOWN

on and off ....
....
....

75.2 Complete the sentences with one word, then underline the full fixed phrase in each sentence.

1 She's been working on that essay night after night .....
2 I'm arranging everything for next week. By the ....., is your sister coming this evening?
3 My parents always turn up at my flat out of the ..... .
4 Some people enjoyed the book, but to be ....., I thought it was boring.
5 I'd like to get ..... of these CDs because I don't listen to them any more.
6 In ....., people are much happier when they have jobs that they enjoy.
7 I don't know what to do at the moment but I'll have to make up my ..... soon.
8 It's a flexible ticket. For ....., you can use it during the week or at weekends.
9 Can I ring you later? I'm just ..... to have lunch.
10 If I ..... you, I'd get a new dictionary.

75.3 Complete the fixed phrase in each dialogue.

1 A: Do you go there much?
B: Now and again .....
2 A: Have you had any ideas?
B: Yeah. One ..... .
3 A: Was she very upset?
B: Yes. She burst ..... .
4 A: You arrived ten days ago?
B: Yeah, the week ..... .
5 A: Should I accept the job?
B: Yes, I would if ..... .
6 A: Will they get here?
B: Yeah, sooner ..... .
7 A: Have you been there often?
B: Once ..... .
8 A: Do you need me there now?
B: Yes. Could you come at ..... ?
9 A: When are you going back?
B: In two weeks' ..... .
10 A: How's the course?
B: It's good so ..... .
11 A: I spoke to Chris Myler. Do you know him?
B: No, the name doesn't ring ..... .
12 A: Have you done all the housework?
B: Yes, apart ..... the washing.

75.4 Here are more idioms. Can you underline one in each sentence, and guess what it means?

1 I've been in the job a few days, but I already feel at home. feel comfortable and relaxed
2 I've just bought these shoes and they cost a fortune. .....
3 Could you keep an eye on my bag for me? .....
4 The answer's on the tip of my tongue. .....
5 We had a night on the town last night. .....
6 I could do with a new computer; mine's quite old now. .....

76 Fixed phrases in conversation

A Common responses

A large number of fixed phrases are used as common responses in everyday conversation.

A: What time did he get here?
B: **I've no idea.** [I don't know]

A: Are you going tonight?
B: **That depends.** [used to say you are not sure because other things affect your answer; also **It depends**]

A: Shall we go out tonight?
B: Yeah, **why not.** [OK]

A: Did you like the film?
B: **Not really.** [used to say *no* but not strongly]

A: I'm going to Sweden next week.
B: Really. **What for?** [why?]

A: Can I borrow your car?
B: **No way.** [that's impossible; *infml*; *syn* **no chance**]

A: They're coming tonight, aren't they?
B: **I suppose so.** [used to say *yes* but not strongly]

A: Jason has grown a beard.
B: I know. **I couldn't believe my eyes!** [I was very surprised when I saw it]

A: We have to work tonight.
B: **You must be joking.**

A: Eli got top marks.
B: I **don't believe it!** [used to express great surprise]

Language help

We can use **you must be joking** (*syns* **you're joking/kidding**) when someone has just said something that is a surprise. It may be an unpleasant surprise (as above), or a nice surprise, e.g.
A: My father said he would pay for all of us to go on holiday.
*B: **You're kidding**. Fantastic!*

B In conversation

Notice how fixed phrases can form an important part of an everyday conversation.

A: I had to **have a word with** Jiri and Milan today. [speak to them without others listening]
B: Oh yeah? Are they causing trouble again?
A: Well, **you know,** [used to fill a pause in conversation] they just keep talking to each other, and they don't **pay attention** [listen] – **that sort of thing.**
B: Why don't you make them sit in different places?
A: I tried that, but they still talked to each other.
B: Well, **in that case** [because of the situation described], you'll have to move one of them.
A: Maybe, but I'd **feel bad about** that [be unhappy about].They're quite nice boys, you know, they just **can't help it.** [can't control some actions or behaviour]
B: Sure ... but you can't let **that kind of thing** continue.
A: No, you're right. But I've given them a final warning today, so let's **wait and see** what happens. [wait to discover what will happen]
B: OK. But **what if** they don't improve? [what will you do if they don't improve?]
A: I think it'll be OK.
B: Well, if you **change your mind** [change your decision], come and see me again, and I'll arrange for one of them to be moved to another class.

Language help

We use **sort/kind** in several common phrases in informal speech.
(and) that sort/kind of thing [examples of that type]
e.g. *I grow onions and carrots – **that sort/kind of thing.***
sort/kind of [approximately/more or less] e.g. *Her new top is **sort of** blue; I thought he was **kind of** strange.*

Exercises

76.1 **Put the responses in the most suitable column below.**

~~no way~~	not really	I suppose so	why not
you're kidding	that depends	I don't believe it	

positive	negative	not sure *or* either
	no way	

76.2 **Choose the correct word. Sometimes both are correct.**

1 I need to have a (*word*) / *speak* with Catalina.
2 I don't know what they plan to do; we'll have to wait and *see* / *watch*.
3 He usually wears jeans, trainers, and that *sort* / *kind* of thing.
4 Little children shout and scream all the time; they can't *help* / *leave* it.
5 A: I went to Cambridge last week. B: Really? *What* / *Why* for?
6 The trouble with Mark is that he doesn't *pay* / *give* attention.
7 A: Are you working tonight? B: *It* / *That* depends.

76.3 **Complete the dialogues with a suitable fixed phrase.**

1 A: Did you hear that Daniel's getting married?
B: Yeah. I don't believe it!
2 A: Sofia doesn't listen.
B: No. She never .....
3 A: Did you speak to Nathalie?
B: Yes, I .....
4 A: Dad wasn't happy about forgetting my birthday.
B: No, he felt .....
5 A: Do you know what time he'll be here?
B: No, I'm afraid I've .....
6 A: Are you still planning to sell the flat?
B: No, I've ..... I'm going to keep it now.

76.4 **Where could you add the phrases in the box to the dialogues below?**

~~you know~~	I couldn't believe my eyes	kind of	in that case
that sort of thing	you must be joking	why not	

1 A: What did you say to him?
B: Well, it was quite difficult. you know
2 A: What colour was it?
B: Blue.
3 A: He's not coming this evening, so you won't be able to ask him.
B: Well, I'll phone him and ask him.
4 A: Jerry says we'll have to walk all the way to the campsite.
B: That's ten miles!
5 A: Do you want to get a takeaway?
B: Yeah.
6 A: What do they sell?
B: Oh, burgers, pizzas, ...
7 A: Did you see Chloe wearing those high-heeled shoes?
B: Yes.

77 Verb or adjective + preposition

A Verb + preposition

Pay special attention to prepositions that are different in your language.

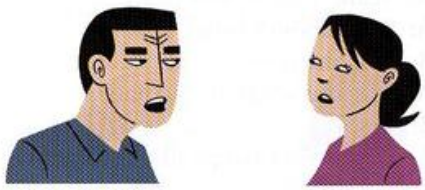
Paul doesn't like the manager's decision and I **agree with** him. [have the same opinion as]
Don't **worry about** your exam. [be nervous about]
His teachers were **satisfied with** his progress. [pleased with]
Many people **spend** a lot of money **on** clothes.
I'**m thinking of** going to China. [it's my plan to go] (used in the continuous form)
This land **belongs to** the company. [it is the company's land]
I **translated** the letter **into** French. [changed from one language into another]
She **complained to** the manager **about** the food. [said she wasn't happy/satisfied with]
I can't **concentrate on** [think about] my work when the radio is playing.
We can **rely on** this photocopier. [trust it; it will not go wrong]
I may go but it **depends on** the weather. [used to say you are not sure about something]

Language help

Depend (on) has other meanings:
*Martha **depends on** her son for money.* [she needs his money]
*We can **depend on** the others for support.* [we can trust the others to support us]
Remember: it **depends on** something or someone (NOT it depends ~~of~~ something or someone)

B Prepositions that change the meaning

She **shouted to** me. [spoke in a loud voice to be heard]



He **shouted at** me. [spoke in a loud voice because he was angry]

He **threw** the ball **to** me. [for me to catch it]

He **threw** the ball **at** me. [in order to hit me]

C Adjective + preposition

I've never been very **good at** maths. (*opp* **bad at**)
She's **afraid of** flying. [frightened of]
The neighbours **are fond of** the children. [like]
She's **similar to** her sister [the same as her in some ways], but very **different from** her brother.
He's very **interested in** photography.
I think she's **aware of** the problem. [knows about]
I'm **tired of** people telling me what to do. [bored or a bit angry about]
Katya **is mad about** Brad Pitt. [likes him very much; *infml*]
We're **short of** coffee at the moment. [we don't have much]
There's **something wrong with** this TV. [the TV is not working correctly]

Exercises

77.1 **Match the sentence beginnings on the left with the best endings on the right.**

1 He's tired	[c]	a me, but it missed.
2 She wasn't aware	[ ]	b to the manager.
3 He threw the pen to	[ ]	c of working at weekends.
4 She complained	[ ]	d his friend on the other side of the lake.
5 He shouted at	[ ]	e me, but I dropped it.
6 He shouted to	[ ]	f with them.
7 He threw the book at	[ ]	g us to get out of his garden.
8 I don't agree	[ ]	h of her mistakes.

77.2 **Complete the questions with the correct preposition, then write an answer for each one.**

1 A: What is she worried *about* ?	B: *Her exams*
2 A: What subjects is she good ... ?	B: ...
3 A: Who does this belong ... ?	B: ...
4 A: What does he spend all his money ... ?	B: ...
5 A: What are you afraid ... ?	B: ...
6 A: What kind of films are you interested ... ?	B: ...
7 A: What does the decision depend ... ?	B: ...
8 A: I know he's angry, but who's he shouting ... ?	B: ...
9 A: Who can we rely ... ?	B: ...
10 A: What language is the book being translated ... ?	B: ...

77.3 **Complete the dialogues.**

1 A: Are you going to the exhibition?
B: Yes, I'm very *interested* in art.
2 A: Is she ... to her sister?
B: No, they're completely different.
3 A: What did she ... about?
B: She wasn't happy with the food.
4 A: Angel is very good-looking.
B: That's why I'm ... about him!
5 A: What's ... with the radio?
B: I don't know, but it's not working.
6 A: Did you like the course?
B: No, I wasn't very satisfied ... it.
7 A: What's the matter?
B: I can't ... on this with the TV on.
8 A: It's a big problem.
B: Yes, but we're ... of that.
9 A: We're a bit ... of milk.
B: OK. I'll buy some when I go out.
10 A: Do Max's children have jobs?
B: No, they still ... on their parents.

77.4 **Do you know which preposition follows the words below? They are all in this book. If you don't know, use the index to help you. A good dictionary will tell you if a verb or adjective is usually followed by a special preposition.**

keen ... succeed ... apply ...
suffer ... get married ... apologise ...

77.5

Over to you

Complete the sentences about yourself. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

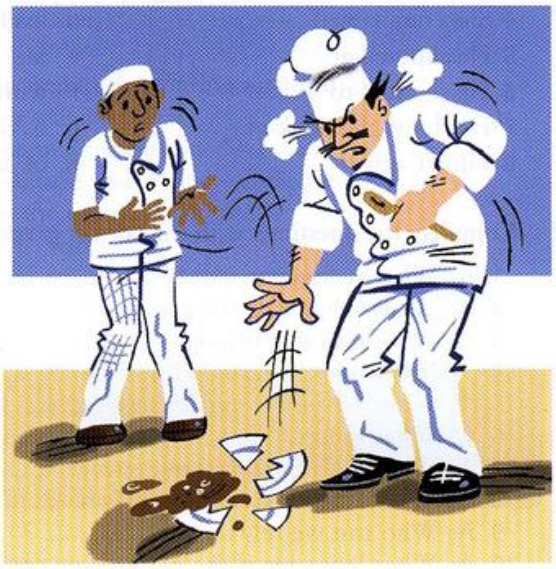
1 I'm not very good ... .
2 I've always been interested ... .
3 I'm not very fond ... .
4 I spend most of my money ... .
5 For my next holiday, I'm thinking ... .

78 Prepositional phrases

A *By, on* or *in* + noun

I took his pen **by mistake.** [I thought it was my pen]
These shoes are made **by hand.** [not using a machine]
I met them **by chance.** [it wasn't planned; it was luck]

He broke the plate **by accident.** [he did not want or plan to do it]



He broke the plate **on purpose.** [he wanted to do it; it was his intention]

My boss is **on the phone** at the moment. [using the phone]
The workers are **on strike.** [they refuse to work because of a problem over pay, hours, etc.]
The books were **on display** in the window. [in the window for people to look at]
Part of the building was **on fire.** [burning]
Most of the passengers are now **on board.** [on the train, boat, plane, etc.]
Why are they always **in a hurry**? [needing to do something or go somewhere very quickly]
I explained everything **in detail.** [including all the important information]
She won't make that mistake again **in future.**
The poor little girl was **in tears.** [crying]

B Phrases easily confused

Sometimes two prepositions can be used with the same noun, but the meaning is different.

Lessons begin at 8.30 and the students are usually here **on time.** [at 8.30]
If we hurry, we'll be there **in time.** [before the time we need to be there]

We were tired of waiting, so **in the end** we went home. [finally, after a lot of time or thought]
At the end of the book they get married. [in the last part]

To be successful **in business** it's important to get on well with people. [working as businesspeople]
They're both in Germany **on business.** [they are there for work, not a holiday]

I'm afraid this book's a bit **out-of-date.** [old and not useful, or not correct in its information]
I try to keep **up-to-date** with all the changes. [knowing all the most recent ideas and information]

I'll see you **in a moment.** [not now, but very soon; *syn* **in a minute**]
I can't speak to you **at the moment.** [now; *syn* **right now**]

Common mistakes
I'm busy **at the moment.** (NOT I'm busy ~~in this~~ moment.)

Exercises

78.1 **Put the nouns into the correct columns.**

~~board~~	hand	accident	display	detail
fire	future	mistake	tears	strike

on	in	by
board		

78.2 **Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.**

1 I'm afraid I deleted your email *on* / *in* /(*by*) accident.
2 Did she hit him *on* / *by* / *in* purpose?
3 I just saw them *with* / *by* / *on* chance.
4 Most of these files are *out-of-* / *out-from-* / *out-for-* date.
5 My wife is away *in* / *on* / *by* business at the moment.
6 I'm afraid I'm busy *on* / *in* / *at* the moment.
7 I've got to go; I'm *in* / *on* / *at* a hurry.
8 I won't go there again *on* / *in* / *at* future.

78.3 **Complete the missing noun in these prepositional phrases.**

1 I saw smoke coming out of the window, and I realised the house was on fire.
2 Nobody is at the factory. The workers are all on .....
3 These chocolates are expensive because they are all made by .....
4 I'm just going to the shop but I'll be back in a .....
5 I'm sure she broke that vase on ..... ; she never liked it.
6 I'm sorry I can't stop to talk now – I'm in a .....
7 She never thanked me for the present, so I won't buy her another one in .....
8 You can't trust things you read on the Internet; a lot of the information there is out-of- .....
9 I told them everything they wanted to know. I explained it all in .....
10 I went to the exhibition, and some of Katya's paintings were on .....
11 The manager can't speak to you at the ..... ; I'm afraid she's on the .....
12 It was a terrible journey but we got there in the .....

78.4 **Replace the underlined word(s) with a prepositional phrase.**

1 The meeting was planned for 11 am and we got there <u>at 11 am</u>. on time
2 Did you get to the cinema <u>before the film started</u>? .....
3 Most of the factory is <u>burning</u>. .....
4 I had great difficulty finding the camera I wanted, so <u>finally</u> I bought one on the Internet. .....
5 He gets killed <u>in the last scene</u> of the film. .....
6 I'm afraid I'm very busy <u>right now</u>. .....
7 I saw her yesterday <u>but we didn't plan to meet</u>. .....
8 I'm writing an email, but I'll be with you <u>very soon</u>. .....
9 Most of these books are <u>old and the information is wrong</u>. .....
10 I explained the system <u>with all the important information</u>. .....

79 Phrasal verbs 1: form and meaning

A Formation

A phrasal verb is a verb + adverb or preposition, and sometimes a verb + adverb *and* preposition.

He **fell over** [fell to the ground] and hurt his knee.
I'll try to **find out** [learn/discover] the quickest way to get there.
He didn't like his coat, so he **gave it away.** [gave it to someone for no money]
If you don't understand the meaning, **look** it **up.** [find the meaning in a book/dictionary]
Who's going to **sort out** the problem? [deal with it successfully; solve it]
He doesn't **get on with** [have a good relationship with] his parents. (verb + adv. + prep.)

B Meaning

The adverb or preposition does not always change the meaning of the verb, and is not always used.

I didn't **wake (up)** until 7 o'clock.
Hurry (up) or we'll be late.
She's **saving (up)** for a new computer.
I went to **lie (down)** on the bed.

Sometimes an adverb adds a particular meaning to the verb. For example, **back** can mean *return*.

I bought this jacket yesterday, but I'm going to **take** it **back** to the shop; it's too small.
You can look at the books, but remember to **put** them **back** on the shelf.
They liked Greece so much they want to **go back** next year.

Often, the adverb or preposition changes the meaning of the verb: *give up* doesn't mean the same as *give*, and *carry on* doesn't mean the same as *carry*.

My wife has decided to **give up** [stop] smoking.
We'll take a short break and then **carry on** [continue] with the meeting.
The shops are going to **put up** [increase] the price of bread.
When the hotel gets busy, we have to **take on** [employ] more staff.

C Multiple meanings

Many phrasal verbs have more than one meaning.

go away
I was busy, so I told him to **go away.** [leave]
We try to **go away** in August. [go on holiday]

Pick something / someone up
I **picked up** most of the rubbish. [lifted it from the floor]
I'm going to **pick** Jane **up** at the station. [collect someone, usually in a car]

Put something on
Could you **put** the light **on?** [make a piece of equipment work by pressing a switch; *syn* **switch sth on**]
I **put on** my best suit. [put clothes on your body]

Exercises

79.1 Choose the correct adverb or preposition to complete the sentence.

1 I can't see. Could you put the light ..... ?	a in	b on	c out
2 If he doesn't want it, he can give it	a out	b away	c up
3 Have they sorted it ..... ?	a out	b over	c up
4 It was broken, so I had to take it	a over	b on	c back
5 I went to the airport to pick her	a up	b down	c over
6 What time did you wake ..... ?	a to	b up	c for
7 I get married next year. I need to start saving	a out	b on	c up
8 Could you switch the TV ..... ?	a down	b on	c in

79.2 Replace the underlined word(s) with a phrasal verb that keeps a similar meaning.

1 We never <u>discovered</u> what it means. found out
2 I'd like to <u>return</u> next year. .....
3 We <u>collected</u> Kelly from the station. .....
4 We'll have to <u>increase</u> the price this year. .....
5 I've decided to <u>stop</u> eating chocolate. .....
6 Is Hana going to <u>continue</u> with her English course? .....
7 I told them to <u>leave</u>. .....
8 I <u>have a good relationship</u> with my parents. .....
9 We are planning to <u>employ</u> ten new drivers next year. .....

79.3 Look at the dictionary entry for *go off* and match the meanings with the sentences below.

a When the light goes off, the machine has finished. 3
b My alarm clock went off early this morning. .....
c I think this meat has gone off. .....
d The bomb went off without any warning. .....
e Faye went off early; she had to meet a friend. .....

go off **1** LEAVE to leave a place and go somewhere else *She's gone off to the pub with Tony.* **2** FOOD *UK informal* If food goes off it is not good to eat anymore because it is to old. **3** STOP If a light or machine goes off, it stops working. *The heating goes off at 10 o'clock.* **4** EXPLODE If a bomb or gun goes off, it explodes or fires. **5** MAKE NOISE If something that makes a noise goes off, it suddenly starts making a noise. *His car alarm goes off every time it rains.*

79.4 Complete the dialogues.

1 A: Can you afford that bike?
B: No, I'll have to save up for it.

2 A: Is there still a problem?
B: Don't worry. I'll ..... it ..... .

3 A: Can we look at some books?
B: Yes, but ..... them ..... afterwards.

4 A: Did you feel unwell?
B: Yes, I had to ..... on the bed.

5 A: What's the matter?
B: I ..... and cut my knee.

6 A: I don't know what this means.
B: Well, ... it ..... in a dictionary.

7 A: Does he look smart?
B: Yes. He's ..... his suit.

8 A: ..... or we'll be late.
B: OK, I'm coming.

80 Phrasal verbs 2: grammar and style

A Phrasal verbs with no object

Some phrasal verbs don't have an object. We cannot put other words between the parts of the verb.

When does your train **get in**? [arrive]
Hold on [wait a moment], I just need to get my coat.
The car **broke down** on my way to work. [stopped working]
I'll **call for** them at 8 o'clock. [go to collect them]
We **set off** [started the journey] about 7.30.

B Phrasal verbs with an object

Many phrasal verbs need an object. We can usually put the object in different positions.

Put on your shoes.	**Turn on** the TV.	**Take off** your coat.
Put your shoes **on**.	**Turn** the TV **on**.	**Take** your coat **off**.

These are separable phrasal verbs, but if the object is a long phrase, it usually goes at the end, e.g. I **turned off** the lights in the living room. If the object is a pronoun, it must go in the middle, e.g. **Turn** it **off**.

Common mistakes
Put them **on**. (NOT Put ~~on them~~.); **Take** it **off**. (NOT Take ~~off it~~.)

There are some phrasal verbs where the object must come after the phrasal verb.

I will **look after** the children for you. [take care of them]
How did the two men **break into** the shop? [enter the shop using force, e.g. breaking a window]

C In dictionaries

Dictionaries usually show the grammar of a phrasal verb like this:

No object

hang around (*also UK* hang about) to spend time somewhere, usually without doing very much: *There's nowhere for teenagers to go, so they just hang around on street corners.*

Separable

hand sth out to give something to all the people in a group: *A girl was handing out leaflets at the station.*

Not separable (the object must come after the phrasal verb)

get over sth to begin to feel better after being unhappy or ill: *It took her months to get over the shock of Richard leaving.*

D Style

Phrasal verbs are commonly used in spoken and written English. Many phrasal verbs are quite informal, and sometimes there is a single word with the same meaning as a phrasal verb, which sounds more formal. We use this word instead of the phrasal verb in more formal situations.

leave sb/sth out [not include sb/sth; *syn* **omit**], e.g. He made a list of people but left me out.
make sth up [create sth from your imagination; *syn* **invent**], e.g. We had to make up a story.
put sth off [put sth back to a later date; *syn* **postpone**], e.g. They put the game off till Friday.
turn sth/sb down [refuse an offer or request; *syn* **reject**], e.g. I offered her a job but she turned it down.

Exercises

80.1 Correct any mistakes with word order in the sentences. Be careful: some are correct.

1 She asked me to hand ~~out them~~. hand them out
2 I've got some boots but I'll put on them later.
3 Could you turn the light on?
4 My boots were tight and I couldn't take off them.
5 We set off very early this morning.
6 Why did they turn down it?
7 The boys were hanging the station around.

80.2 Replace the underlined word with a phrasal verb that makes the sentence more informal.

1 Could you wait a minute, please? hold on
2 As so many people are ill, I've had to postpone the meeting till next week. .....
3 The teacher told us to invent a story to go with the picture in our books. .....
4 They omitted a number of the names from my list. .....
5 I don't know why he rejected my offer of help. .....
6 The train should arrive by ten o'clock. .....

80.3 Write a sentence to describe what is happening or what has happened in the pictures.

1 He's putting on his jacket.

3 .....

5 .....

2 .....

4 .....

6 .....

80.4 Complete the phrasal verbs.

1 I'm not stopping, so I won't take off my coat.
2 We didn't think Mike was good enough, so we left him ..... .
3 He told me he was 25, but I don't believe him. I think he's making that ..... .
4 We'll get there by seven if we set ..... now.
5 I'll call ..... you a bit later. I should be at your house by 7 o'clock.
6 They offered him the job but he turned it ..... .

80.5 Complete these sentences in a suitable way.

1 It was cold so I put on my gloves/coat/scarf.
2 Monica is still getting over .....
3 I'm not very good at making up .....
4 She asked me to turn on .....
5 Two men tried to break into .....
6 She's going out, so I said I'd look after .....

81 *Make, do* and *take*: uses and phrases

A Things we *make, do* and *take*

Common mistakes

We use all three of these common verbs with particular nouns. These word partners (collocations) are often different in other languages, so look at them carefully.

I've **made** a **mistake.**
She **took** a **photo** of me this morning.
They **made** a big **effort** to finish the work.

I'm afraid I haven't **done** my **homework.**
I haven't **done** the **housework** yet.
The children are **making** too much **noise.**

Sometimes two different verbs are possible.

I'm just going to **take/have** a **shower.**
Take/Have a look at these pictures.
We must **make/take** a **decision.**

I'm **doing/taking** a computer **course** next month.
I don't **do/take** much **exercise.**

B *Make*

Make can mean 'to cause something to happen or cause a particular state'.
I like Boris – he **makes me** laugh.
It **made them** angry when Karen refused to help with the washing-up.

Make can also mean 'to force someone to do something'.
My parents **made me** do my homework when I was a child.
The police **made us** wait outside the main gates.

If you **make friends with** someone, you get to know them and like them.
I **made friends with** a couple of guys from Canada when I was on holiday.

If you **make up your mind**, you decide something.
He's **made up his mind** to leave work at the end of next month.

C *Do*

We use **do** to describe a general action when we don't know what it is, or there's no noun.
What shall we **do** this afternoon?
Don't just stand there, **do** something.

If you **do your hair/make-up**, you make it look nice.
I'll just **do my hair**, then we can go out.

If you **do your best**, you try as hard as possible.
I'm not a good student, but I always **do my best.**

D *Take*

Take can mean to:

- remove something from a place/person, e.g. I **took** the key **out of** my pocket.
- remove something without permission, e.g. Someone has **taken** my pen.
- accept something, e.g. Did he **take** the job they offered him? Do they **take** credit cards there?
- write something down, e.g. I **took** notes during the lesson. The man **took** my name and address.
- wear a particular size in clothes, e.g. I **take** size 43 shoes.

If you **take it/things easy**, you relax and don't do very much.
I'll **take things easy** today.

If you **take a break**, you stop work and rest for a short period.
Let's **take a** ten-minute **break.**

Exercises

81.1 Choose the correct verb(s). Sometimes both are correct.

1 Did he *do* / *make* many mistakes?
2 I couldn't *do* / *make* the homework.
3 We must *take* / *make* a decision soon.
4 I want to *do* / *make* a course in English.
5 Could you *take* / *have* a look at this letter?
6 How many photos did they *make* / *take*?
7 I don't often *make* / *do* the housework.
8 They *did* / *made* a lot of noise at the party.

81.2 What are the people doing in the pictures?

1 She's taking a photo.

3 .....

5 .....

2 .....

4 .....

6 .....

81.3 Replace the underlined word or phrase with a phrase including the verb in capitals. Keep a similar meaning.

1 I <u>clean the flat</u> at the weekend. DO — I do the housework at the weekend.
2 They <u>forced us to go</u>. MAKE — .....
3 I'm <u>trying as hard as possible</u>. DO — .....
4 OK, let's <u>stop work and relax</u> for a bit. TAKE — .....
5 He is definitely <u>trying</u>. MAKE — .....
6 When are they going to <u>decide</u>? MAKE — .....
7 I'm going to <u>relax and do nothing</u> this weekend. TAKE — .....

81.4 Complete the sentences.

1 Someone took my coat. It was here a minute ago and now it's gone.
2 I can't go to the next lesson. Could you ..... notes for me?
3 We ..... friends with Yuki when we were in the same class last year.
4 I've ..... nothing today.
5 If they offered him a job with more money, why didn't he ..... it?
6 Could you take a ..... at my essay? I think there are lots of mistakes in it.
7 When he shouted out the wrong answer, it ..... him look stupid.
8 What size do you ..... ?
9 I'm putting on weight because I don't ..... enough exercise.
10 I've ..... up my mind. I'm going to go to Thailand for my holiday.

81.5 **Over to you**

Answer the questions. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

1 What things make you happy, make you sad, and make you angry?
2 What things do your parents, or your boss, or your teachers make you do (or made you do in the past)?

82 Key verbs: *give*, *keep* and *miss*

A *Give*

We can use **give** when someone or something causes a certain effect.

All that noise has **given me a headache.**
The walk this morning **gave me an appetite.** [made me hungry]
Listening to Wai Sin has **given me an idea.**

We often use **give** with different nouns to express an action.

He **gave** me some **advice.** [advised me]
Marie **gave** us a **shock** when she shouted like that. [shocked us]
I had to **give** a **speech** at the wedding. [talk formally to a group of people; also **give a lecture**]
I'll **give** her a **ring.** [ring/phone her]
I had lots of work to do, but fortunately Ollie **gave me a hand.** [helped me]

She **gave** me a **hug.**

He **gave** the car a **push.**

B *Keep*

Keep can mean to stay or cause someone to stay in a particular state or condition.

Keep right. [stay on the right side]
This coat will **keep you warm.**
She asked us to **keep quiet.**
Going to the gym **keeps me fit.**

Keep (on) doing something means to repeat doing something, and often it is something you don't want to do or happen.

I **keep losing** my glasses.
I **keep getting** backache.
She **keeps on interrupting** me. [talks to me / disturbs me when I am doing something]

If you **keep in touch,** you continue to communicate with someone, especially by phone or email.
I met Asha on holiday and we've **kept in touch** ever since.

If you **keep a secret,** you don't tell other people something that you know.
Tom told me not to tell anyone about his new job, but I'm not very good at **keeping a secret.**

If you **keep something up,** you continue doing something at a high level.
You're working hard and your English is improving. That's good – **keep it up.**

C *Miss*

If you **miss** a person, you feel sad because that person is not there.
When I went to work in Hungary, I really **missed my girlfriend.**

If you **miss** what someone says, you don't hear it.
I'm sorry, I **missed that.** What did you say?

If you **miss a chance/opportunity,** you don't use an opportunity to do something.
Cathy's been chosen for the team, but now she's injured, she might **miss her chance** to play.

If you **miss** something, you manage to avoid it or not experience it.
I left home early in order to **miss the rush hour.**

Exercises

82.1 **Match each verb with three phrases on the right.**

give	a speech	in touch
		~~a speech~~
		an opportunity
miss		on doing something
		someone a hug
		a person
keep		someone a hand
		what someone says
		a secret

82.2 **Complete the sentences with a suitable adjective or *-ing* form.**

1 I never drink coffee at night; it keeps me awake .
2 This umbrella should keep you ..... .
3 I don't know why she keeps ..... – it wasn't a very funny story.
4 If you do lots of exercise, it'll keep you ..... .
5 It's really stupid, but I keep ..... to lock the doors and windows when I go out.
6 They're making a lot of noise in there. Could you tell them to keep ..... ?
7 I know his name is Stuart, but I keep ..... it's Stephen.
8 I keep ..... up early in the morning because it's so light in my bedroom.

82.3 **Complete the dialogues using a verb + noun. Don't repeat the underlined phrases.**

1 A: He's sad without Gina.
B: I know. He misses her .
2 A: Did you phone her?
B: Yes, I ..... her a ..... last night.
3 A: He didn't put his arms round her, did he?
B: Yes. He ..... her a big ..... .
4 A: Have you stayed in contact with your old school friends all this time?
B: Yes, I've tried to ..... in ..... as much as possible.
5 A: Could anyone help me with this?
B: Yeah, I'll ..... you a ..... .
6 A: It's his own fault. He had a chance to go and he didn't take it.
B: I know. He ..... his ..... .
7 A: I expect you're hungry after all that work.
B: Yes, it's ..... me an ..... .

82.4 **Complete the sentences with the correct verb and a word from the box.**

~~shock~~	fun	headaches	secret	push	up	dog	idea	rush hour

1 She gave me a shock when she broke that window.
2 If we leave the party early, we'll ..... all the ..... .
3 The guys are working really hard, but I don't know if they can ..... it ..... .
4 I couldn't get the car started, but fortunately someone ..... me a ..... .
5 We left before seven because we wanted to ..... the ..... .
6 She doesn't know what the problem is, but she ..... getting ..... .
7 I saw a fascinating programme on TV, and that's what ..... me the ..... .
8 When I go on holiday alone, I really ..... my ..... .
9 I didn't say anything to Annie about the wedding because she can't ..... a ..... .

83 *Get*: uses, phrases and phrasal verbs

A Uses

Get is an informal word and is very common in spoken English. It can have many different meanings.

OBTAIN	I **got** a ticket from my brother.	I need to **get** some help.
RECEIVE	I **got** a CD for my birthday.	Did you **get** my email?
BUY	Where did you **get** that watch?	I went to **get** a paper.
ARRIVE	What time did you **get** here?	I'll phone when I **get** home.
BECOME	It **gets** dark very early in winter.	My hands are **getting** cold.
FETCH ⟷	Could you (**go and**) **get** my glasses from the kitchen for me?	
ANSWER the door/phone	A: Is that the phone?	B: Yes, I'll **get** it.

DO a task, or arrange for someone to do it for you, using get + past participle

I'll never **get** this essay <u>finished</u>; it's too difficult.
I need to **get** my hair <u>cut</u>.
I **got** my watch <u>repaired</u> today.

B Phrases

You can **get in touch with** me via email. [make contact by email, phone or letter]
A bedtime story helps children **get to sleep**. [start sleeping]
The salsa classes are a chance for us to **get together**. [meet and spend time together]
I'm sorry I **got** the number **wrong**. [said or wrote something that was not correct]
My cold is **getting worse**. [becoming more unpleasant; *opp* **getting better**]
I'd like to **get rid of** my old CDs. [throw them away, give them away, or sell them]
I **got to know** lots of Americans when I stayed in San Francisco. [met and became friends with]

C Phrasal verbs

He stopped the car and I **got out**. [left the car; also leave a building]
I gave her £25, but I'll **get it back** tomorrow. [have it returned to me]
The door was locked so we couldn't **get in**. [enter a place, especially when it is difficult]
Our train should **get in** around midnight. [arrive]
What time did you **get up** this morning? [get out of bed]

Exercises

83.1 Write a synonym for *get* in each of these sentences.

1 I usually get about five emails a day. receive
2 Where can I get something to eat round here? .....
3 I'm just going to get some paper from the office. I'll be back in a minute. .....
4 What time did they get here last night? .....
5 He got very angry when I told him what you did with his CDs. .....
6 I couldn't get a room; all the hotels were full. .....
7 The phone's ringing. Could you get it for me? .....
8 Molly sent me a card but I never got it. .....

83.2 Complete the dialogues using *getting* + a suitable adjective. Add other words if necessary.

1 A: It's getting cold in here .....
B: Yes, it is. I'll turn on the heating.
2 A: I'm .....
B: Me too. Let's have something to eat.
3 A: I'm .....
B: Yes, me too. I'll open the window.
4 A: It's .....
B: Yes, it is. I'll put the lights on.
5 A: It's .....
B: Yes, it is. I think I'll go to bed.
6 A: My English is .....
B: No, it isn't – it's much better now.

83.3 Rewrite the sentences using a phrase or phrasal verb with *get*. Keep a similar meaning.

1 Will the books be returned to you?
Will you get the books back? .....
2 We must meet up and have a meal.
We must .....
3 How do you meet people and make friends in this country?
How do you .....
4 I must contact the travel company.
I must .....
5 I'd like to throw away these old magazines.
I'd like to .....
6 The train won't arrive before 10 o'clock.
The train won't .....
7 The doors were locked; we couldn't leave.
The doors were locked; we couldn't .....
8 I was awake for hours last night.
I couldn't .....

83.4 Continue these statements in a suitable way.

1 The window is broken. We need to get it repaired .....
2 My hair is getting long. I .....
3 This essay is taking me hours. I .....
4 My watch isn't working. I .....
5 Lola has still got my CDs. I .....

83.5 Write down examples of *get* that you see or hear, and try to group your sentences according to the different meanings. This will help you to understand how this important word is used in English.

84 *Go*: meanings and expressions

A Different meanings of *go*

- When we leave a place in order to do an activity, especially for enjoyment, we often express it with **go + -ing** or **go (out) for a** + noun.
  We could **go shopping/sightseeing/swimming/clubbing** [to a nightclub] tomorrow.
  Why don't we **go (out) for a walk/drive/drink/meal/picnic** at lunchtime?
- **Go** can also describe a changing state (usually to a bad one) with certain adjectives.
  My dad's **going grey** [his hair is becoming grey] and I'm **going bald.** [losing my hair]
  My grandmother is **going deaf.** [deaf = cannot hear]
  Our 12-year-old dog is **going blind.** [blind = cannot see]
  He'll **go mad** if you wear his jacket. [become very angry; *infml*]

going bald

- We use **go** when we want to ask/say if a road or form of transport takes you somewhere.
  Does this bus **go** to the National Gallery?
  I think this road **goes** through the village.
- **Go** can also mean 'disappear'.
  When I looked in the drawer, my watch **had gone.** [it was there before, but not now]
- **Go and get** means **fetch.** [go to a place and bring something back with you]
  You stay here, and I'll **go and get** the bags from the car.

B Phrasal verbs and expressions

A: What's **going on** in here? [happening]

B: I don't know. I touched this switch and the lights **went out.** [stopped working]

A: Shall we wait for George or **go on to** the theatre? [continue or move to another place/thing]

B: Er, I'm not sure of the way; let's wait for George.

A: How's the business?

B: Well, it was **going well** [successful; *opp* **going badly**] up until the summer, but since then a few things have **gone wrong** [there have been problems], and we've lost a few customers.

A: I think I'll have the chicken. How about you?

B: I'm **going for** the roast beef. [choosing]

A: **How's it going?** [How are you? *infml*]

B: Not bad. And you?

Exercises

84.1 **Complete the sentences with an *-ing* noun, e.g. riding, or *(out) for a* + noun, e.g. (out) for a walk.**

1 I went shopping this morning and bought some new clothes.
2 It was a lovely day, so we made some sandwiches and decided to go ..... .
3 Why don't we go ..... in that nice new café near the square?
4 I wanted to go ..... because it was my first time in Rome.
5 My brother has just got a new sports car. We could go ..... at the weekend.
6 The pool is at the end of the road, so we often go ..... .
7 I'm just going to take the dog ..... .
8 We went ..... last night and didn't get home until three this morning.
9 It was my father's birthday, so we decided to go ..... .

84.2 **Replace the underlined words with a different word or phrase. Keep a similar meaning.**

1 He went mad when he saw me. got angry
2 Hi Sue. How's it going? .....
3 Could you go and get my handbag from the other room? .....
4 Do you want to go on and do the next exercise? .....
5 What's going on in the next classroom? .....
6 When I got back, the others had gone. .....
7 I can't stay for the weekend; I have to go back on Friday. .....
8 Excuse me. Does this road go to the bus station? .....
9 My girlfriend had fish but I went for the chicken dish. .....

84.3 **Complete the dialogues with a phrasal verb or expression using *go*.**

1 A: I hear you had problems with your exam?
B: Yes, everything went wrong . I couldn't answer any of the questions.
2 A: Can't he see very well?
B: No, I'm afraid he's ..... .
3 A: Your uncle's just opened a new restaurant, hasn't he? How's it doing?
B: Great. It's ..... .
4 A: I imagine your parents were angry that you had a party when they were away.
B: They were. My dad ..... .
5 A: Simon isn't losing his hair already, is he?
B: Yes, I'm afraid he's ..... .
6 A: Are the books downstairs in the staffroom?
B: Yes. Could you ..... them for me?
A: Yeah, sure.
7 A: Are you having a holiday this year?
B: Yes, we're hoping to ..... in the summer.
8 A: What have you done?!
B: I don't know. The lights just ..... .

84.4

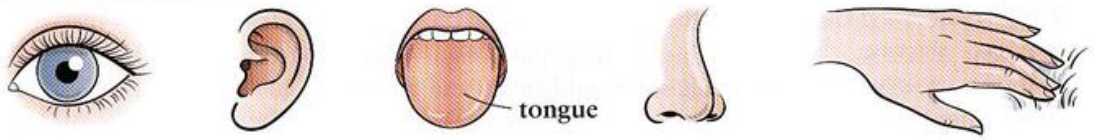
Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

Do you often go swimming in the summer?
Do you go clubbing most weekends?
Do you often go shopping with a friend?
Did you often go for picnics as a child?
Do you often go for a walk on your own?
Do you like going out for a meal?
Do you often go sightseeing on holiday?
Do you enjoy going out for a drive in the country?

85 The senses

A The five basic senses



sight hearing taste smell touch

To express it another way, the ability to see, hear, taste, smell and feel.

B Sense verbs with adjectives

You **look** tired this evening. [from what I can see]
That man **sounded foreign**. [from another country, from what I could hear]
This cake **tastes** a bit strange.
Fresh bread **smells** wonderful.
This shirt **feels damp**. [slightly wet, often in an unpleasant way]

Language help
The verbs above can all be used as nouns.
*I like **the look of** this hotel.* [the appearance of it]
*I love **the sound of** his voice.*

C Sense verbs with *like* or *as if/though*

We can describe things using sense verbs with **like** + noun or **as if/though** + clause, but *not* **like** + adjective (NOT She looks ~~like~~ nice). When we use **like** + noun, we are often describing how similar two things are.

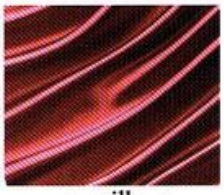
Have you ever had a nectarine? They **look like** peaches.
Did you hear that noise? It **sounded like** an alarm.
That shampoo **smells like** coconut. (also **smells of** coconut)
Don't you think this material **feels like** silk?

nectarine

alarm

That boy **looks as if** he's trying to get over the wall.
I spoke to Isobel. It **sounded as though** they had a good time on holiday.

coconut


silk

Language help
We also use **seem** and **appear** to describe a sense or feeling about someone or something, after we have seen them, talked to them, etc. Before **like** + noun, we usually use **seem**.
*I saw Will and he **seemed/appeared** quite happy. The shop **appears/seems** to be very busy.*
*Carrie said she wanted to travel a bit, which **seems like** a good idea.*

D Verbs easily confused

If you **look** [look carefully] at the map, you can **see** [are able to see] the church on the left.
They've been **watching** that man for weeks. [paying attention to something, often for a long time]
He ran into me because he wasn't **looking**. [paying attention]
I **watched/saw** a film on TV. I **saw** a film at the cinema. (NOT I ~~watched~~ a film at the cinema.)
I **heard** [was able to hear] what she said but I wasn't **listening**. [paying attention]
Don't **touch** the oven [put your hand on it]. It's hot!
Just **feel** my feet [put your hand on them to discover something about them]. Aren't they cold?

Exercises

85.1 Cover the opposite page. What are the five basic senses?

sight ....

85.2 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

1 I was very angry with Tom – he just wasn't *hearing* / *listening to* what I was saying.
2 I was *listening to* / *hearing* the radio when I *listened to* / *heard* a terrible noise outside.
3 She turned up the volume but I still couldn't *listen to* / *hear* it.
4 There's a good film on at the cinema. Have you *watched* / *seen* it?
5 Quick. Come and *watch* / *look at* this man walking by.
6 We *watched* / *looked at* the birds while they were eating food from the bird table.
7 If you stand near the fire, you can *touch* / *feel* how hot it is.
8 You mustn't *touch* / *feel* the paintings in the museum.
9 If you *see* / *look* carefully, you can *look* / *see* how the man does the magic trick.
10 Anya wants to get a parrot, which *seems* / *appears* like a strange thing to do.

85.3 Complete the sentences with a different sense verb and a word from the box. Add *like* where necessary.

~~delicious~~	a church	an alarm	very nice
damp	coconut	calm and relaxed	silk

1 Petra has just taken the cakes out of the oven and they smell delicious .....
2 The sheets on her bed looked expensive, and when I touched them, they ..... .
3 I could see something quite tall in the distance. It ..... .
4 When I heard the noise I jumped out of bed because it ..... .
5 Have you tried these biscuits? They ..... .
6 I've just met my new class; they ..... .
7 I don't want to sit on the grass. It ..... .
8 I saw her before the exam and she ..... .

85.4 Complete the middle part of the sentences.

1 Alexei said that Lola was doing well, so it sounds as if/though ..... she'll pass the exam.
2 Erin told me about the accident. It ..... it was quite serious.
3 Put your hand on the radiator. Does it ..... it's getting warm?
4 I've just spoken to Tom. He ..... he's got a cold.
5 Have you tried the soup? It ..... it needs a bit more salt to me.
6 Is that your little boy on the floor? It ..... he's fallen over.
7 Anezka didn't ask any questions. It ..... she wasn't interested.

85.5 **Over to you**

Complete the sentences about your own likes and dislikes. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

I love the smell of ..... .
I hate the smell of ..... .
I love the sound of ..... .
I hate the sound of ..... .
I love the taste of ..... .
I hate the taste of ..... .

86 Uncountable nouns

A Common uncountable nouns

One of the problems with uncountable nouns is that many of them are countable in other languages.

Common mistakes

I need information. (NOT I need ~~an~~ information.) (no indefinite article)
I need some information. (NOT I need ~~informations~~.) (no plural form)
The homework was difficult. (NOT The homework ~~were~~ difficult.) (use with a singular verb)

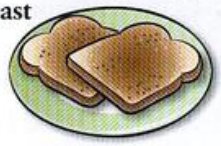
- You can put all that **rubbish** in the bin over there. [things that you throw away because you do not want them]
- Is there any more **news** about the man who was injured?
- She gave me some good **advice** about buying a car. [what you think someone should do]
- Do the children get **pocket money**? [money that parents give regularly to their children]
- You need a lot of **equipment** for camping, e.g. tent, sleeping bag, torch, things for cooking, etc. [the things that are used for a particular activity]
- We sold the **furniture**. [tables, chairs, armchairs, etc.]
- The **scenery** is really beautiful. [the natural beauty you see around you]
- My **knowledge of** Russian is limited. [what I know about it]
- She's worked very hard and I believe she is **making progress**. [improving / getting better]
- Can you take the dog? We haven't got any **room** in our car. [empty space]
- Would anyone like some more **toast**?
- The children's **behaviour** was terrible: they were climbing all over the furniture and making a lot of noise. [the way you do and say things]

bin

tent

sleeping bag

torch


toast

B Uncountable nouns in dictionaries

Dictionaries show countable nouns with a (C) and uncountable nouns with a (U). Some nouns can be countable with one meaning, and uncountable with another.

experience (U) [the knowledge you get from doing a particular job or activity]
She's got a lot of **experience of** working with children.
experience (C) [something that happens to you that affects the way you feel]
I had so many fantastic **experiences** on my trip to Thailand and Japan.

chance (U) [luck]
Lotto is a game of **chance**.
chance (C) [the opportunity to do something]
He's had several **chances** to go abroad, but he's just not interested.

C Making uncountable nouns countable

You can make some uncountable nouns singular. Sometimes we do this with a word like **piece** (for advice, equipment, toast, furniture, news), but in spoken English we often use a **bit** (*infml*) with most uncountable nouns.

a good **piece of** advice — **an** interesting **bit of** news
another piece of toast — just **a bit of** rubbish

Exercises

86.1 Correct the mistakes.

1 I need some ~~informations~~. information
2 Our teacher has a news about the trip. .....
3 She gave me some good advices. .....
4 Her progress are very good. .....
5 We had a lot of homeworks yesterday. .....
6 The furnitures were very old. .....
7 I have no experiences of using these equipments. .....
8 I need to improve my knowledges of this new technology. .....

86.2 Make the uncountable nouns countable.

1 I did some homework. — I did a bit of homework.
2 It's useful equipment. — It's .....
3 It was good advice. — It was .....
4 Do you want some more toast? — Do you want .....
5 She's making progress. — She's making .....
6 There's some rubbish on the floor. — There's .....
7 I gave them some pocket money. — I gave them .....
8 I heard some news this morning. — I heard .....

86.3 Complete the dialogues.

1 A: Have you been given all the details?
B: No, I need more information .
2 A: She hasn't worked there long enough.
B: No, she needs more ..... .
3 A: Is your flat big enough?
B: No, we need more ..... .
4 A: Does she know what to do when she leaves school?
B: No, she needs some ..... .
5 A: Don't you think the room looks empty?
B: Yes, we need more ..... .
6 A: Is his English getting better?
B: No, he isn't making any ..... .

86.4 Complete the sentences. The first letter has been given to help you.

1 I asked my teacher for some advice about grammar books.
2 I've had some great e..... when I've travelled on my own.
3 If we give him another c....., I'm sure he'll be able to do it.
4 That stuff over there is r..... ; just throw it in the bin.
5 We camped on the hill above the lake because the s..... is so beautiful.
6 I don't know what's wrong with Celia, but her b..... was very strange this morning.
7 Do you have any e..... of working with computers?
8 I don't have any k..... of this subject; you'd better ask Fariah.

86.5 Use a dictionary to find out if these nouns are countable or uncountable. Keep a record of them in your notebook.

transport luggage suitcase pasta traffic accident

87 Verb constructions 1

A Verb + *-ing* form

A number of verbs are commonly followed by an *-ing* form.

QUESTIONNAIRE

QUESTIONS	ANSWERS
• Do you **enjoy** studying?	Yes, I do.
• Do you **mind** getting up early? [Is it OK for you, or not?]	No, I don't mind at all.
• Do you **like** or **dislike** having your photograph taken?	I **hate** having my picture taken.
• Do you usually **avoid** speaking to strangers at parties? [try not to do something]	Yes. I prefer to talk to people that I already know.
• Can you **imagine** being without a car? [think of yourself in a situation with no car]	No, I can't. I need my car.
• Have you ever **considered** [thought about] living in another country?	Yes, many times. I'd like to live abroad.
• Would you **recommend** [advise] having a holiday in the capital city of your country? If so, would you **suggest** going at a particular time of the year?	Yes, I would, and I would suggest going in spring or autumn.

Common mistakes

I enjoy going there. (NOT I enjoy ~~to go~~ there.) They suggested leaving early. (NOT They suggested ~~to leave~~ early.) He recommended staying there. (NOT He recommended ~~to stay~~ there.)

B Verb + *to* infinitive

I **hope** to see them next week. [want to see them and believe I will see them]
They **agreed** to help me. [said they will help]
I **intend** to leave next month. [plan]
I **offered** to help them. [said I was happy to help]
I **attempted** to cook the dinner, but it was terrible. [tried]
I **promised** to bring her book back. [said I would definitely bring it back]
The shop assistant was very rude, so I **demanded** to see the manager. [said in a firm way]

C Verb + (object) + preposition + noun/*-ing*

A: Jo has just rung and **asked** me **for** advice about Turkey. They're **thinking of**[1] going there.

B: Well, be careful. They went to India last year on your advice and then **blamed**[2] you **for** the terrible holiday they had.

A: That was their fault. They **insisted on**[3] going in the summer when it was far too hot.

[1] thinking about going to Turkey (often used in the continuous and followed by a noun/*-ing* form (NOT I'm thinking ~~to go~~ there.))

[2] said you were responsible for something bad, in this case the terrible holiday

[3] said they must go (in the summer)

Exercises

87.1 Choose the correct word(s) to complete the sentences.

1 I hope *seeing* / (*to see*) them.
2 They agreed *helping* / *to help* me.
3 We enjoy *staying* / *to stay* by the sea.
4 I suggested *going* / *to go* on the train.
5 She insisted *in* / *on* paying for our meal.
6 We must attempt *getting* / *to get* there on time.
7 Have you considered *working* / *to work* in a bank?
8 I demanded *speaking* / *to speak* to the doctor in charge.
9 I asked *him help* / *him for help*.
10 They blamed me *for* / *of* it.
11 I don't mind *waiting* / *to wait* for you.
12 I try to avoid *travelling* / *to travel* in the rush hour.

87.2 Complete the sentences with the most suitable verb.

1 Have you asked the waiter for the bill?
2 My sister is ..... of spending the summer in France if she can afford it.
3 I've had a computer for about 20 years; I can't ..... being without one.
4 We always try to ..... driving into town in the rush hour.
5 The accident wasn't my fault but they ..... me for it.
6 We're ..... to see my parents later this week. We had ..... to go last week, but Marsha was ill and we couldn't go.
7 I ..... meeting your friends; they were really nice.
8 Have you ever ..... moving out of a town and going to live in the country?
9 I offered to drive, but Harry ..... on taking his car because he said he ..... being a passenger.
10 Aleisha's parents weren't happy with the school, and they ..... to see the head teacher.

87.3 **When you learn new verbs, you may need to know the constructions that are used with them. A good dictionary will give you this information, usually with examples. Using a good English dictionary, find the constructions that commonly follow these verbs.**

○ FORMAL *Might I suggest a white wine with your salmon, sir?* ○ [+ **(that)**] *I suggest* ***(that)*** *we wait a while before we make any firm decisions.* ○ *Liz suggested* ***(that)*** *I try the shop on Mill Road.* ○ [+ **-ing** VERB] *I suggested putt**ing** the matter to the committee.*

fancy + ... pretend + ... or .....

decide + ... or ..... accuse + ...

87.4

Over to you

Answer the questions in the questionnaire on the opposite page. If possible, ask someone else the same questions. Then complete the sentences about yourself using the correct construction after each verb.

I like .....
I dislike .....
I don't mind .....
I'm thinking .....
I can't imagine .....
I hope .....
I intend .....

88 Verb constructions 2

A A great opportunity

"I'm 24 years old, and I work in a photography studio. It's not a very exciting job but I love photography and the pay isn't bad. But, two months ago, I was given the chance to go to Italy and work on a film by a famous director. My best friend thought that it was a fantastic opportunity and **advised**[1] **me to go**. Dad wasn't so sure. He didn't try and **persuade**[2] **me not to go**, but he **warned**[3] **me that** it would be hard work, and **reminded**[4] **me that** it was only three months, then I'd be out of a job. I **realised**[5] **that** my girlfriend wasn't happy about it either, but I **promised**[6] **her that** I would phone every day, and **suggested**[7] **that** she could come out to Italy for a holiday while I was there. I didn't **mention**[8] **that** I was part of a small team with three other women. Anyway, I'm going."

[1] say what you think someone should do — advise + obj + inf
[2] make someone agree to do something by talking a lot — persuade + obj + inf
[3] tell someone that something bad may happen, to stop it happening — warn + obj + (that) ...
[4] tell someone something so that they don't forget it — remind + obj + (that) ...
[5] understand something (that) you didn't understand before — realise + (that) ...
[6] say (that) you will certainly do something — promise + (obj) + (that) ...
[7] tell someone about a possible idea or plan — suggest + (that) ...
[8] say something, often briefly or quickly — mention + (that) ...

Language help

Some verbs can be followed by different constructions. We can also say, for example:

I suggested going there.	suggest + -ing
She warned me not to go.	warn + obj + inf
He reminded me to post the letter.	remind + obj + inf

B Other verbs

Here are some more verbs which are used with the same constructions.

Verb + (*that*) ...: *say, hope, notice, recommend* and *expect*.
I **said** that I was busy. (NOT I said ~~him~~ that I was busy.)
I **hope** (that) you'll come and see us soon.
When I left, I **noticed** that the door was open. [could see]
I **recommended** that we all go together, so no one gets lost.
I **expect** (that) he'll ring us later. [think or believe that something will happen]

Verb + object + (*that*) ...: *tell, show* and *convince*.
I **told** them (that) they could leave early.
He tried to **convince me** that I needed some new clothes. [make me believe]

Verb + object + *to* infinitive: *ask, tell, want, allow, expect, remind, help* and *encourage*.
Tracey **asked** me to look after her cat.
They **told** us to wait outside.
They **want** us to stay at school.
I **expected** them to be here by now.
I had to **remind** him to buy the food. [tell somebody so that they do not forget]
She **helped** me to write the report. (You can also say: She helped me write the report.)
My parents **encouraged** me to read. [gave me support and confidence to make it possible]

Exercises

88.1 Correct the mistakes.

1 She encouraged me going. She encouraged me to go.
2 He told it's impossible. .....
3 I asked that Talia stay with me. .....
4 She suggested us to go to an Italian restaurant. .....
5 I warned them not going. .....
6 He helped me buying my suit. .....
7 She allowed us go. .....
8 He said me the film was terrible. .....
9 She advised me buy a dictionary. .....
10 I recommended to stay there. .....
11 He reminded me go to the bank. .....
12 I want that he leaves. .....

88.2 Complete the sentences with a verb from the box in the correct form.

~~realise~~	warn	expect	remind	convince	encourage
help	persuade	mention	recommend	notice	hope

1 She couldn't breathe easily, so I realised ..... that something was wrong.
2 When we went in, I ..... that people were looking at us.
3 Martin knew the area was dangerous but he didn't ..... me not to go there.
4 I didn't want the job but my mother ..... me to take it. It was a mistake.
5 I wasn't sure about the plan, but my boss ..... me that it would work.
6 My uncle ..... that we try the new Chinese restaurant.
7 When I spoke to Jodie, I ..... that we were busy tonight.
8 Our teacher has always ..... us to practise our English outside of class.
9 Fortunately Aidan ..... me that it was Marsha's birthday; I'd forgotten.
10 I said I would ..... Ian to put up the shelves.
11 They said they'd come, so I ..... that they'll be here soon.
12 I ..... that I pass my exams.

88.3 Complete the sentences in a suitable way.

1 He was given some money and I recommended that he put it in the bank.
2 Some of them were getting hungry so I suggested .....
3 She said there were strange noises outside her flat, so I advised .....
4 When I saw her face, I noticed .....
5 When I was young, my parents sometimes allowed .....
6 As soon as I put on the coat, I realised .....
7 It was only a few minutes to the beach, but I still couldn't persuade .....
8 Her train was delayed, so I expect .....
9 The water can make you ill and I warned .....
10 I borrowed his laptop yesterday but promised him that .....

88.4

Over to you

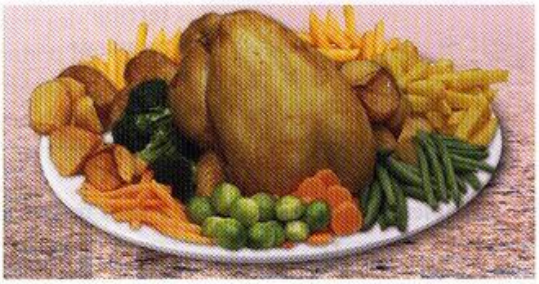
Look at the verbs on the opposite page again and translate them into your own language. Do you use the translated verbs with the same constructions? If not, these are the verbs that may cause you the most problems when you are speaking English.

89 Adjectives

A Extreme adjectives

There are many 'extreme' adjectives we use to say that something is very good, or very small, or very surprising, etc.

We were lucky – the weather was **marvellous**. [very good; *syns* **terrific, wonderful, amazing**]
Don't go and see that film – it's **awful**. [very bad; *syn* **dreadful**]
I was **delighted** she passed her exam. [very pleased]
It's a nice modern flat, but it's absolutely **tiny**. [very small]



I wasn't very hungry, but they gave us a **huge** meal. [very big; *syn* **enormous**]
You should watch that programme; you'll find it absolutely **fascinating**. [very interesting]
Everyone was really **exhausted** by the end of the day. [very tired]
Bungee jumping is the most **terrifying** thing I've ever done. [very frightening]
Computers are an **essential** part of modern life. [very important and necessary]
The food was **delicious**. [very good; but usually only for food]

Language help

The food was **absolutely marvellous**. (NOT The food was ~~very marvellous~~.) We can use **absolutely** or **really** before extreme adjectives, e.g. *absolutely awful, really terrific*, but we can't use **very**.
We use **very** or **really** with gradable adjectives which do not have an extreme meaning, e.g. *very big, very good, very nice, very tired, really good, really tired*, etc. (NOT ~~absolutely big~~)

B Adjectives ending in *-ing* and *-ed*

A large group of adjectives can have an **-ing** or **-ed** ending. The **-ing** ending describes a person, thing or situation; the **-ed** ending describes the effect on someone of this person, thing or situation.

I don't know if other people were **bored**, but I thought it was a very **boring** lesson.
The weather is so **depressing** at the moment; it's making everyone feel **depressed**.

Common mistakes

I was bored by that film. (NOT I was ~~boring~~ by that film.)
We're very interested in the new designs. (NOT We're very ~~interesting~~ in the new designs.)

These adjectives can all end in **-ing** or **-ed**, depending on the meaning.

It was really **tiring** going up that hill. [making you feel tired]
I was **amazed** she could climb that wall. [very surprised]
My exam results were very **disappointing**. [not as good as I expected]
She was **annoyed** that I forgot to tell her. [angry]
I kept calling her Emma, so I was **embarrassed** when Ben told me her name was Angela. [feeling a bit stupid because of something you have said or done]
The map he gave us was very **confusing**. [difficult to understand]
We were **shocked** by the violence in the film. [very surprised in an unpleasant way]

Exercises

89.1 Put the words into the correct column.

~~bad~~	~~dreadful~~	important	small	exhausted
terrified	tired	essential	frightened	tiny

gradable adjectives	extreme adjectives
bad	dreadful

89.2 Change the adjectives where possible to give the email a more positive and/or more extreme effect. Include *absolutely* or *really* two or three times.

Dear Sandy

Arrived on Sunday evening after ~~a very tiring~~ an (absolutely) exhausting journey. We're very pleased with the hotel: our room is very big, and the food is very nice. We've been lucky with the weather as well. The first day was wet but the last three days have been very nice.

Tomorrow we're going to walk the coastal path to Dartmouth Castle. It's quite a difficult route and people tell us it's very important to take a map, but it sounds very interesting, so I'm looking forward to it.

I'll write again in a couple of days and tell you all about it.

love

Benita

89.3 Complete the dialogues so that B agrees with A, using a suitable adjective from the opposite page.

1 A: I was very interested in her talk.
B: Yes, it was fascinating.
2 A: Were you very frightened?
B: Yes, it was absolutely .....
3 A: It was surprising to see the children behave so badly.
B: I know. We were .....
4 A: Did you have a nice holiday?
B: Yes, absolutely .....
5 A: I expect you were very pleased with your score.
B: Yes, I was absolutely .....
6 A: I expect you were a bit angry when they arrived an hour late?
B: Yes, I was very .....

89.4 Write an adjective to describe how the people felt in these situations.

1 They walked ten miles, then spent the afternoon cutting down trees. exhausted
2 From the description in the travel brochure, they expected a beautiful big villa by the sea. In actual fact it was quite small, not very nice, and miles from the beach. .....
3 I arrived in jeans, but everyone else was wearing very formal clothes. .....
4 One person told them the street was on the left, another told them to turn right, and a third person said they had to go back to the station. .....
5 My brother has a flat and it's usually in a terrible mess – he's very untidy. But yesterday when I visited him, the place was incredibly tidy. In fact, everything looked new. .....
6 I got my results yesterday and I passed every exam with a grade A. .....

90 Prepositions: place and movement

A *At, on* and *in*

At a point or place, e.g. I met her **at** the bus stop. He's **at** work at the moment.
On a surface, e.g. The book's **on** the desk. They sat **on** the floor. I put the picture **on** the wall.
In an area, space, or inside something, e.g. He's **in** the kitchen. She lives **in** Warsaw/Poland. The knife's **in** the top drawer.

Common mistakes

I met them **at** the airport. (NOT I met them ~~on~~ the airport.)
There's a computer **on** my desk. (NOT There's a computer ~~in~~ my desk.)
The conference is being held **in** Delhi. (NOT The conference is being held ~~at~~ Delhi.)

B Where exactly?

I know they live **in** Danvers Street, and I think they're **at** number twenty-three.

I'm sure there's a chemist on the left **before** the bank. [first there is a chemist, and then a bank; *opp* **after**]

Their house is **beyond** the farm [on the other side of the farm], **by** [near] the old church.

I saw your bike in the back garden **against** the wall. [touching the wall]

They've just bought a house **right** [exactly] **beside/by** [next to] the river.

Your photographs are in the spare room **beneath/underneath** a pile of newspapers. [under]

Their office is **above** the shop (*opp* **below**).

You can just see the top of the building **among** the trees. [somewhere in the middle of the trees]

C Movement

We came **over** the bridge (*opp* **under**), then **through** the tunnel and **round** the lake.

The mouse ran **out of** the back door (*opp* **into**), **towards** the gate, then disappeared **down** a hole.

The woman came **after** us [followed in order to catch us], but we managed to climb **into** the back of my dad's van. Fortunately she went **past** the van and didn't see us.

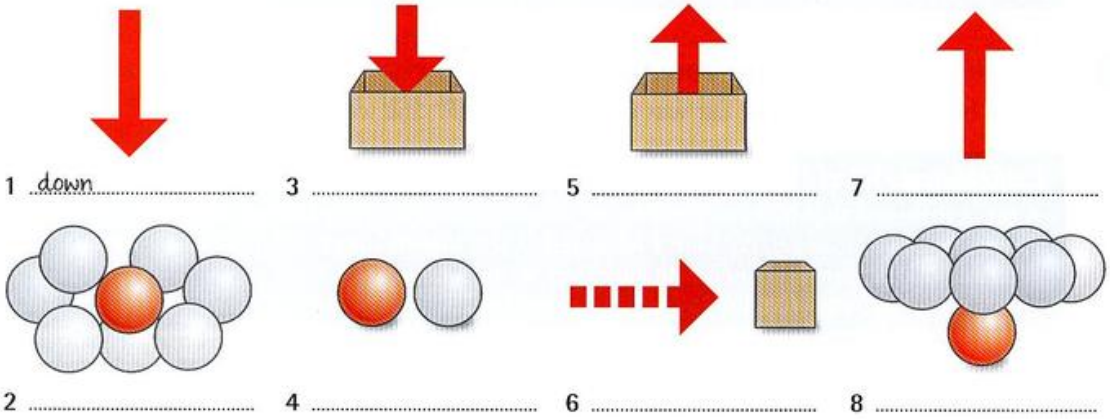
Exercises

90.1 Complete the sentences.

1 I put the milk *in* the fridge.
2 They live ..... the next road.
3 They live ..... 34 Lawrence Street.
4 Your clothes are ..... the floor.
5 I met her ..... a party.
6 She works ..... Moscow.
7 The dictionary is ..... my desk.
8 I sat ..... the bed and wrote the letter.
9 I left my books ..... school.
10 There was snow ..... the ground when I arrived.
11 The key is ..... my jacket pocket.
12 Mausha's ..... work this morning.

90.2 Put the prepositions in the box under the correct picture.

beside	towards	out of	~~down~~	among	into	up	underneath



1 *down* 3 ..... 5 ..... 7 .....

2 ..... 4 ..... 6 ..... 8 .....

90.3 Complete the dialogues so that B says the opposite to A.

1 A: Did you go up the hill?
B: No, *down the hill.*
2 A: Did you climb over the fence?
B: No, we went .....
3 A: Did you see her get into the car?
B: No, but I saw her .....
4 A: Did you say we had to turn left before the bridge?
B: No, turn left .....
5 A: Does she live in the flat above you?
B: No, she's in the flat .....
6 A: Did you say the bed was in the middle of the room?
B: No, it's ..... the wall.

90.4 *Over to you*

Answer the questions, and give reasons for your answers. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

1 Is it a good idea to live right beside a hospital?
2 Would you like to live above a restaurant?
3 Are you happy to drive on icy roads?
4 Do you like putting lots of things on your bedroom wall?
5 In a plane or train, do you like sitting by the window?
6 Would you like to live among lots of rich and famous people?

91 Adverbs

A Adverbs of frequency: how often

always — often / frequently — quite often — sometimes — occasionally — hardly ever / rarely / seldom (*fml*) — never

She **hardly ever** plays tennis now.
I **occasionally** go to the theatre.
We see them quite **frequently**.

I am **often** late.
He **rarely** works at weekends.
I have **never** been to America.

Language help

Remember that frequency adverbs usually go before the main verb, with the exception of the verb *be*. Notice the position of the adverb when the present perfect is used.

B Adverbs of degree: how much

I was **a bit** tired. (*infml*) The flat was **a little (bit)** small. She was **slightly** nervous.

Language help

A bit, a little and **slightly** have the same meaning and are mostly used before adjectives that express negative ideas, e.g. *We were **a bit bored**. I was **slightly upset**.* (NOT I was ~~a bit happy~~.)
A bit and *a little* cannot be used with adjectives before a noun.
*It was a **slightly small flat**.* (NOT It was ~~a bit small flat~~.)

The next four adverbs all mean 'more than *a bit* but less than *very*'.

The hotel was **quite** busy.
The food was **fairly** boring.
I was **rather** annoyed I missed the film.
The weather was **pretty** good. (*infml*)

We had **quite a** nice room. (NOT ~~a quite nice~~ room)
It was **a fairly** wet day.
It was **a rather** good party. OR **rather a** good party.
We had **a pretty** difficult journey.

The restaurant was **completely/totally** empty. I **totally/completely** agree with you.

We had an **extremely** interesting trip. [very interesting]
It's an **incredibly** good book.

C Adverbs of manner

These adverbs describe the way in which someone does something, or the way that something happens.

Nina had **secretly**[1] put all of the letters into her bag.

Petra was in pain, and I could see she needed help **urgently**[3].

I went in and shut the door **quietly**. The curtains were closed and the room was dark, but I **suddenly**[2] realised I wasn't alone.

I spoke to Charles **briefly**[4] this morning. I asked him very **politely** if he could work an extra hour this evening, but he reacted quite **angrily** and walked off.

[1] in a way that others couldn't know about
[2] quickly
[3] very quickly because of something important
[4] for a short time

Exercises

91.1 **Form sentences from the words.**

1 get occasionally I early up — I occasionally get up early.
2 me ever phones she hardly
3 have leg my broken never I
4 frequently them I at visit weekends
5 brother often me Sunday calls quite on my
6 summer saw I him rarely the during
7 office always in she the is eight before

91.2 **Replace the underlined adverb with a different adverb that has a similar meaning.**

1 The film was <u>pretty</u> good. rather
2 She <u>hardly ever</u> goes to conferences now.
3 The shops were <u>quite</u> busy.
4 They are two sisters, but they look <u>totally</u> different.
5 I thought the film was <u>a bit</u> disappointing, didn't you?
6 I'm afraid I'm <u>extremely</u> busy next week.
7 We <u>often</u> ask them to turn their music down.

91.3 **Put the two ideas into one sentence by using a suitable adverb.**

1 I walked up the path. I didn't make a noise. I walked up the path quietly.
2 I must speak to her. It's important.
3 I asked him to move his car. I did it in a nice and correct way.
4 I spoke to her. I made sure the others didn't know.
5 He ran out of the room. It was very quick and unexpected.
6 I spoke to her this morning. It was only for a few minutes.

91.4 **Change the underlined adverbs in 1–4 to make them more positive. Change the underlined adverbs in 5–7 to make them less negative.**

1 The play was <u>quite</u> interesting. very
2 I thought they were <u>very</u> good.
3 He's been getting <u>quite</u> good marks in his exams.
4 It's a <u>pretty</u> nice house.
5 John said the flat was <u>very</u> small.
6 They said it was <u>fairly</u> boring.
7 His clothes were <u>very</u> dirty.

91.5 **Over to you**

Make the sentences true for you by adding a suitable adverb, in the correct place.

1 I clean my teeth after breakfast. I always clean my teeth after breakfast.
2 I buy clothes I don't like.
3 I lose things.
4 I forget things.
5 I remember my dreams.
6 I speak to strangers on buses and trains.
7 I give money to people in the street if they ask me.

Now think about each of your answers to the sentences above. Do you think they are:

a) fairly typical? b) slightly unusual? c) quite unusual?

If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

92 Time and sequence

A *When / As soon as*

The meaning of these two time expressions is almost the same, but **as soon as** suggests something more immediate or important.

I'll phone my uncle **when / as soon as** I get home.
As soon as / When you've finished this exercise, you can go home.

Common mistakes
I'll see you **when I get** there. (NOT I'll see you when I ~~will~~ get there.)
We don't use a future form after *when / as soon as*.

B Two things happening at the same time

Carla got ready **while** I cooked the dinner. [two long actions]
The accident happened **while** I was on my way to work. [a longer action 'on my way to work' and a short action 'the accident'; we can also use **when** or **as** here.]
I saw him (**just**) **as** I came out of the office. [two short actions happening at the same time; we can also use **when** here]

C One thing after another

We met the others in the café, and **then / after that / afterwards** we went to the match.
I talked to Joe, and **afterwards** [at a later time but usually the same day] I came home.
I was in Caracas for three months, and **then / after that** I went to Colombia.
After my visit to New York, I decided to have a rest.
We had something to eat **before** going out.

Common mistakes
After **seeing** the film, we went home.
(NOT After ~~see~~ the film, we went home.)

D A sequence* of actions

We had a really nice holiday. **First of all / First** we spent a few days in St Moritz. **After that / Then** we drove down the coast and stayed in Portofino for a week. **Finally**, we went back to Switzerland to stay with my uncle. (*Finally* is used here to introduce the last thing in a list.)

* one action after another, and so on

E *At first ... eventually*

To begin with, the two girls got on very well when they shared the flat. But after **a while** [a period of time], they started arguing about various things, and **eventually** [finally, after a long time or a lot of problems] Beth walked out and found a new place.

At first I enjoyed the classes, but after a while it got a bit boring, and **in the end** [finally, after a period of time or thought] I left.

F A list of reasons

We can use **firstly / for one thing / for a start** to introduce a first reason for something, and then **secondly/besides/anyway** to add a further reason.

A: What's wrong with her new dress?
B: **Firstly**, it's a horrible colour, and **secondly**, I don't think it suits her.

A: Why can't we go out tonight?
B: Well, **for one thing / for a start**, I've got a lot of work – and **besides/anyway**, I can't afford it.

Exercises

92.1 Find five more pairs of words/phrases that are similar in meaning.

~~then~~	for one thing	when	besides	finally	at first	for a start
in the end	~~after that~~	to begin with	as soon as	anyway		

then / after that ....

....

....

92.2 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences. Sometimes both are correct.

1 I rang my mum *when / while* I was waiting for my train.
2 I'll give them your message as soon as I *get / will get* there.
3 Maria cleaned the kitchen *as / while* I did the bathroom.
4 Before *leave / leaving* they went to an exhibition in a little gallery.
5 We can have lunch *when / as soon as* we've finished this.
6 The phone rang *while / just as* I was shutting the front door.
7 We spent the morning in the park and *after that / afterwards* we went home for lunch.
8 The letter arrived *while / just as* we were having lunch.
9 I met the others *when / as* I was on my way to the station.
10 After *to clean / cleaning* my room, I was exhausted.

92.3 Complete the dialogues.

1 A: Why do you want to stay in this evening, when we could go to Karl's party?
B: Well, for one thing , I'd like to watch a programme on TV, and ..... , I don't think it'll be a very good party.
2 A: What did you do in Portugal?
B: Well, ... we flew to Lisbon and spent a few days there. ..... we took the train down to Lagos and spent a week on the Algarve with a couple we met in London. And ..... we went to Faro and flew back from there.
3 A: Did Matt enjoy his time in India?
B: Well, ... I think he found it difficult because the food and weather are so different. But after a ..... he got used to it, and didn't want to come home.
4 A: Why can't the company pay for me to go to the conference?
B: Well, ... the boss doesn't seem to think it's very important, and ..... we're too busy at the moment to give anyone time off work.
5 A: Did the new company do well?
B: Yeah, ... it did very well. But then the manager left, and after a ..... they started losing money. ..... , they had to close down.

92.4 Complete the sentences in a suitable way.

1 We had a game of table tennis and afterwards we went for a drink.
2 I'll give you the answers to this exercise when .....
3 I'll text you as soon as .....
4 I must remember to lock the back door before .....
5 He thinks he dropped the letter as .....
6 I worked with a partner in class. I looked up half of the words while .....
7 We were in a traffic jam for hours but eventually .....
8 If we phone his home, he probably won't be there. Anyway, ...

93 Addition and contrast

A *As well (as), what's more, in addition (to), besides*

We often link ideas using *and*, e.g. The food's nice **and** very good value. There are other words and phrases we also use to add more information. Sometimes we still include *and* or *also*.

The restaurant has excellent food; it's **also** very good value.
You always get a good view, *and* the seats are comfortable **as well.** (*syn* **too**)
As well as getting cheaper tickets, I *also* got the opportunity to buy them in advance.
The clothes are nice, *and* **what's more,** the shop is open every day of the week.
The scheme gives young people experience. **In addition,** companies can afford to employ them.
In addition to the new food department, they're *also* planning to open a café.
Besides being a mum with four children, she's *also* a successful designer.

B *Although, despite, in spite of*

We use these link words when there are two ideas in a sentence, and the second is surprising or not expected. They can be used at the beginning or in the middle of the sentence.

Although / Even though the sun was shining, it wasn't very warm.
We found the place quite easily, **although / even though** we didn't know where it was.
They went for a walk **despite the fact that** it was raining.
Despite having no money, he **still** seemed very happy.
They got there on time **in spite of** the delay.
In spite of all the problems, we **still** enjoyed the trip.

Language help

We can use **still** to emphasise that we didn't expect something to happen or be true, e.g. *He didn't do any work but he **still** passed the exam; The work is very hard, but he **still** enjoys it.*

C *However, yet, though*

We can use **however** and **yet** when the second part of an idea is surprising after the first part. *However* is often used to link ideas in two separate sentences. **Though** can be used in a similar way in spoken English, but usually comes at the end of the sentence. Notice the use of commas (,) here, and the different positions of *however*.

I don't agree with a lot of his methods. **However,** he is a very good teacher.
We didn't particularly like the house. The garden, **however,** was wonderful.
It was warm and sunny when we were there. Most of the time, **however,** it's quite cold.

We went in the autumn, **yet** it was still quite warm.
I didn't like the film much. I'm glad I went to see it, **though.**
They told us the shop was next to the station. We never found it, **though.**

D *While* and *whereas*

We can use **while** and **whereas** to compare two different facts or situations.

Alex is very quick to understand, **whereas/while** the others are quite slow.
I get £20 an hour, **while** Josh only gets £12.
The speed limit on this road is 80kph, **whereas** it's 130kph on the motorway.
I was very keen on the film, **whereas** Ali didn't like it at all.

Exercises

93.1 Put the words into the correct column.

~~in addition~~	although	in spite of	as well	however	also	what's more	despite

words that add more information	words that introduce surprising information
in addition	

93.2 Choose the correct word(s) to complete the sentences. Sometimes both are correct.

1 (Although) / *In spite of* we left late, we still got there in time.
2 She's going on holiday with friends. Her parents, *however / whereas*, are not very happy about it.
3 We decided to work *in spite of / despite* the fact we were on holiday.
4 They enjoyed the course, *even though / as well* it was very difficult.
5 I told John the car was too expensive. *However / Although*, he still bought it.
6 Most people tried to help us. They were very friendly *too / as well*.
7 Ethan spends his time in the library, *while / whereas* the others are always playing football.
8 It was a fantastic evening, *although / despite* the terrible food.

93.3 Combine parts from each column to form five short texts.

She went to school today	in spite of	she was never happy in the job.
She always worked hard in class,	although	she is very experienced.
She has the ability to do the job.	However,	the help I gave her.
She didn't pass the exam	whereas	she didn't feel very well.
She worked there for ten years.	What's more,	most of her classmates were lazy.

She went to school today although she didn't feel very well.

93.4 Complete the sentences.

1 People say the hotel is very good. It's also quite cheap.
2 ..... the fact that they were busy, they ..... helped us.
3 It's not the best dictionary you can buy. ..... , it's better than nothing.
4 She managed to get there, ... she didn't have a map like the others.
5 ..... heavy rain, they've also had very strong winds.
6 She's the youngest in the group, and she's better than most of them ..... .
7 I think you can do it. It won't be easy, ...
8 I was right at the back at the concert, ... I could ..... hear everything.

93.5 Complete the sentences in a suitable way.

1 Although it's an old skirt, I still like it. (OR it still looks nice.)
2 My parents get up at 7.30, whereas .....
3 We enjoyed the holiday in spite of .....
4 If you buy a season ticket, you can travel as often as you like. What's more, ...
5 The exam was very difficult. However, ...
6 I understood what she was saying, although .....
7 My uncle is nearly 70, but he still .....

94 Reason, purpose, result, condition

A Reason

I went home early **because** I was feeling tired.
As/Since I was feeling tired, I went home early. (We don't usually start a sentence with *because*.)
I was feeling tired, **so** I went home early. (This is very common in spoken English.)
The reason I went home early **was that** I was feeling tired.

We can also use **because of** with a different construction. Compare:
They go there **because** the weather is wonderful. (because + noun + verb)
They go there **because of** the wonderful weather. (because of + (adjective) + noun)

Due to means the same as **because of**, and is often used to explain the reason for a problem.
The plane was late **due to** bad weather. (**Due to** is often used after the verb *be*.)

Common mistakes

It's a pity you can't go on holiday **because** Chiclayo is very nice. (NOT It's a pity you can't go on holiday ~~because of~~ Chiclayo is very nice.)
We moved house **because of** my father's work. (NOT We moved house ~~because~~ my father's work.)

B Purpose

A **purpose** is an intention or reason for doing something.
The **purpose of** the meeting is to plan next year's timetable. [the reason *for* the meeting]

We often introduce a purpose using **so (that)** or **(in order) to**:
I bought this book **so (that)** I **could** improve my English.
They went home early **(in order) to** watch the match on television.
We moved house **so (that)** we **could** send our children to this school.
She went into town **(in order) to** do some shopping.

C Result

These link words/phrases are used when one thing happens because another thing has happened. **Therefore** and **as a result** are more formal than **so**, and less common in spoken English.
I left my ticket at home, **so** I had to buy another one.
They've got more money, and **therefore** they can afford to buy the best football players.
I forgot to send the email. **As a result,** no one knew about the meeting.

D Conditions

We sometimes use **whether** [if] when we are not sure about something.
I didn't buy it because I wasn't sure **whether** you'd like it.
I spoke to the others, but I don't know **whether** they're coming.

We'll be late **unless** we leave now. [if we don't leave now]
Unless the weather improves [if the weather doesn't improve], we won't be able to go.

I have to go now, **otherwise** [because if I don't] I'll miss the last bus.
You'll have to turn up the music, **otherwise** [because if you don't] they won't be able to hear it.

You can borrow it **as long as** you bring it back by Thursday. [but you *must* bring it back]
You can wear what you like **as long as** you look quite smart. [but you *must* look quite smart]

I'm taking my umbrella **in case** it rains. [I'm doing A because B might happen later.]
Take some money **in case** you need to get a taxi.

Exercises

94.1 Rewrite the sentences using *because of*. Make any necessary changes.

1 I couldn't play because my arm was broken. I couldn't play because of my broken arm.
2 Teresa got the job because her exam results were good. .....
3 The weather was terrible, so we couldn't eat outside. .....
4 As she had a cold, she didn't go to school. .....
5 The light was bad, so the referee stopped the game. .....
6 The traffic was terrible; I was late. .....
7 He's only 17, and therefore he can't vote. .....

94.2 Complete the sentences.

1 I must write that letter now, otherwise I'll forget to do it.
2 I'll take some sandwiches with me ..... I get hungry.
3 We agreed to buy my daughter a dog ..... she takes it for a walk every day.
4 I left early ..... miss the rush-hour traffic.
5 My girlfriend didn't feel very well. ..... , we left the party quite early.
6 ..... there's a problem, I won't disturb you.
7 You can borrow my dictionary ..... you bring it back on Monday.
8 You'd better tidy your room, ... your mother will be angry.
9 I sent Luiza an invitation, but I don't know ..... she's coming.
10 The ..... I didn't ring you was that I'd lost your phone number.

94.3 Complete the memo.

To: All staff
From: Daniel Myers
Date: 09 August
Subject: Temporary roadworks

From next Monday, the council are closing both approach roads to the factory. The [1] purpose of this, I believe, is to install new gas pipes. [2] ..... this will create long delays, could I please ask staff to leave home a few minutes early in the morning [3] ..... everyone gets here on time. The roadworks also mean that you won't be able to park on the street, and [4] ..... it may be a good idea to leave your cars at home [5] ..... it is absolutely impossible for you to use public transport.

I haven't been told [6] ..... the roadworks will continue for the whole week, but I will let you know as soon as possible, and I apologise for the inconvenience.

Daniel Myers
Office manager

94.4 **Over to you**

Complete the sentences in a way that is true for you.

I want to improve my English because .....
I don't know whether my English .....
I often need to write words down in my notebook, otherwise I .....
I don't get many opportunities to practise my English, therefore .....
Speaking English may be important in order to .....

95 Formal and informal English

A Formal English

Formal English is more common in writing, but you will also hear examples in more formal spoken English, e.g. announcements, speeches, television news, or discussions.

NOTICE IN CAFE: Only food **purchased** [bought] here may be eaten **on the premises** [here].

POLICE STATEMENT: The man is being questioned **regarding** [about] the robbery last night.

BUSINESS LETTER: I **regret to inform you** [I am sorry to say] that we are unable to ...

THEATRE ANNOUNCEMENT: The play will **commence** [start] in two minutes.

INFORMATION NOTICE: If you **require** [need] **further assistance** [more help], please contact the above address.

STATION ANNOUNCEMENT: The next train to **depart** [leave] from platform 7 will be the 7:22 to Reading.

FORMAL LETTER: We are not in a position to **grant** [give or allow] you a visa to this country.

AIRPORT ANNOUNCEMENT: Will passengers for Miami please **proceed to** [go to] gate 36.

B Informal English

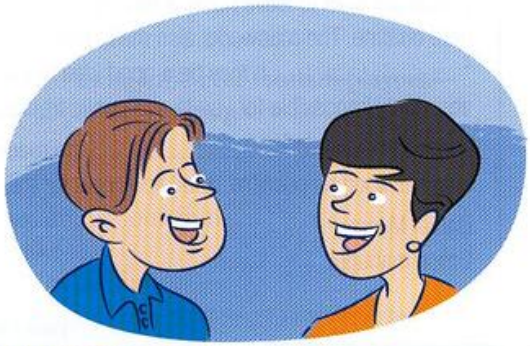
Informal language is more common in spoken English, and also in most emails or letters to friends. The words and phrases in **bold** in these dialogues are all informal.

A: Who's Callum?
B: A **mate** [a friend] of mine.
A: Really?
B: Yeah, I see him **quite a bit** [often]; he's a nice **bloke** [man].

A: Toby, I'm afraid I can't **make it** [come] this evening.
B: Oh, that's a shame.
A: Yeah, I'm sorry, but **the thing is** [the problem is], Ella's not well, so I'll have to look after the **kids** [children].
B: OK, don't worry. There will still be twelve **or so** [about twelve] at the meeting, and I'll ring you later and let you know what happens.
A: **Cheers** [thanks]. That would be great.

A: **I bet** [I'm sure] you're hungry.
B: Yes, **I'm dying for** something to eat. [want to eat something very much]
A: Well, I think you'll find some **stuff** in the fridge.

A: What **are you up to** this evening? [What are you doing?]
B: Nothing much. Why?
A: Well, would you like to see the new Coen Brothers film? I've heard it's **great.** [very good; *syn* **terrific**]
B: Really? My brother saw it and said it was **a load of rubbish.** [terrible]



Language help

We often use the uncountable noun **stuff,** especially in spoken English, to refer to an uncountable noun or a group of things. We do this when others know what we are talking about, or if we don't need to be exact.
Put this **stuff** in the cupboard. [e.g. plates, food, toys]
We carried our camping **stuff**. [equipment]
What's this **stuff** in the fridge in the blue bottle? [liquid]

Exercises

95.1 Put the words into the correct column on the right.

~~depart~~	mate
cheers	commence
regarding	terrific
purchase	bloke
proceed to	kids

formal	informal
depart	

95.2 Now write a synonym for each of the words in 95.1.

depart	leave	mate	
cheers		commence	
regarding		terrific	
purchase		bloke	
proceed to		kids	

95.3 Replace the underlined words and phrases with more informal words or phrases.

1 I'm sure your parents are pleased? I bet .....
2 I'd love to come, but the problem is, my mother wants us to go and see her. .....
3 I watched that new series on TV last night. It was absolutely terrible. .....
4 What are you doing this weekend? .....
5 I really want something to drink. .....
6 None of them can come on Monday. .....
7 Jamie is a friend of mine. .....
8 We go there often. .....
9 You can leave all those books, files and papers on the desk. .....
10 We should be able to get approximately 40 on the coach. .....

95.4 Rewrite the underlined parts of this letter in more suitable formal English.

1 regarding .....
2 .....
.....
3 .....
4 .....
.....

Dear Mr Collins

We are writing about[1] your application to the council for a disabled parking space outside your home. We're sorry to say[2] that we are unable to allow[3] this request as parking is the sole responsibility of the Highways Agency.

We suggest that if you need more help[4], you should contact them on 01727 717 317.

95.5 Dictionaries will tell you if a word is *formal* or *informal/spoken*. Use your dictionary to find out if the underlined words here are *formal* or *informal/spoken*. What do they mean?

1 I thought the film was a drag.
2 Smoking isn't permitted.
3 It's a scary film.
4 This watch cost fifty quid.

96 Completing forms and CVs

A Types of form

- a **registration form** — where you enter your name on an official list, e.g. at a school or college (also called an **enrolment form** when you are applying to do a course of study)
- an **entry form** — if you want to enter for an exam, e.g. Cambridge First Certificate
- a **landing card** — for people from some countries when they enter the UK
- a **visa application form** — when you make an official request to enter or leave some countries

B Language of forms

When you **fill in** [complete] a form, you will see that they often have more formal expressions. In spoken English, ideas may be expressed differently.

written	spoken
date of birth	= When were you born?
place of birth	= Where were you born?
country of origin	= Where do you come from?
marital status	= Are you single or married?
date of arrival	= When did you arrive?
date of departure	= When are you leaving? OR When did you leave?
signed	= Write your **signature** [the special way you have of writing your own name]

C Curriculum vitae

If you **apply for** a job, you need to send a letter and a **CV** (**curriculum vitae** or **résumé** in American English), which should give:

- **personal details** [information about you such as your name, address, email address, etc.]
- details about your **education** and **qualifications**, e.g. university degree, teaching certificate, etc.
- your **work experience** [the jobs you have done]
- your **interests** [what you enjoy doing]
- **skills** [abilities you have learned and practised, e.g. ability to speak a foreign language]
- **career aims** [what you want to do in your future working life]
- names of people who will give you a **reference** [a letter written by someone who knows you which says if you are suitable for a particular job]

If you **apply to** university, they **require** [need; *fml*] a **personal statement** in which you must explain why you want to go to this university; why you want to follow this particular course; details of your educational background; your skills; your interests.

D Tips for writing a CV or personal statement

A **tip** is a useful piece of advice. Here are some tips for writing a CV or personal statement.

- A CV should be no longer than two pages; a personal statement no more than 45 lines of text.
- **Type** your CV or personal statement (**handwriting** is not suitable).
- Keep it simple. Don't make it **complicated.** [difficult to understand]
- Check there are no mistakes.
- Make sure the information you give is **relevant** [connected to and useful for the particular job]. For example, if you are going to be working **on your own** [without others], don't say that you are good at working **in a team** [with a group of people].

Exercises

96.1 **What forms do you have to complete in these situations?**

1 You are just arriving in Britain and you come from a country outside the European Union. A landing card
2 You are applying to do an English course at a school in Britain. .....
3 You are going to do a Cambridge exam. .....
4 You want to travel to the United States this summer. .....

96.2 **Write these sentences in more informal English.**

1 What was your date of arrival? When did you arrive/get here?
2 What's your date of birth? .....
3 What's your country of origin? .....
4 What's your marital status? .....
5 What's your date of departure? .....

96.3 **Match the words on the left with the information on the right.**

1 personal details	[c]	a I would like to become a radio producer.
2 education	[ ]	b Trainee at Northern Radio Station, Jan–June 2007
3 qualifications	[ ]	c Leona Phillips, 18 Mansion Road, Beckington BE2 3RJ
4 work experience	[ ]	d I direct plays for a theatre group, and help with a children's charity.
5 career aims	[ ]	e letter from Mr J. Tobin BA, MA (University tutor)
6 interests	[ ]	f BA Honours degree in Media Studies
7 references	[ ]	g Kent University 2007–2010, Ainslie Grammar School 1999–2006

96.4 **Answer *correct* or *incorrect*.**

1 It's OK to make one or two mistakes in my CV. incorrect
2 I need to type my CV. .....
3 It's OK if my CV is three pages long. .....
4 My CV should be complicated. .....
5 For an admin job, it is relevant to say I have computer skills. .....
6 I can put down a driving licence as one of my skills. .....
7 I can put down travelling abroad as a career aim. .....

96.5 **Replace the underlined words with a word or phrase that has a similar meaning.**

1 Do I have to complete this form? fill in
2 Monica gave me a useful piece of advice about shopping in America. .....
3 I shall be alone most of the time. .....
4 They sent the form back to me because I didn't write my signature at the bottom. .....
5 Please contact us if you need any more help. .....
6 I think I'm good at working as part of a group of people. .....

96.6 **Over to you**

Answer the questions. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

1 Have you ever written a CV? If so, what information did it include?
2 Have you had to write a personal statement? If so, why?
3 On a CV, what would you put as your interests, your skills, and your career aims?

97 Writing an essay

A The basis of a discursive essay*

In a discursive essay you have to express your own ideas and **point of view** [opinion]. It is also important to show that you understand **both sides of an argument** [reasons **for** something and reasons **against** something]. This means you need to understand and use different link words and phrases such as **in addition, however,** etc. (See Unit 93.)

* an essay that discusses a subject

B Expressing a point of view

Some people believe [Some people think] that no one should be sent to prison under the age of 18.
There is **an argument** [a reason to think] that everyone should have a university education.

Language help

You can express a personal point of view with phrases such as **I believe/think that ...** or **It seems to me that ...** but you can also use less personal and direct ways of expressing a point of view, as in the phrases on the left. Many people think it is better not to use *In my opinion* in written essays.

C Giving both sides of an argument

One of the advantages of being an only child is that you have more attention from your parents. **However,** it can be lonely without the company of brothers and sisters.

On the one hand, computers can do so many things faster than human beings. **On the other (hand),** some people are becoming dependent on them, which is not a good thing.

D Comparing and contrasting*

We often **make comparisons** between groups of people, or between the past and the present.
Compared with/to my grandparents, I have had much more opportunity to travel abroad.
In the past people didn't have computers, **but nowadays** there is one in almost every home.
Most parts of the developed world have become richer in the last thirty years. **In contrast,** many countries in Africa have become much poorer.

* saying how two things are similar and how they are different

E Making generalisations

Sometimes a simple statement is not accurate, e.g. *Young people prefer to watch American films*. This is not true for *all* young people, so we use certain words and phrases to show that we are **making a generalisation** [saying that something is true most of the time or in most situations].
In general, Japanese society is more focused on groups than individuals. (*syn* **on the whole**)
Teenagers **tend to** have [usually have] more freedom than in the past.

F Cause and effect*

Poor diet and lack of exercise are the main **causes of obesity.** [reasons for being very fat]
Obesity is often the **result of** a bad diet and not enough exercise.
People don't eat the right food or get enough exercise, and **consequently** [because of this; *syn* **as a result**] they put on weight.
Poor diet can cause obesity, and this can have a bad **effect on** people's health.

* how something happens, and then makes something else happen

Language help

Don't confuse the verb **affect** and the noun **effect**.
*Pollution can **affect** people's breathing.*
*Pollution can **have an effect on** people's breathing.*

Exercises

97.1 **Match the definitions on the left with the examples on the right.**

1 expressing a point of view	[c]	a Canada has a smaller population than the USA.
2 making a comparison	[ ]	b People tend to retire at a later age.
3 describing the result of something	[ ]	c Some people believe we should never go to war.
4 showing both sides of an argument	[ ]	d Animals die because we're cutting down the forest.
5 making a generalisation	[ ]	e Television can make children lazy. However, there are many programmes with real educational value.

97.2 **One word is missing in each sentence. What is it, and where should it go?**

1 It seems me that there is a problem. *to*
2 One of the advantages studying law is that it should lead to a good career.
3 It is important to give sides of the argument.
4 Too much time spent in front of a television can have a bad effect children.
5 People like to have freedom of choice. On the other, too much choice can be a bad thing.
6 Time tends go faster as you get older.

97.3 **Choose the correct word to complete the sentences. Sometimes both are correct.**

1 There is not enough food, and *consequently* / *on the other hand* people are dying.
2 Advertising is so powerful that it *causes* / *affects* people to buy things they don't want. *In addition* / *However*, it can help them make the right choice when they buy things.
3 *In general* / *On the whole* people have more access to education than fifty years ago.
4 Supermarkets are very convenient because you can buy almost everything you want. On the other *side* / *hand*, they are putting small shops out of business.
5 The north of the country is much richer compared *with* / *to* the south.

97.4 **Complete part of this essay on the advantages and disadvantages of the Internet for children.**

One of the [1] advantages of the Internet is that children have access to so much knowledge and information. [2] ..... , many children can access this knowledge from their own homes; they don't have to go to libraries. [3] ..... , some of the information on the Internet is unreliable and out-of-date, and there are some websites we would not want our children to look at. [4] ..... , we need to control the way that our children use the Internet, and there is certainly an [5] ..... for much stricter controls on the websites that people are allowed to create. If we don't do this, the Internet could have a bad [6] ..... on children.

97.5 **Rewrite the sentences following the instructions in (brackets).**

1 People who drink and drive should go to prison. (*Show that this is a personal opinion.*)
I believe that people who drink and drive should go to prison.
2 People are conservative. (*Make this statement a generalisation.*)
.....
3 Cars should not be allowed in town centres. (*Make this opinion less personal.*)
.....
4 Children played on their bikes. Children spend most of their time in front of a computer. (*Make this a comparison between the past and the present in one sentence.*)
.....
5 Many people work longer and longer hours. They don't have time for hobbies. (*Show the connection between these two statements in one sentence.*)
.....

98 Formal letters

A A formal letter

10 Baldwyn Gardens
Ealing
London W5 8PR

8 August

Dear Sir or Madam[1]

I am writing[2] **in response to**[3] your advertisement about job opportunities for **graduates**[4]. I have just completed a degree in Economics at Durham University, and **I would be grateful if you could**[5] send me further **details**[6] of the graduate training schemes you mention. I am **available**[7] **for** interview at any time.

I look forward to hearing from you.[8]

Yours faithfully[9]

Nicole Drew [10]

Nicole Drew

[1] use this beginning if you don't know the person's name
[2] This is a common way to start a letter.
[3] in reply to
[4] people with a university degree
[5] this is slightly more polite/formal than **Please could you …**
[6] information about something (plural noun)
[7] free
[8] This sentence is often used to close a letter when you expect a reply.
[9] Use this ending if you don't know the name of the person you are writing to. If you know the name, end the letter with **Yours sincerely**, or **Kind regards**.
[10] Writing your name like this in a particular way is a **signature**. It is normal at the end of a formal letter to **sign** your name first [write your signature], and then print it, e.g. Nicole Drew.

B Useful words and phrases

Thank you for your letter **regarding** [about] the damage to your vehicle.
I regret to inform you [I am sorry to say] that your **application** [official request for something] has not been successful.
I am pleased to inform you that your application has been successful. [I am happy to say]
I am writing to **enquire about** English courses at your school. [ask about]
You will need to **confirm** the booking **in writing**. [write to say that the booking is certain]
We would like to **thank you for** offering your **support**. [say thank you for offering your help]
We would like to **apologise for** [say sorry for] the **delay** [when something arrives later than expected]. OR **Please accept our apologies for** the delay.
I **enclose** a cheque for £100. [I am sending a cheque for £100 in the same envelope as this letter.]

Exercises

98.1 Correct seven more mistakes in the letter.

Dear ~~sir~~ Sir or Madame

I write with response to your advertisement for trainees in yesterday's newspaper, and I would be greatful if you could send me further detail.

I look forward to hear from you.

Kind regards,

Michael Ridley

Michael Ridley

98.2 Finish the sentences.

1 If you don't know the person you are writing to, you start *Dear Sir or Madam*
2 If you would like more information, you ask for further .....
3 A common way of closing a letter is *I look forward* .....
4 If you don't know the person you are writing to, you end *Yours* .....
5 If you know the name of the person, you can end *Yours* .....
6 Another way of ending a letter is *Kind* .....
7 At the end of the letter you also write your .....

98.3 Rewrite the phrases and sentences in more formal English, starting with the words given. Keep a similar meaning.

1 Thanks for the letter about the fire.	Thank you for your letter *regarding the fire.*
2 I'm sorry to tell you ...	I .....
3 I'm happy to tell you ...	I am .....
4 Are you free on Wednesday?	Are you .....
5 I want to ask about the dates of the course.	I would like to .....
6 We want to say sorry for the delay.	Please accept .....
7 Please send me the details.	I would be .....
8 Could you say that's definite in a letter?	Could you .....
9 I'm sending a copy of my CV.	I .....

98.4 Complete the letter.

[1] *Dear* ..... Mr Wilkinson,

I am [2] ..... in [3] ..... to your letter of 10 February [4] ..... the delivery of the Maxwell dining table and four chairs that you ordered.

In the middle of January there was a fire at the factory and it had to close down for almost a week. The recent heavy snow has caused further problems, and coming so soon after the busy Christmas period, we [5] ..... to inform you that there are [6] ..... of up to four weeks on most orders.

We promise to do everything we can to speed up deliveries, but in the meantime we would like to [7] ..... for the obvious inconvenience this has caused.

Yours [8] ..... ,

James Porter

James Porter
Customer services manager

99 Informal emails and letters

A An email

[1] We can begin an informal email or letter with **Hi** Beth, **Hello** Beth, or **Dear** Beth.

[2] a funny person

[3] planning or intending to

[4] make contact, e.g. by phone, email or text

[5] want (to see) *infml*

[6] say hello to Conrad from me; also **send my regards to** Conrad. With family members and very close friends we also say **give/send my love to.**

[7] again, as before (here it is used to say thank you one more time)

[8] We can end an informal email/letter to a close friend or family member with **Love** or **Lots of love.** We also often use **Best wishes** or **All the best** when we end a letter or email to a friend.

B A letter

8 Daniel Street
Bath BA1 2PH

Dear Rob

I know it's ages[1] since[2] I last got in touch, but I wanted to let you know[3] that I'm hoping to spend a few days in Birmingham in two weeks' time[4] - actually[5] just before your birthday. I thought we could get together[6] and go out for a meal. And if it's OK with you, perhaps Mark could join us[7] as well.

Anyway[8], it would be great to see you. If you haven't got my mobile number, it's 07732 268024.

Best wishes,
Sean

Language help

We can use **actually** to give more exact information, as in the letter (*syn* **in fact**). We also use it a great deal in spoken English to say something which is surprising or different from what you expect, e.g. He looks Italian, but **actually** he's not. (*Syn* **in fact**) **Actually** does *not* mean *at the moment*, e.g. *The land is* ***currently*** *for sale* (NOT The land is ~~actually~~ for sale).

[1] a long time
[2] from a time in the past until now
[3] tell you
[4] two weeks from now
[5] (see Language help)
[6] meet for a social reason
[7] come with us
[8] used to change the subject or end a conversation/letter

Exercises

99.1 Find five more phrases using words from the box.

~~in~~	give	~~be~~	once	best	let	in	to	again	you
week's	~~touch~~	my	a	regards	time	wishes	know		

be in touch ....

....

....

99.2 Write these phrases in different ways. The phrases can be similar but don't repeat exactly the same words.

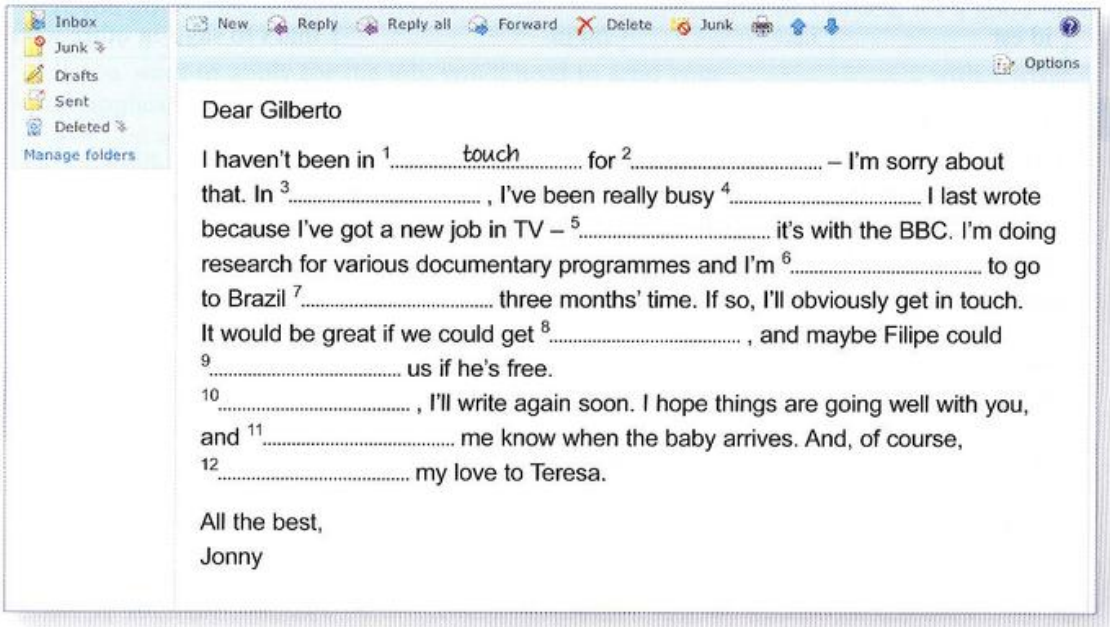
1 Hello Julie Hi ..... Julie
2 Hello Mark ..... Mark
3 Give my love to Patricia ..... Patricia
4 Love, Trudie ..... , Trudie
5 Best wishes, Sam ..... , Sam

99.3 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals. Keep a similar meaning.

1 Do you want to come with us?	JOIN	Do you want to join us? .....
2 Do you want to go?	FANCY	Do you .....
3 I'll write soon.	TOUCH	I'll .....
4 It looks new, but actually it isn't.	FACT	It looks new, but .....
5 I'll tell you as soon as possible.	LET	I'll .....
6 I'm going three weeks from now.	IN	I'm going .....
7 Jamie is very funny.	LAUGH	Jamie is .....
8 Let's meet for lunch.	GET	Let's .....
9 I haven't written for ages.	SINCE	It's .....

99.4 Complete the email with words from the box.

~~touch~~	join	fact	together	hoping	in
let	since	give	ages	actually	anyway



100 Abbreviations

A Letters or words?

Most abbreviations are spoken as individual letters.

EU	European Union
UN	United Nations
PM	Prime Minister
MP	Member of Parliament
BBC	British Broadcasting Corporation
ID	identification, e.g. Do you have an ID card?
PC	personal computer
CV	curriculum vitae [a history of your job experience]
ISP	Internet Service Provider

Occasionally abbreviations are spoken as words, e.g. **AIDS** /eɪdz/ and **PIN** /pɪn/ [personal identification number, especially used with a bank/credit card]

Language help

We use the verb **stand for** to ask about the meaning of an abbreviation.
A: **What does** EU **stand for?**
B: European Union.

B Written forms only

Some abbreviations are written forms only, but pronounced as full words.

Mr Scott [mister Scott]
Mrs Bryant [misses Bryant]
Dr Chapman [doctor Chapman]
St Mark's Church [Saint Mark's Church]
Dean **St** [Dean Street]

C Abbreviations as part of the language

Some abbreviations (from Latin) are used as part of the language.

Latin	abbreviation	pronunciation	meaning
et cetera	etc.	/et 'setərə/	and so on
exempli gratia	e.g.	/iː'dʒiː/	for example
id est	i.e.	/aɪ'iː/	that's to say / in other words

D Shortened words

Some common English words can be shortened, especially in spoken English. In some cases, the shorter form is more common and the full form sounds quite formal, e.g. refrigerator, influenza, gymnasium and veterinary surgeon.

phone (telephone)
maths (mathematics)
board (blackboard)
case (suitcase)
ad/advert (advertisement)
gym (gymnasium)
bike (bicycle)
TV/telly (television)
paper (newspaper)
fridge (refrigerator)
exam (examination)
plane (aeroplane)
photo (photograph)
flu (influenza) [illness like a cold but more serious]
lab (laboratory) [special room where scientists work]
sales rep [sales representative; *syn* **salesperson**]
vet (veterinary surgeon)

Exercises

100.1 Are these sentences correct or incorrect? If a sentence is incorrect, change it to make it correct.

1 ISP stands for Internet Service Player. Incorrect. It's Internet Service Provider.
2 BBC stands for British Broadcasting Company. .....
3 MP stands for Minister of Parliament. .....
4 PC stands for personal computer. .....
5 UN stands for Unified Nations. .....
6 ID stands for identification. .....
7 CV stands for curricular vitae. .....

100.2 What abbreviations in written English are often used for these words or phrases?

1 Mister Mr.....
2 for example .....
3 and so on .....
4 Street .....
5 in other words .....
6 Saint .....
7 Doctor .....

100.3 Rewrite this note, making it more informal by using short forms where possible.

Luke

Olly had a ~~mathematics~~ maths examination this afternoon and then had to take his bicycle to the repair shop, so he'll probably be a bit late home. You can watch television while you're waiting for him, and please help yourself to anything in the refrigerator. If there's a problem – for example, if Doctor Brown rings about the influenza vaccination, my telephone number is next to the photographs on the dining room table. I should be home myself by about five.

Pam (Olly's mum)

100.4 Complete the sentences with suitable words, shortened words or abbreviations.

1 It was a warm day, so I put the milk and butter in the fridge.....
2 He didn't want to walk, so he went on his .....
3 If you go to Mediterranean islands, ... Sardinia or Corsica, it's a good idea to hire a car.
4 If you want to apply for the job, you'll need to send your ..... with a letter of application.
5 The dog was sick, so we had to take her to the .....
6 In that shop on the corner you can get books, pens, writing paper, ...
7 I took my large bag with me on the plane, but I didn't have a .....
8 When I sold my CDs, I put an ..... in the paper and had three replies the same day.
9 If you use the cashpoint, remember you'll need your ..... number.
10 What does MP ..... for?
11 We did some experiments in the chemistry .....
12 My uncle is a sales .....

100.5 Here are some more abbreviations. What does each one stand for, and where will you see them?

PTO ..... RSVP ..... asap .....
IMO ..... DOB ..... PS .....

Answer key

Unit 1

1.1 *Your own answers*

1.2 *Your own answers*

1.3 *Your own answers*

1.4 2 temporary 3 cruel/unkind 4 rough 5 exit/way out 6 alive 7 refuse

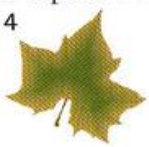
1.5
2 argument
3 revision
4 choose
5 expansion
6 difference; differ
7 communication; communicative

1.6 *Your own answers*

Unit 2

2.1

food	garden	numbers
diet, lay the table, flour, raw, butcher, frozen, e.g. *frozen peas*	branch, dig, ground, leaf, butterfly, frozen, e.g. *the ground is frozen*	count, add up, minus, thousand, zero

2.2 *Possible answers:*
2 translation
3 a person who sells meat
4

5 translation
6 put plates, knives, forks, etc. on a table before a meal
7 translation is probably the easiest way
8 six minus four is two (6-4 = 2)

2.3
2 (synonym) A synonym for *awful* is *dreadful*.
3 (opposite) The opposite of *necessary* is *unnecessary*.
4 (word partner and part of speech) You *translate* something *into* another language; the noun is *translation*.
5 (meanings) *Tip* has two meanings: a piece of advice, and money you give a waiter for serving you.
6 (grammar and part of speech) *Enjoy* is followed by an *-ing* form; the noun is *enjoyment*, the adjective is *enjoyable*.

2.4 *Your own answers*

Unit 3

3.1
2 really
3 unfortunately
4 especially
5 clothes
6 comfortable
7 accommodation
8 beautiful
9 unbelievable
10 necessary

3.2 1 knee (k) 2 comb (b) 3 castle (t) 4 salmon (l) 5 receipt (p)

3.3 2 amount 3 behave 4 official 5 emphasise 6 relating to

3.4 2 The 'z' spelling is usual in American English, but both are possible in British English.
3 an adverb
4 uncountable
5 on
6 She's an **old** friend; he's my **best** friend; you **make** friends with people. You may also have found these common word partners (a **close** friend, a friend **of mine**)

3.5 1 definition 3 2 definition 1 3 definition 4 4 definition 2

Unit 4

4.1

parts of speech	punctuation	pronunciation
noun, adjective, adverb, preposition	comma, question mark, full stop	phonemic symbol, stress, syllable

4.2
2 **in** Seville (preposition)
3 **took/got** a train (verb)
4 **a** beautiful city (indefinite article)
5 **expensive** hotel (adjective)
6 **of** money (preposition)
7 wonderful **hotel/place** (noun)
8 **to** Spain (preposition)
9 **never** stays (adverb)
10 if **I** have (pronoun)

4.3
2 a capital letter
3 a full stop
4 a question mark
5 a comma
6 uncountable noun
7 phrasal verbs
8 punctuation
9 with (phonemic) symbols
10 late

4.4
'English 2 in'formal 3 'opposite 3 'syllable 3
de'cide 2 'adjective 3 edu'cation 4 pronunci'ation 5

4.5 2 cheaply; dangerously 3 find 4 un- 5 -ness

Unit 5

5.1
2 Thai
3 Spanish
4 Israel
5 China
6 Portuguese
7 Arabic
8 German
9 England/the UK, the USA, Australia
10 (Swiss) German, French, Italian

5.2
2 Asia / the Far East
3 the Middle East
4 Europe
5 the Caribbean
6 South America

5.3 Chinese; Japan; Portuguese; Egyptian; Australia; Arabic; Saudi Arabia; Scandinavia

5.4 2 Turkey 3 South Korea 4 Russia 5 Argentina 6 Greece

5.5
2 Germans
3 the Japanese
4 Israelis
5 Brazilians
6 the British
7 The Swiss
8 Russians

5.6 *Possible answers:*

1 I'm French.
2 The capital of France is Paris. I think the population of France is about 60 million.
3 French.
4 I can speak Italian and English.
5 I have visited Germany, Spain, Italy and the UK.
6 I don't know the Far East, so I would like to visit China and Japan.

Unit 6

6.1 2 in the west
3 in the south-west
4 in the north-east
5 in the north-west
6 in the north-east
7 in the south

6.2 2 coldest place on Earth / in the world
3 hottest place on Earth / in the world
4 Cave
5 Canal
6 waterfall
7 rainforest in the world
8 ocean
9 planet

6.3 2 covered
3 regions
4 contrasts
5 covers
6 landscape
7 temperature
8 consists
9 Earth
10 climate
11 distance; distance
12 minus; degrees

6.4 *Possible answers:*

1 In England, 30 °C is about the highest; minus 5 degrees is about the lowest during the day.
2 I like the fact it isn't too hot or too cold, but I would like more sun and less rain.
3 It's flatter in the east, and there are more hills in the west. There is also an area in the north of England with some large lakes. There are more mountains in Scotland.
4 We have a number of long canals, and lots of caves. We don't have any famous waterfalls.
5 It's very hilly, with several large rivers nearby.
6 I live in a medium-sized town which is ten miles from Bristol.

Unit 7

7.1 2 f 3 g 4 c 5 a 6 b 7 d

7.2 2 It's snowing. 3 It's cloudy. 4 It's raining. 5 It's icy. 6 It's sunny.

7.3 2 False. It's not nice to sit outside when it's freezing. / It's nice to sit outside when it's warm.
3 True
4 False. A shower is a short period of rain.
5 True
6 False. If it's humid, the air will feel warm and wet.
7 False. A mild winter means it is warmer than usual.
8 True

7.4 2 cold
3 shower
4 pouring
5 degrees; zero; extremely
6 thunderstorm
7 came
8 temperature
9 cool

7.5 *Possible answers for England:*

We sometimes get humid weather in the summer. We occasionally get thick fog in the winter, especially in the morning. We sometimes get storms in winter. Thunderstorms sometimes occur in the summer at the end of a period of hot weather. Temperatures below zero are not common during the day, but do occur at night in the winter. We sometimes get strong winds in the autumn and winter, and showers can be frequent at any time of the year, but especially in the spring.

Unit 8

8.1

farm animals	wild animals	insects
horse, goat, bull, pig, donkey	monkey, elephant, tiger, camel, leopard	fly, bee, mosquito, ant, butterfly

8.2
3 different
4 different
5 same
6 different
7 same
8 different
9 different
10 different

8.3 2 wild 3 cage 4 insects 5 rare 6 protect

8.4
2 Monkeys
3 Camels
4 Whales
5 Giraffes
6 Snakes
7 Elephants
8 Parrots

8.5 *Possible answers:*

1 Yes. I've got a dog called Max.
2 No.
3 I don't like seeing birds in cages, but I can understand why we need to keep some wild animals in zoos.
4 I'm not frightened of animals, but I don't like it when birds get inside the house and fly around the rooms; it's scary!

Unit 9

9.1 DOWN: heel, knee, chest, ankle, chin
ACROSS: cheek, hip, elbow, lip(s), skin

9.2 2 c 3 a 4 f 5 b 6 d

9.3 2 lips 3 chin 4 shoulder 5 waist 6 cheek 7 neck 8 chest

9.4 *Possible answers:*

2 running
3 when someone says something funny
4 when they see someone they know or say goodbye to someone
5 when they have a cold
6 when they mean 'no'
7 when they mean 'yes'
8 when they're sad
9 when they're tired

Unit 10

10.1 2 looking 3 hair 4 shoulders 5 smart 6 height 7 dark

10.2 Your **height** is how **tall** you are.
Your **weight** is how much you **weigh.**
Roughly and **approximately** are similar in meaning.
Medium and **average** are similar in meaning.
Broad and **narrow** are opposite in meaning.
Wavy and **curly** are similar in meaning, and describe hair.

10.3
2 gorgeous
3 attractive/handsome
4 athletic
5 pretty
6 overweight
7 ordinary
8 roughly/approximately
9 tallish

10.4 *Possible answers from a man:*

1 I'm about one metre 78.
2 It's dark brown and quite wavy.
3 My girlfriend is about one metre 68. She's very attractive in my opinion, and she's got short blonde hair, which is straight. I don't know how much she weighs; I wouldn't ask her that.

Unit 11

11.1

positive	negative
nice	unpleasant
generous	mean
sensible	silly
hard-working	lazy
calm	nervous

11.2 2 **un**friendly 3 **un**pleasant 4 **im**patient 5 **dis**honest 6 **un**reliable

11.3

2 mean
3 unreliable
4 patient
5 shy
6 sensible
7 serious
8 calm
9 creative
10 talented

11.4

2 nervous
3 wish
4 lazy
5 humour
6 clever/intelligent
7 trust
8 character
9 stupid
10 kind

11.5 *Possible answers:*

I think I am quite positive (2), very reliable (1), not very confident (3), a bit lazy (4), have quite a good sense of humour (2) and am quite impatient (5).
I would like to be creative and more patient; I would hate to be mean.

Unit 12

12.1 Nouns: jealousy, confusion, disappointment, anxiety
Adjectives: proud, curious, emotional

12.2 2 f 3 d 4 b 5 a 6 e

12.3 scared 6 cheerful 5 upset 3 confused 2 depressed 4

12.4

2 feelings/emotions
3 energetic
4 effect
5 stress
6 mood
7 hopeful
8 frightened/scared

12.5 *Possible answers:*

1 I'm not sure that colour does, but the weather certainly affects me. I feel more positive when the sun is shining, and rain makes me depressed.
2 I think I suffer from stress sometimes at work, or if I have too many things on my mind.
3 I don't think my mood changes much from day to day.
4 I feel more energetic in the evening.

Unit 13

13.1

2 niece
3 nephew
4 sister-in-law
5 brother-in-law
6 elder
7 cousin
8 only

13.2

2 Remarry
3 Relatives/Relations
4 best
5 old
6 Twins
7 Mate
8 Friendship
9 stepfather

13.3 2 married 3 altogether 4 since 5 get on (well) 6 ex

13.4 *Possible answers for Laura, aged 20:*

1 I have an elder sister called Rosie.
2 Yes, very well.
3 No, not especially close, but we all get on well.
4 My cousin Daniel; he got married last year.
5 Anita.
6 I've known her for nine years.
7 We started secondary school at the same time.

Unit 14

14.1

2 early twenties
3 mid-thirties
4 teenager
5 middle-aged
6 elderly
7 retired
8 an adult
9 teens
10 toddler

14.2

2 True
3 False. Her parents were very strict.
4 True
5 False. At first life wasn't easy.
6 False. She managed to get a job in Cardiff.

14.3

2 in the end I did it
3 roughly/about my age
4 nearly thirty now
5 strict
6 allowed to stay up and watch TV
7 brought up in Scotland
8 managed to pass my exams
9 stayed out late
10 let me wear what I liked
11 childhood
12 retired

14.4 *Possible answers:*

1 I was brought up in a town called Dartmouth.
2 It's on the coast and I remember going to the beach a lot with my family and friends.
3 My mum was quite strict, but not my dad. They didn't let me swim in certain places because they thought it was dangerous.
4 Up to the age of 17, I had to be home on the last bus, which was about 11:15. When I learnt to drive, I stayed out later than that.

Unit 15

15.1

I went out with Simon.	3
We got married.	5
I got pregnant three months later.	8
We got engaged.	4
I got to know Simon.	2
Our son was born just after our first anniversary.	9
We went on our honeymoon.	7
I met Simon at a party.	1
We had a big reception.	6

15.2

2 date
3 marriage
4 pregnant
5 anniversary
6 bride; (bride)groom
7 give

15.3

1 couple
2 to know; wedding
3 ceremony; honeymoon
4 left; wrong; his own; divorced / a divorce

15.4 *Possible answers:*

1 I was 14 or 15 and I went to a party with a girl called Yvonne.
2 Yes, it was at university when I was about 20. Her name was Liz and we were together for almost three years.
3 The last wedding I went to was my cousin's, who got married to a man I had never met.
4 I went to a friend's 30th birthday party.

Unit 16

16.1 *Possible answers:*
have a late night / an early night / a sleep / a wash / a shower / a bath / a snack / a light lunch
do the washing / the ironing / the housework / the shopping

16.2 2 h 3 e 4 c 5 f 6 b 7 a 8 d

16.3
2 usually **wakes** me up
3 have a **snack** in the afternoon
4 go **out** on Friday
5 friends **come** round
6 eat **out** at the weekend
7 don't **bother** with a full meal
8 have **cereal** for breakfast
9 housework; **fortunately/luckily** I have a husband
10 I try to reply to them straight **away**

16.4
2 instead
3 stay in
4 early
5 come round
6 takeaway
7 chat

16.5 *Possible answers:*

Similar
1 I usually have a light lunch.
2 I have my main meal in the evening.
3 I sometimes have a bath instead of a shower in the winter.

Different
1 I usually wake up before 7.00 am.
2 I have a shower in the morning.
3 I do my own washing because I don't have a cleaner.

Unit 17

17.1
2 False. They used to live in the centre of town.
3 False. They rent their flat.
4 True
5 False. They live on the second floor.
6 True
7 False. A French couple live upstairs.
8 False. The parents own a cottage.
9 True
10 True

17.2 Positive: air conditioning, character, charming
Negative: dark, no central heating

17.3 2 a lift 3 a balcony 4 a cottage 5 front door 6 steps

17.4
2 on; downstairs
3 space
4 location
5 outskirts
6 balcony
7 heat
8 floor; lift
9 moved
10 light

17.5 *Possible answers:*

I live in a house, which I own, and it's near the centre of town. I've lived here for seven years now. I used to live in a house in London, but I moved because I didn't need to be in London for my job. I've got central heating where I live, but I haven't got air conditioning or a balcony.

Unit 18

18.1
2 in the microwave
3 in the oven
4 in the washing machine
5 in the dishwasher (or sink)
6 in a cupboard
7 in the freezer

18.2
2 sink, in the kitchen
3 curtains, in the living room or the bedroom
4 cushions, in the living room
5 kettle, in the kitchen
6 washbasin, in the bathroom
7 carpet, in the living room or the bedrooms
8 pillow, in the bedroom
9 washing machine, in the utility room or the kitchen
10 cooker, in the kitchen
11 armchair, in the living room
12 tiles, in any room, though more likely in the kitchen or bathroom

18.3
2 wooden
3 choice
4 study
5 share; own
6 spare
7 tap(s)
8 blanket; duvet
9 en suite
10 utility

18.4 *Possible answers:*

1 tiles 2 tiles 3 carpet and a couple of rugs 4 curtains 5 a duvet

18.5 *Possible answers*:

I like big sofas with lots of cushions.
I prefer a wooden floor with rugs.
I have no preference – it depends on the blinds and the curtains.
I prefer a duvet.
I must have two pillows. I can't stand only one pillow.

Unit 19

19.1
2 spill/spilt/spilt
3 burn/burnt/burnt
4 fall over/fell over/fallen over
5 run out/ran out/run out
6 tear/tore/torn
7 hit/hit/hit

19.2 2 h 3 f 4 g 5 c 6 a 7 b 8 e

19.3
2 over
3 clear
4 remove
5 hopeless
6 mood
7 slipped (fell over is also possible)
8 hit
9 fell
10 worse

19.4 *Possible answers:*

2 I dropped it on the floor.
3 I fell over. / I slipped and fell over.
4 There's something wrong with the TV.
5 I forgot it. / I left it at home.
6 It isn't working properly.
7 It's out of order.

19.5 *Possible answers:*

I occasionally drop cups or glasses, usually when I'm drying them.
We run out of bread or milk quite regularly, and I have to go out and buy some.
I fell over in the snow last week, but I don't usually fall over very much.
I sometimes forget people's names, which is embarrassing.
I occasionally burn food.
I don't spill things very often.
I always leave my glasses lying around and then I can't find them when I need them.

Unit 20

20.1 2 No 3 No 4 No 5 Yes 6 Yes 7 Yes 8 No 9 Yes 10 Yes

20.2 2 a bank loan 3 fee(s) 4 cash 5 rent 6 cashpoint 7 currency

20.3
2 She **wasted** the money.
3 I **can't afford** to go.
4 We could **hire** a car.
5 He **charged** us £25.
6 I **owe** a lot of money.
7 I always **check** my account carefully.

20.4 2 account 3 amount 4 earn 5 owe 6 pay (them) back 7 accommodation

20.5 *Possible answers:*

1 Yes, I've had an account for about fifteen years.
2 I don't check my account very often. (see next answer)
3 I get money from a cashpoint about once a week, and I always ask for a receipt so that I know how much is in my account.
4 I had a bank loan to buy my first car – that's all.
5 Yes, I'm saving up for a holiday.
6 Yes, I rent a flat with a friend. We had to pay a deposit of one month's rent.

Unit 21

21.1 3 different 4 different 5 same 6 different 7 same 8 different

21.2 3 a 4 a 5 a 6 – 7 – 8 a 9 – 10 a

21.3
2 sick
3 hurts
4 bandage
5 bleeding
6 suffer
7 aches
8 serious

21.4
people have **heart attacks**
surgeons perform **operations**
tablets/pills are common forms of **medicine**
hepatitis affects the **liver**
people have **sore throats**

21.5 *Possible answers:*

1 I take tablets such as aspirin.
2 I hardly ever get a cough or sore throat.
3 No, I haven't been a patient.
4 I had to go into hospital for a minor operation, but I didn't have to stay overnight.
5 We have various tablets for pain, e.g. paracetamol or Ibuprofen. We usually have different medicines for colds and flu, or for stomach problems.

Unit 22

22.1

Items of clothing	Jewellery	Parts of clothing
boots, top, jumper, scarf, cap, tights	earrings, ring, bracelet, necklace	button, zip, pocket, sleeve, collar

22.2
2 The first woman is wearing a necklace; the second isn't.
3 The first woman has four pockets on her jacket; the second has two.
4 The first woman has two buttons on her jacket sleeve; the second has one.
5 The second woman is wearing earrings; the first isn't.
6 The second woman is wearing a bracelet; the first isn't.

22.3
2 in
3 dressed
4 on
5 suit
6 up
7 into
8 undid
9 rucksack
10 dressed

22.4 *Possible answers for an English woman:*

1 I always wear earrings, and I sometimes wear a ring and a necklace. I don't wear a bracelet very often.
2 I think dark colours suit me best.
3 I prefer to wear casual clothes, but I have to wear smart clothes for work.
4 I hope I look quite stylish, but I'm not sure I do.
5 I never wear a cap, but I sometimes wear a hat.
6 I often wear T-shirts, but I never wear trainers.

Possible answers for an English boy:

1 I hardly ever wear a suit.
2 I don't like wearing ties – but I have to wear one for school.
3 I almost always undo the top button on my shirt – unless I'm cold.
4 I always change into jeans after school.
5 I don't wear a cap or a hat.
6 I wear T-shirts a lot, and I always wear trainers.

Unit 23

23.1 2 different 3 different 4 similar 5 different 6 different 7 similar

23.2

2 fashion	5 good on you	8 dresses
3 with your skirt	6 fit	
4 got on	7 tight	

23.3

2 reasonable	5 changing room	8 serve
3 wardrobe	6 designer labels / designers	
4 fashionable / in fashion	7 shop assistant	

23.4

2 try	5 fit	8 size
3 changing	6 tight	9 suited/suits
4 served	7 shame/pity	10 leave

23.5 *Possible answers for a young man:*

I occasionally shop with a friend but usually on my own.
I always try on shoes and trousers before I buy them, but not shirts.
I sometimes buy clothes that don't suit me, but that's just a mistake. I never buy clothes just because they're fashionable.
If I buy trousers, I don't usually buy a shirt to go with it. But if I buy a jacket, I might buy a shirt to go with it.
My wardrobe does have quite a few things that I hardly ever wear.
I don't buy designer labels unless they're reduced in the sales; the price has to be reasonable.
I like casual clothes. I don't really care whether they're fashionable.
I'm not always happy with what I've got on, but if I'm honest, I don't think about it much.

Unit 24

24.1

2 True
3 True
4 False. Expensive items are on the middle shelves.
5 True
6 True
7 True
8 False. Sometimes you buy more than you need and throw some of it away.

24.2 con'venient 'checkout 'entrance a 'refund re'place 'item

24.3
2 shopping centres
3 street markets
4 street markets
5 shopping centres
6 both, but probably more true of shopping centres

24.4
2 makes; replace
3 throw
4 queue
5 offer
6 entrance
7 range
8 atmosphere
9 likely

24.5 *Possible answers:*

1 I go to a supermarket once a week. I don't like shopping there, but it is convenient.
2 I hardly ever go to shopping centres. I don't like them very much.
3 I go to a small food market once a week. I really like it because you get to know the people who have the stalls and they often sell things which are a bit different.
4 I don't often haggle for things; I'm not very good at it.
5 I take things back to shops if there is something wrong with them, and usually I get a refund.

Unit 25

25.1

1 vegetable: *pea(s)*	fruit: peach, pear, pineapple
2 vegetable: garlic	fruit: grapes
3 vegetable: mushroom	fruit: melon
4 vegetable: spinach	fruit: strawberry
5 vegetable: onion	fruit: olive

25.2 lettuce/chicken, aubergine/tomato, onion/mushroom, prawn/pork, salmon/lamb

25.3
2 cabbage, the others are all used in salad
3 crab, the others are all meat
4 peach, the others are all vegetables
5 broccoli, the others are all types of seafood
6 chicken, the others are all vegetables

25.4 *These are the most likely answers:*

melon: NO grapes: YES peaches: YES or SOMETIMES
pears: YES or SOMETIMES lemon: NO

25.5
1 lamb; veal; pork
2 lettuce
3 oil and vinegar (oil and lemon is also possible)
4 a vegetarian
5 bunch

25.6 *Possible answers for the UK:*

1 Strawberries and pears are more common than pineapple.
2 Lamb and beef are more expensive than pork or chicken.
3 lettuce, tomato and cucumber; sometimes onion and red pepper as well
4 aubergine, red pepper, pineapple, melons, grapes or peaches
5 veal
6 Peaches are my favourite fruit. / Lamb is my favourite meat.

Unit 26

26.1 fry, grill, roast, bake, barbecue

26.2 raw – door; sour – hour; oven – love; pie – lie; saucepan – four

26.3
2 ~~cooker~~ cook
3 ~~fry pan~~ frying pan
4 ~~sour~~ bitter
5 ~~good in~~ good at
6 ~~tastes~~ flavours

26.4

2 chef
3 tasty
4 cooker
5 sour
6 raw
7 delicious; horrible/terrible/unpleasant

26.5

2 ingredients
3 peeled
4 boiled
5 chopped
6 fried
7 added
8 stirred
9 tasted

26.6 *Possible answers for a British person:*

1 We eat a lot of roast beef, baked potatoes and barbecued chicken in the UK. We sometimes eat fried rice but we don't usually eat raw fish unless we go to a Japanese restaurant.
2 I like bitter chocolate, I like spicy food, and I like the taste of garlic. I don't like chocolate-flavoured ice cream very much – I prefer vanilla.
3 The weather isn't good enough in the UK to cook outside on a barbecue very often.
4 I'm not a great cook but I'm quite good at making desserts.

Unit 27

27.1 2 f 3 g 4 a 5 c 6 b 7 h 8 e

27.2

2 It was quiet.
3 It's very dirty.
4 It was very dull/boring.
5 There are disadvantages.
6 There's nowhere to park.

27.3 2 cultural 3 variety 4 night 5 stuck 6 value

27.4

2 exhausted
3 stressed
4 lively
5 pollution
6 hurry
7 park
8 going on
9 get poverty

27.5 *Possible answers for a town in the south of England:*

1 It's quite bad from 8.00 to 9.00 in the morning, and then again from 4.30 to 6.00 pm.
2 It's very good for a medium-sized town: lots of restaurants and bars, a few nightclubs, two or three cinemas, two or three theatres, several concert halls, etc.
3 Yes it is. As well as cinema, theatre and concerts, we have a number of festivals: a literature festival, a jazz festival, a food festival, and lots of cultural talks and lectures you can go to.
4 There is pollution in the town centre because it's between two hills.
5 The crime rate isn't bad because it is quite a rich town, and I feel safe at night.
6 Living in my town has lots of advantages. There are lots of things to do, like go to the cinema, theatre, etc. There are plenty of shops too, and a train station. But some of the disadvantages are that there are too many cars and traffic jams and this means there is pollution too.

Unit 28

28.1 2 grass 3 leaves 4 woods 5 plants 6 roots 7 branches 8 crops

28.2

2 countryside (also country)
3 up
4 own
5 season
6 ground/grass
7 keep

28.3 2 gate 3 tractor 4 footpath 5 field 6 valley 7 woods 8 farmhouse

28.4

2 spaces
3 air
4 pick
5 surrounded
6 worst
7 get
8 public
9 hopeless
10 much
11 away

28.5 *Possible answers:*

I agree with most of the ideas in the text. I also think that life in the country is probably less stressful than in a big city, and probably healthier too. One of the disadvantages of living in the country is that you become totally dependent on having a car.

Unit 29

29.1

2 ride
3 get in
4 journey
5 run
6 fly
7 missed
8 fares
9 driver
10 off; stop

29.2

2 van
3 motorbike
4 lorry (also truck)
5 coach
6 bicycle/bike

29.3

2 journey
3 convenient; away
4 corner
5 reliable
6 queue
7 return
8 complaining
9 season
10 platform

29.4 *Possible answers:*

1 Generally yes.
2 Prices vary a great deal in England. Sometimes a return is twice the price of a single, but sometimes it is not much more than a single.
3 Where I live is very convenient for the train station if I need to travel out of town.
4 No, I haven't got a season ticket, but they can often save you a lot of money.
5 I don't take taxis very often; only if I need to get home late at night.
6 I usually ride my bike once a week.

Unit 30

30.1

2 pedestrians
3 pavement
4 pedestrian crossing
5 (road) junction
6 brake
7 road sign

30.2

2 lane
3 traffic light(s)
4 overtaking
5 motorway
6 bridge
7 bend
8 (road) junction

30.3

2 lost
3 direct
4 via
5 way
6 ended
7 turning

30.4

2 accident
3 approaching
4 overtake
5 speed
6 swerve
7 crashed
8 damaged
9 injuries

30.5 *Possible answers for England:*

1 Yes, it's 70 mph. (about 115 kph)
2 There are usually three lanes.
3 Yes, they do.
4 Not very often, but it sometimes happens if the road is very narrow.

Unit 31

31.1

2 Mind the step
3 Admission free
4 Out of order
5 No vacancies/entry/exit
6 Do not lean out of the window / leave bags unattended
7 Please queue other side
8 Mind your head
9 Please do not disturb / Please do not feed the animals
10 Keep off the grass
11 Keep right/left
12 Silence examination in progress

31.2
2 On a vending machine (a machine selling drinks and snacks)
3 In a zoo
4 In a hotel window
5 At a theatre
6 In a bank or post office
7 On a parcel

31.3
2 Do not leave bags unattended
3 Please do not disturb
4 No parking
5 Do not lean out of the window
6 Mind your head
7 Admission free
8 SILENCE – examination in progress

31.4 No exit, Silence – examination in progress, out of order, keep right, mind the step, no entry

31.5 *Possible signs in English you might see are:*

English spoken here
Entrance [you go in here]
Flat to let [advertising a flat that you can rent]
Cyclists dismount here [people on bicycles must get off their bikes here]
No through road [there is no way out for cars at the other end of this road]

Unit 32

32.1 2 c 3 h 4 a 5 f 6 d 7 e 8 b

32.2
2 to look up the meaning of words
3 a plug
4 to rub something out
5 because you haven't got one (or someone else hasn't got one)
6 to highlight something
7 to sharpen a pencil
8 to measure something, or perhaps to underline something

32.3
2 How do you pronounce 'swap'?
3 How do you spell 'swap'?
4 How do you use the word 'swap' in a sentence?

32.4
2 Could you turn up the CD player?
3 Could you lend me a dictionary?
4 Could you repeat that, please?
5 Could you explain the difference between *lend* and *borrow*?
6 Could I borrow your ruler?
7 Could we swap places?

32.5 *Your own answers*

Unit 33

33.1 2 f 3 g 4 b 5 h 6 d 7 c 8 a

33.2 2 primary 3 secondary 4 take; leave 5 stay 6 go (on)

33.3 2 timetable 3 into 4 both are correct 5 break 6 break up
7 get 8 dress (you can wear what you want = you can dress the way you want)

33.4 2 wear 3 male; female 4 trouble 5 punished 6 atmosphere

33.5 *Your own answers*

Unit 34

34.1 2 both are correct 3 up 4 revise for 5 do 6 both are correct 7 failed

34.2
2 grade
3 candidates
4 essay
5 work
6 increase; basic
7 vowels; consonants
8 hard work
9 willing

34.3 2 revision 3 my best 4 exam preparation 5 things wrong 6 ear for language

34.4
2 accent
3 fluent
4 accurate
5 understood
6 through
7 well

34.5 *Your own answers*

Unit 35

35.1 2 engineering 3 medicine 4 economics 5 law 6 architecture

35.2

I did a degree course.	5
I passed with good grades.	2
I got a Master's.	8
I did a postgraduate course.	7
I did my final exams at school.	1
I became an undergraduate.	4
I got a place at university.	3
I got a degree in business studies.	6

35.3
2 False. You have to get good grades in your school exams.
3 True
4 False. Most degree courses last three years.
5 True
6 False. If you are successful, you get a degree.
7 False. Students studying for their first degree are called undergraduates.
8 False. Science students do not write a lot of essays. (They spend their time in laboratories.) Arts students have to write a lot of essays.
9 True
10 False. If you study arts subjects you work in a library. / If you study science subjects you work in a laboratory.

35.4 2 degree 3 went on 4 lasted 5 into 6 research 7 qualification

35.5 *Your own answers*

Unit 36

36.1 2 d 3 f 4 e 5 a 6 b

36.2
2 sailor
3 mechanic
4 vet
5 pilot or builder
6 accountant
7 plumber, carpenter, electrician, builder, mechanic and surgeon
8 doctor, surgeon, dentist, vet, pilot, electrician
9 police officer, soldier, sailor, firefighter, pilot, doctor, vet

36.3
2 A vet treats animals.
3 An architect designs buildings.
4 An electrician installs and repairs electrical things.
5 A lawyer represents people with legal problems.
6 A surgeon operates on people.
7 A mechanic repairs cars.
8 A dentist looks after people's teeth.
9 An engineer plans the building of roads, bridges, etc.

36.4
2 Really? When did he join the navy?
3 Really? When did he join the air force?
4 Really? When did she join the army?
5 Really? When did he join the fire brigade?

36.5 *Possible answers:*

My father is an accountant.
I have an uncle who is a doctor, and another who is retired. (He is 63 and no longer works.)
The man next door is a police officer, and his wife is a teacher.
I have another neighbour who is a journalist.
I have a friend in the army, another friend who is training to be a doctor, and a third friend who is an electrician.

Unit 37

37.1 Words which are connected with money: earn, wages, salary, income

37.2 2 e 3 d 4 f 5 c 6 a

37.3
2 I work in marketing.
3 I work for the government.
4 My income is £22,000.
5 What does your job involve?
6 I'm in charge of the reception area.
7 What do you do for a living?
8 My job involves reading government reports.
9 I give advice to clients.
10 I made a complaint about the service.

37.4
2 runs / is in charge of
3 responsible
4 involves
5 day
6 five
7 overtime
8 earn/make
9 conditions
10 tax
11 a
12 off
13 advises
14 dealing
15 fixed
16 do/work

37.5 *Your own answers*

Unit 38

38.1 2 e 3 d 4 a 5 f 6 b

38.2

verb	noun	adjective
employ	*(un)employment*	(un)employed
promote	promotion	
retire	retirement	retired
resign	resignation	
succeed	success	successful
own	owner	

38.3
2 abroad
3 part time
4 quit; rise
5 experience; courses
6 work
7 succeed
8 apply
9 sack
10 own
11 own; success
12 application

38.4 *Possible answers:*

1 Yes, I was promoted to hotel manager last year.
2 I get a pay rise, but not always a good one.
3 Yes, I went on a computer course last year.
4 I would like to do a course on financial planning to help me with my current job.
5 I have never been given the sack, but I resigned from my last job when I was given the opportunity to work for my present employer.

Unit 39

39.1 2 rubbish bin 3 filing cabinet 4 paperwork 5 noticeboard

39.2 2 colleagues 3 calendar 4 diary 5 invoice 6 calculator 7 loads

39.3 2 arranged; appointment
3 run out
4 attend / go to
5 show (them) round
6 involve; organise/arrange

39.4 2 The photocopier isn't working.
3 We've got loads of work today.
4 I have to attend a meeting.
5 We've run out of paper.
6 Why is he absent this morning?

39.5 *Possible answer:*

In my job as a dentist, I have to do quite a lot of paperwork, I send a few emails, I attend a few meetings, and I never use a photocopier. I don't show people round, I don't have to organise events or type letters, and I don't send out invoices. The only things I repair are people's teeth.

Unit 40

40.1 Words which refer to people: expert, accountant, client, contacts

40.2 2 demand
3 aim
4 firm/business
5 employees
6 set up
7 headquarters
8 job
9 expanding
10 a great deal

40.3 2 take up
3 clients
4 ex-
5 set up
6 customer
7 currently
8 take over
9 a former

40.4 2 They achieved a lot / a great deal.
3 I have a lot of contacts in banking.
4 They were formerly (called) BMG.
5 It's always been my ambition to fly a plane.
6 She's an expert in finance.
7 The adverts attracted (a lot of) attention.

40.5 2 firm/business/company
3 achieved/had
4 branch
5 run
6 expanded
7 ambition/aim

Unit 41

41.1 2 by 3 from 4 of 5 in 6 in 7 of

41.2 2 a loan 3 interest 4 inflation 5 profit 6 trade 7 trend

41.3 1 loan; charges; interest; pay back. ANSWER €600
2 rate; % (per cent); pay back. ANSWER €575.

41.4 2 figures
3 increased / went up / rose
4 made
5 raise/increase
6 sharp
7 fall/decrease
8 loss
9 stayed
10 quarters
11 risen / gone up
12 sharply

41.5 *Possible answers:*

1 About 2% 2 7–8% 3 Badly 4 2008–9 5 One British pound is 1.6 US dollars.

Unit 42

42.1

sport	person	place	verb	equipment
swimming, motor racing, basketball, skiing	golfer, athlete, goalkeeper, racing driver	court, track, pitch, rink	jump, box, race, sail	net, stick, skis, swimming costume

42.2 2 do 3 play 4 ski 5 did 6 go 7 do 8 keep 9 work out

42.3 2 swimming/swimmer 3 boxing/boxer 4 sailing/sailor 5 athletics/athlete

42.4

2 hockey	5 costumes	8 climbing
3 courses	6 racing	9 tent
4 fun/pleasure	7 fit	10 jogging

42.5 *Possible answers:*

1 In the winter I play football, and in the summer I play tennis and go swimming. It's not serious; I just do it for fun.
2 I watch a lot of sport on the TV: football, tennis, ice hockey, motor racing. In fact, I'll watch almost any sport if I have nothing else to do.

Unit 43

43.1
2 lose / lost / have lost
3 beat / beat / have beaten
4 draw / drew / have drawn
5 break / broke / have broken
6 give up / gave up / have given up

43.2

2 both are correct	4 tournament	6 beat
3 score	5 both are correct	7 competition

43.3

2 score; result (score is also possible)	7 league
3 beat/defeated	8 took
4 drew	9 leading
5 championship/tournament	10 against
6 record	

43.4

		[1]R	A	C	E				
			[2]L	O	S	E			
[3]T	E	A	M						
	[4]S	U	P	E	R	B			
[5]G	I	V	E	U	P				
[6]C	A	P	T	A	I	N			
		[7]W	I	N	N	E	R		
[8]V	I	C	T	O	R	Y			
		[9]F	I	N	A	L			
		[10]L	O	S	E	R			
[11]T	O	U	R	N	A	M	E	N	T

43.5 *Possible answers:*

1 I've taken part in lots of competitions: football, cricket, rugby, swimming and athletics.
2 I won a cup competition at secondary school in football.
3 I was captain of the rugby team at secondary school.
4 I came first in a backstroke (swimming) race when I was at primary school, and at secondary school I won the 100 and 200 metres (athletics) on several occasions.
5 I've watched lots of finals on TV: the FA Cup, the World Cup, the UEFA Cup, Wimbledon, the French Open, the Olympics, and so on. I also went to Twickenham to see the rugby team I support in an important final of a cup competition. Unfortunately we lost.

Unit 44

44.1 across: literature, author, actor, fiction, novel, poetry, comedy
down: poem, thriller, star, film, review

44.2
2 ~~year~~ century
3 ~~past~~ future
4 ~~happening~~ on
5 ~~article~~ review
6 ~~autobiography~~ biography
7 ~~frightened~~ laugh; or ~~comedies~~ horror films

44.3
2 entertainment
3 actors
4 poem
5 acting
6 entertainer
7 reviewer
8 director

44.4
2 latest
3 directed
4 (film) director
5 complicated
6 on
7 comedies
8 novel
9 fancy

44.5 *Possible answers:*

1 I don't read poetry but I read lots of novels. I enjoy thrillers and I like the English writer William Boyd.
2 Yes, I go to the cinema quite a lot. There are certain directors whose films I always see, but usually I go and see films that have had good reviews, or films that friends recommend.
3 I read reviews in the Sunday paper.
4 My favourite films are *Godfather* 1 and 2, and part of the reason I like them is that they have three of my favourite actors: Robert De Niro, Al Pacino and Marlon Brando.

Unit 45

45.1 2 e 3 a 4 f 5 b 6 d

45.2 2 single 3 album; comes 4 live 5 recorded 6 advertised

45.3 *Suggested answers:*

Ballet is a form of **dancing** that tells a story to music.
Audiences listen to **concerts.**
Albums are made in a **recording studio.**
The **conductor** stands in front of an **orchestra.**
A **composer** is someone who writes **classical music.**

45.4
2 orchestra; conductor
3 opera singers (tenors)
4 single
5 album
6 guitarist
7 cellist
8 composer
9 operas
10 solo; Michael Jackson

45.5
1 I like rock music, pop and R&B. My taste in music is very different from my parents – they hate rock music!
2 My favourite artist is Beyoncé. I really like her song, *Single Ladies*.
3 I bought Alicia Keys' latest album earlier this year.
4 The last time I saw someone perform live was last year.
5 I'm interested in both the tune and the lyrics.
6 I play the guitar, but very badly!

Unit 46

46.1 2 included 3 maximum 4 exciting 5 ships/boats 6 move/walk

46.2
2 The children dress up.
3 People come from all over Japan.
4 The event is held every year.
5 Do you celebrate your birthday? OR Do you do anything (special) to celebrate your birthday?
6 The festival is an annual event.

46.3

2 festival
3 lasts
4 takes
5 celebrates
6 consists
7 spectacular
8 gather
9 Firework

46.4 *Your own answers*

Unit 47

47.1

2 excess baggage
3 check-in desk
4 hand luggage
5 terminal building
6 duty free
7 flight number
8 overhead locker
9 boarding card
10 cabin crew
11 baggage reclaim
12 passport control

47.2

2 passengers
3 luggage/suitcases
4 boarding card
5 destination
6 check your passport
7 gate
8 hand luggage
9 runway

47.3

2 announcement
3 delay
4 boarded
5 take off
6 fasten
7 crew
8 landed
9 terminal
10 flight

47.4 *Possible answers:*

1 The worst part of the flight for me is the take-off, and the best part is the landing because I'm just pleased when it's over. I don't like flying much.
2 There are often delays in the winter when the weather is bad.
3 I often think about the place I'm going to or the place I've just been to. Other than that, I read a book or watch a film. Occasionally I talk to the person sitting next to me.
4 I try to get through customs quickly, so I can go home or start to enjoy my holiday!
5 I never have anything to declare because I rarely buy things when I travel.

Unit 48

48.1

steak	facilities	courses	*water*
rare, medium, well-done	mini-bar, room service, safe	starter, main course, dessert	still, sparkling

48.2 2 e 3 a 4 c 5 h 6 b 7 d 8 f

48.3

2 reception
3 double/twin
4 service
5 'll have
6 facilities
7 tip
8 heart/centre
9 mixed; course
10 stay; check

48.4

2 reservation
3 available
4 included (in the price)
5 advance
6 parking
7 to order

48.5 *Possible answers:*

If I go to a hotel in my own country, I usually drive, so parking is very important. I also like to have satellite TV.
A restaurant is only important if there are no other good restaurants in the area.
A mini-bar and air conditioning are great if it's in the summer and it is quite hot.
I usually carry my money and credit cards with me, so I don't need a safe.
I never use room service or need internet access, so they're not important at all.

Unit 49

49.1 Religious places are: temple, cathedral, mosque

49.2

2 sightseeing
3 attractions/sights
4 packed
5 explore/visit
6 lost
7 market
8 go out

49.3
2 packed
3 plenty to do
4 great/lovely time
5 worth seeing/visiting
6 guidebook
7 monuments
8 magnificent
9 look round

49.4 *Your own answers*

Unit 50

50.1 Any four of these: sunbathe, suntan, sunburn, sunscreen, sunblock, sun cream

50.2 2 c 3 e 4 a 5 f 6 b

50.3 2 sunbathing 3 surfing 4 diving 5 windsurfing

50.4 2 b 3 a 4 c 5 c 6 b

50.5
2 recommend
3 risk
4 protection/shade
5 breeze
6 stroll/walk
7 shade
8 go for / have

50.6 *Possible answers:*

1 I go to seaside resorts in the south-west of England, and sometimes the south of France, or the coast of Spain near Barcelona. I usually go once or twice a year.
2 I go for a swim; that's all.
3 No, I don't like sunbathing. It's boring and I get sunburn easily.
4 No, I don't get a suntan easily and I have had sunburn in the past. I might use sunscreen on my face. I usually wear a T-shirt or sit in the shade if it is very hot.
5 I like to go for a drink and then have a meal.

Unit 51

51.1 Types of TV programme: documentary, soap opera, chat show, series

51.2
2 comes out / is published
3 regional
4 Channel
5 celebrities / well-known

51.3

1	C	E	L	E	B	R	I	T	Y			
		2	S	E	R	I	E	S				
	3	R	E	P	O	R	T					
		4	S	O	A	P	O	P	E	R	A	
					5	D	A	I	L	Y		
		6	D	O	C	U	M	E	N	T	A	R	Y
			7	N	A	T	I	O	N	A	L		
8	C	H	A	T	S	H	O	W					
			9	A	R	T	I	C	L	E			

51.4
2 reporters/journalists
3 headline
4 station
5 says/said
6 review
7 adverts/advertisements
8 According; forecast
9 soap
10 reality

51.5 *Possible answers:*

1 I think there are about ten national newspapers in England.
2 At least three only come out on Sunday: *The Observer*, *The People* and *The News of the World*.
3 I read the front-page stories, the sports pages, the reviews, and anything that looks interesting.
4 I watch the news and the weather forecast every day. Programmes I enjoy are documentaries and some drama series. I never watch soap operas.

Unit 52

52.1
1 I gave him a ring; I rang him
2 *Possible answers:* the line was engaged, you rang the wrong number, Tom was out / wasn't in
3 Any three of these: a mobile number, an emergency number, the wrong number, a home phone / landline number

52.2
2 calling
3 My name is
4 putting
5 Is that
6 Speaking
7 message
8 answerphone
9 out / not in
10 phone/ring/call (you) back
11 Is that
12 It's
13 through
14 engaged
15 on

52.3
2 kiss
3 see you later
4 oh, I see
5 bye for now
6 in my opinion
7 as soon as possible
8 for your information
9 laughing out loud
10 thanks
11 boyfriend
12 you

52.4 *Your own answers*

Unit 53

53.1 2 h 3 a 4 g 5 b 6 d 7 f 8 c

53.2 2 laptop 3 keyboard 4 spacebar 5 username 6 password

53.3 2 copy 3 cut 4 save 5 paste 6 print 7 open an existing document

53.4 2 hard drive/disk 3 virus 4 laptop 5 password

53.5 2 back up 3 stored; backup/copy 4 install 5 create/open; menu 6 virus; anti-virus

53.6 *Possible answer:*
I have a PC and I use the operating system Windows Vista on it. My computer has a 500GB hard drive so I can store lots of data, particularly photos. I've recently installed software that will help me make my family tree. I have anti-virus software too, which is very important. I'm currently running Microsoft Word.

Unit 54

54.1 2 e 3 a 4 c 5 f 6 d

54.2
2 Internet Service Provider
3 Access to email and other services
4 Browsers
5 A particular subject or their everyday lives
6 Emails that you do not want, usually advertisements
7 Zac at hotmail dot com
8 They discuss things and share information about themselves.

54.3
2 immediately; essential
3 click; link
4 access
5 attachment; checked
6 download; download; clips
7 anti-virus
8 regularly

54.4 *Possible answers:*
1 I use the Internet a lot for my work. I use the BBC website a lot, and I read newspapers online.
2 I don't have a blog, but I occasionally read other people's.
3 I don't download much stuff from the Internet.
4 I watch video clips on Youtube: sporting events, comedy clips, etc. I also watch TV on the Internet.
5 I don't use social networking sites at all.

Unit 55

55.1

noun	person	verb
crime	*criminal*	commit a crime
murder	murderer	murder
theft	thief	steal/take
robbery	robber	rob
burglary	burglar	burgle

55.2 theft/steal; crime/offence; jail/prison; get away/escape; hit/attack

55.3 2 arrest 3 innocent 4 murder 5 offence 6 fine 7 crime 8 punished

55.4

2 stealing
3 broke
4 attacked/hit
5 stole
6 worth
7 escape / get away
8 arrested
9 detectives / the police
10 robbery
11 court
12 guilty
13 prison/jail

Unit 56

56.1 2 political 3 beliefs 4 powerful 5 reduction 6 politicians

56.2

1 A	B	O	V	E	A	L	L	
				2 L	E	A	D	E	R
				3 E	L	D	E	R	L	Y
				4 C	U	T				
				5 T	A	X				
	6 P	O	L	I	C	Y				
7 S	U	P	P	O	R	T				
			8 U	N	F	A	I	R		

56.3

2 They voted for her.
3 Elections are held every five years.
4 They will provide hospitals with more money. OR They will provide more money for hospitals.
5 It's a secret ballot.
6 The system treats everyone equally / fairly / the same way.
7 Our policy is to provide care for old people / the elderly.

56.4

2 constituencies
3 political
4 Elections
5 vote
6 parliament
7 party
8 government
9 prime

56.5 *Your own answers*

56.6 *Your own answers*

Unit 57

57.1 2 fun 3 few 4 now 5 son 6 comfortable

57.2 2 a 3 d 4 e 5 b

57.3

2 recycle
3 waste
4 tap
5 Save
6 switching/turning
7 Plant
8 reduce
9 Take

57.4

2 create
3 result
4 effects
5 flood
6 drought; occurring/happening
7 environment
8 destroy
9 efficient
10 Energy

57.5

verb	noun
recycle	*recycling*
waste	waste
destroy	destruction
exist	existence

verb	noun
solve	solution
reduce	reduction
support	support
suffer	suffering

Possible answers:

57.6

1 You can certainly see changes in the climate. The weather seems more extreme: more hot weather, more wet weather, etc.
2 We have to put our household rubbish in different containers every week so that more things are recycled, e.g. one container for newspapers; one for bottles, tins and plastic; one for garden rubbish, etc.
3 Yes, I waste energy. I leave lights on and taps running; but I only use the car for essential journeys.
4 I could turn off taps and lights, drive a smaller car, and do things to the house to make it more energy-efficient. Climate change worries me when I think about it.

Unit 58

58.1

die is a verb
attack is a noun and verb
death is a noun
shoot is a verb
war is a noun
defend is a verb
escape is a noun and verb
hide is a verb

58.2

2 shot
3 hide
4 escape / get away
5 exploded; killed
6 searching
7 destroyed
8 defend (protect is also possible)
9 carrying

58.3

2 battle
3 both are correct
4 destroyed
5 dead
6 both are correct
7 died
8 carry
9 shot

58.4

2 soldiers (army is possible)
3 enemy
4 bomb
5 violent
6 killed
7 army
8 took place

58.5

destruction, e.g. The bomb caused a huge amount of destruction.
explosion, e.g. The explosion happened outside the main gates.
defence, e.g. The army are responsible for the defence of the nation.

Unit 59

59.1 2 in 3 on 4 have 5 for 6 same

59.2 2 by 3 until 4 since 5 for 6 during 7 for 8 in 9 since

59.3

2 a long time ago / ages ago
3 the other day
4 recently/lately
5 for ages
6 for the time being

59.4

2 fortnight
3 19; 20
4 1963; 40
5 7
6 10
7 1960s

59.5 *Possible answers (from a Spanish man):*

1 I've been in my present job for a year.
2 It takes me half an hour to get to work.
3 A typical working day for me lasts about seven hours. I work from 9.30 am to 1.30 pm, then I have a long lunch break (siesta) and work again from 5 pm to 8 pm.
4 I've been studying English since 2003, but I stopped for three years during 2006–9.
5 I haven't spoken English since 11 o'clock this morning.
6 I saw my cousin Rafa the other day.
7 Nowadays I don't go to the gym as much as I used to.
8 One day I hope to be a very successful architect.

Unit 60

60.1

2 two and a half
3 two thousand, three hundred and forty-five
4 nought point two five
5 one million, two hundred and fifty thousand
6 ten point nought/oh four
7 forty-seven per cent
8 the tenth of September (OR September the tenth)
9 nine four oh/zero, double three eight
10 minus five degrees Celsius (OR five degrees below zero)
11 in nineteen ninety-six
12 twenty twelve (OR two thousand and twelve)

60.2

2 twenty thousand
3 the seventh of June / June the seventh
4 two hundred and twenty
5 the thirty-first of August / August the thirty-first
6 seven two three, six oh/zero nine

60.3 2 majority 3 minority 4 calculator 5 up; work 6 stuck

60.4 2 seventy-two 3 sixty 4 five 5 three 6 fifteen

60.5 *Possible answers:*

1 Nineteen eighty eight
2 One metre eighty
3 My building is number twenty-one, and I live in flat three.
4 June the sixth
5 About eighty thousand
6 I think it's about thirty-seven degrees.

Unit 61

61.1

2 it's (quite) shallow.
3 it's (quite) narrow.
4 he's (quite) tall.
5 it's huge/enormous.
6 it's tiny.

61.2

2 What's the depth of the lake?
3 How high is the mountain?
4 What's the height of the mountain?
5 How tall is she?
6 What's her height?
7 How long/wide is the pitch?
8 What's the length/width of the pitch?

61.3 *Possible answers:*

1 It's just round the corner.
2 It's about a mile away.
3 It's just down the road.
4 No, not far.
5 No, it isn't far.
6 Yes, (it's) quite a long way – about twenty miles.
7 About fifteen minutes' walk.
8 About ten minutes' walk.

Unit 62

62.1

objects	materials	shapes	colours
bell, flag, bucket, ladder	silk, cotton, plastic, fur	circle, square	pink, grey, purple, navy blue

62.2 2 a 3 e 4 b 5 f 6 c

62.3
2 a pink flag
3 a round mirror
4 a purple shirt
5 a square table
6 a navy blue hat

62.4 2 a prawn 3 a bucket 4 a ladder 5 the moon 6 bones

62.5 *Possible answers:*

1 No. I don't think they look nice.
2 I have a pink top, a purple skirt, a navy blue jumper and navy blue jeans.
3 I've got a T-shirt with different-coloured stripes and a skirt with thin blue and black stripes.
4 I've got nothing made from fur, but I have got two silk dresses.
5 I've got several pairs of leather shoes and some leather bags.

Unit 63

63.1 2 care 3 far 4 new 5 cup 6 run 7 want

63.2
2 a packet of spaghetti
3 a bowl of fruit
4 a jar of coffee
5 a carton of milk
6 a jug of water
7 a box of matches
8 a bar of soap
9 a bag of apples

63.3
2 a jar of jam
3 a packet of cigarettes
4 a can of cola
5 a carton of milk (or a bottle of milk)
6 a tube of toothpaste
7 a vase of flowers
8 a packet of biscuits

63.4
2 bunch
3 slices/pieces/bits
4 dozen
5 sheet/piece/bit
6 drop/spoonful
7 plenty/lots
8 couple
9 contents
10 several

63.5 2 apples 3 a pair of 4 biscuit 5 crisps 6 shirts 7 bunch

Unit 64

64.1
I'm terribly sorry / I beg your pardon
I was held up / there was a delay
don't worry / never mind

64.2
2 Not
3 keep; long; right
4 I'm; cancelled; problem
5 kind
6 apologise; Never
7 beg

64.3 *Possible answers:*

2 I'm sorry I'm late but I overslept.
3 Oh, thank you very much. That's very kind of you.
4 I'm sorry to disturb you.
5 Excuse me, I have to take an important phone call.
6 I'm sorry to keep you waiting. I won't be long.
7 I'm sorry I'm late but I got held up / delayed in traffic.
8 I must apologise for not sending the information we promised you. Unfortunately....

64.4 1 I'm sometimes late for class. I have to apologise to my teacher and say why I'm late. Ususally it's because I miss the bus.
2 I apologised to my friend as I spilt water on one of her books. I aid that I was sorry and offered to buy her a new one. I didn't give an excuse.

Unit 65

65.1 A: ~~Do~~ you like to go out this evening? *Would*
B: I'm afraid ~~but~~ I haven't got any money.
A: That's OK. I'll pay. How about ~~go~~ to see a film? *going*
B: No, I think I'd rather ~~to~~ stay in. I have to do some homework.
A: Why ~~you don't~~ do your homework this afternoon? *don't you*
B: I'm busy this afternoon.
A: Well, we could ~~to~~ go tomorrow.
B: Yeah, ~~it's~~ a great idea. *that's*

65.2 2 d 3 a 4 e 5 f 6 b

65.3 1 mind
2 possibly; course
3 wondering; problem
4 fancy; mind; don't; idea
5 mind; ahead
6 shall; about; could; rather; like

65.4 *Possible answers:*
2 Yes, of course.
3 No, I'm afraid I haven't.
4 No, help yourself / go ahead.
5 Yeah, (that's a) great idea.
6 No, I don't fancy that. OR Yes, if you like. / Yeah, I don't mind.
7 I'd rather go out somewhere. OR Yes, if you like.

Unit 66

66.1 2 What do you think of 3 How do you feel about

66.2 2 of; personally
3 extent
4 strongly; right
5 Personally; disagree
6 true
7 view/feeling; point/idea
8 mean; opinion

66.3 2 In my opinion the club needs new players.
3 I don't agree with you at all.
4 According to the newspaper, the fire was started on purpose.
5 I agree with her to some extent.
6 I take your point / I think that's a good point, but I'm not sure I agree.

66.4 *Possible answers:*
1 I completely disagree. Lots of women want to have a career *and* children.
2 Yes, I agree to a certain extent, but most people want to work. It's not their fault they haven't got a job.
3 Yes, that's true, but you have to remember there are lots of poor people in *our* country.
4 Yes, I take your point, but what about people who need cars for their work but don't have a lot of money?

Unit 67

67.1 2 so do I
3 I like it very much
4 to living
5 Me neither. / Neither do I.
6 prefer rugby to football
7 not interested in music

67.2 2 common 3 all 4 interest 5 into 6 used 7 rather 8 getting

67.3 2 So do I. Me too.
3 Neither do I. Me neither.
4 Neither can I. Me neither.
5 So am I. Me too.
6 Neither am I. Me neither.
7 So have I. Me too.

67.4
2 I can't stand these new shoes.
3 She'd rather go home.
4 I'm not very keen on James Bond films.
5 I don't mind the new building.
6 I used to go riding a lot.
7 We have a lot (of things) in common.
8 I'm getting used to this new computer.
9 I don't have the same attitude to work now. OR My attitude to work has changed.

67.5 *Possible answers:*

I really like Italian food.
I don't mind getting up early.
I can't stand waiting for buses or trains.
I prefer classical music to pop music.
Opera doesn't interest me.
I used to have a beard, but not any more.

Unit 68

68.1 take care; excuse me; bless you; thank goodness; not bad

68.2
2 going; bad
3 same to
4 thank goodness
5 take
6 Congratulations
7 how about

68.3
2 Goodbye. Nice to meet you.
3 Excuse me. (Could I just get past?)
4 Congratulations
5 Good luck
6 Cheers
7 Bless you

68.4 2 introduced; shake 3 greet 4 cheek; cheeks 5 care

68.5 *Your own answers*

Unit 69

69.1
2 **un**able
3 **in**correct
4 **un**usual
5 **im**possible
6 **un**comfortable
7 **dis**agree
8 **un**necessary
9 **ir**regular
10 **dis**honest
11 **un**fair
12 **un**lucky

69.2 2 e 3 h 4 f 5 c 6 g 7 a 8 d

69.3
2 illegal
3 undressed
4 unlikely
5 incorrect
6 unfit
7 unexpected
8 dishonest
9 unlucky
10 unfair

69.4 unkind; impatient; unsuitable; dislike; undo; unfashionable; unreliable; unfriendly; untidy; inability; unsociable

Unit 70

70.1

verb	noun
dis'cuss	dis'cussion
im'prove	im'provement
in'vent	in'vention
re'lax	relax'ation
'hesitate	hesi'tation
ar'range	ar'rangement

adjective	noun
'stupid	stu'pidity
'happy	'happiness
'similar	simi'larity
'popular	popu'larity
sad	'sadness
'active	ac'tivity

70.2
2 actors
3 directors
4 translators
5 footballers
6 ballet dancers
7 artists
8 scientists

70.3
2 management
3 government
4 inability
5 discussions
6 economists
7 improvement

70.4
2 similarity
3 invention
4 translation
5 artist
6 fitness
7 development

Unit 71

71.1
2 careful
3 reliable
4 peaceful
5 comfortable
6 annual
7 unforgettable
8 correct
9 unbelievable

71.2 2 f 3 a 4 g 5 b 6 h 7 e 8 c

71.3
2 attractive
3 personal
4 cloudy
5 colourful
6 famous
7 electrical
8 political
9 enjoyable
10 national
11 windy
12 dangerous
13 creative
14 emotional
15 foggy

71.4 Words with an opposite with the suffix *-less*: useful/useless; careful/careless; painful/painless

71.5
2 unbelievable
3 helpful
4 annual
5 painful
6 useless
7 reliable
8 reasonable
9 personal
10 unforgettable
11 traditional
12 suitable

71.6 *Possible answers:*

2 a jacket: (un)comfortable, (un)fashionable, useful, attractive, (un)suitable
3 an event: annual, enjoyable, traditional, political, cultural, famous
4 a person you know: (un)reliable, sociable, helpful, attractive, famous, normal,
5 an opinion: political, personal, (un)reasonable
6 a room: (un)comfortable, peaceful, colourful, attractive

Unit 72

72.1 2 leaving 3 in 4 on 5 to help 6 her a big kiss 7 about 8 have

72.2
2 We chatted for a bit.
3 The policeman rescued her …
4 I attempted to help …
5 Have you replied to the letter?
6 I regret leaving home.
7 I promised to go to the party.
8 They told us to stand in a queue …

72.3
2 go on a diet if necessary
3 have a guess
4 with a smile
5 had a dream about my mother
6 haven't found a cure for this disease
7 put on the brakes but it was too late
8 gave the kitchen windows a wash
9 They made an attempt to help her
10 had a chat

72.4 2 different 3 different 4 similar 5 different 6 similar

Unit 73

73.1
Roads: *public transport*, traffic lights, crossroads, bus stop, bus station
Money: income tax, cashpoint, credit card
Hair: haircut, hairdresser, hairdryer
Jobs: hairdresser, travel agent, film-maker, DJ, bus driver, (babysitter)
Things we wear: earrings, T-shirt, sunglasses
Air travel: airport, airline, aircraft

73.2
2 travel agent
3 campsite
4 wheelchair
5 birthday card
6 babysitter
7 sunglasses
8 income tax
9 hairdryer

73.3
2 chest of drawers
3 DJ (disc jockey)
4 ID/identity card
5 mother tongue
6 ice hockey
7 full stop
8 credit card

73.4 *Possible answers:*

2 bus stop
3 hairdryer
4 birthday card, ID card
5 toothbrush
6 bus station
7 dining room
8 sister-in-law, mother-in-law, father-in-law
9 suntan, sunshine, sunblock, sunburn, sunscreen
10 traffic jam
11 armchair
12 film director

Unit 74

74.1
2 had a baby
3 missed the bus
4 a serious head injury
5 it depends on the weather
6 spent three days
7 predict the future
8 expecting a baby
9 told me a very funny joke
10 a large amount of money

74.2 2 lose 3 vitally 4 puts on 5 likely 6 serious 7 well

74.3 2 loud 3 wide 4 limited 5 large 6 great 7 limited

74.4
2 fast
3 great
4 expecting
5 scored
6 told
7 wide
8 went off
9 fell
10 terribly

74.5 *Your own answers*

Unit 75

75.1 sooner or later; one or two; peace and quiet; day after day; now and again; up and down; so far; right away

75.2
2 By the way
3 out of the blue
4 to be honest
5 get rid of
6 In general
7 make up my mind
8 For instance
9 I'm just about to
10 If I were you

75.3
2 One or two
3 burst into tears
4 the week before last
5 if I were you
6 sooner or later
7 Once or twice
8 at once
9 In two weeks' time
10 so far
11 ring a bell
12 apart from

75.4
2 cost a fortune = cost a lot of money
3 keep an eye on = watch (and make sure something is safe)
4 on the tip of my tongue = I know it but I can't remember it at the moment
5 a night on the town = a night out
6 could do with = need

Unit 76

76.1

positive	negative	not sure *or* either
why not; I suppose so	*no way*; not really	you're kidding; that depends; I don't believe it

76.2
2 see
3 both are correct
4 help
5 What
6 pay
7 both are correct

76.3
2 pays attention
3 had a word with her
4 felt bad about that/it
5 no idea
6 changed my mind

76.4
2 *Kind of* blue
3 Well, *in that case …*
4 *You must be joking*. That's ten miles!
5 Yeah. *Why not?*
6 Oh, burgers, pizzas, *that sort of thing*.
7 Yes. *I couldn't believe my eyes*.

Unit 77

77.1 2 h 3 e 4 b 5 g 6 d 7 a 8 f

77.2
2 at; e.g. maths and history
3 to; e.g. me, Carl
4 on; e.g. clothes, himself
5 of; e.g. heights, nothing
6 in; e.g. thrillers, serious films
7 on; e.g. my parents, the time
8 at; e.g. the children, I don't know
9 on; e.g. all of them, none of them
10 into; e.g. German

77.3
2 similar
3 complain
4 mad
5 wrong
6 with
7 concentrate
8 aware
9 short
10 depend

77.4 keen on; suffer from; succeed in; get married to; apply for; apologise for

77.5 *Possible answers:*
1 at languages
2 in sport
3 of flying
4 on food, clothes, rent and my car
5 of going to Turkey

Unit 78

78.1

on	in	by
board, display, fire, strike	detail, future, tears	hand, accident, mistake

78.2
2 on purpose
3 by chance
4 out-of-date
5 on business
6 at the moment
7 in a hurry
8 in future

78.3
2 strike
3 hand
4 minute/moment
5 purpose
6 hurry
7 future
8 date
9 detail
10 display
11 moment; phone
12 end

78.4
2 in time
3 on fire
4 in the end
5 at the end
6 at the moment
7 by chance
8 in a minute/moment
9 out-of-date
10 in detail

Unit 79

79.1 2 away 3 out 4 back 5 up 6 up 7 up 8 on

79.2
2 go back
3 picked up
4 put up
5 give up
6 carry on
7 go away
8 get on (well)
9 take on

79.3 b meaning 5 c meaning 2 d meaning 4 e meaning 1

79.4
2 sort (it) out
3 put them back
4 lie down
5 fell over
6 look (it) up
7 putting on / put on
8 Hurry up

Unit 80

80.1
2 put them on
3 correct
4 take them off
5 correct
6 turn it down
7 hanging around the station

80.2 2 put off 3 make up 4 left out 5 turned down 6 get in

80.3 1 ALSO: He's putting his jacket on.
2 She's turning the light on. / She's turning on the light.
3 The car has broken down.
4 He's breaking into a shop.
5 They're hanging around (a street corner).
6 The teacher is handing out books. / The teacher is handing books out.

80.4 2 out 3 up 4 off 5 for 6 down

80.5 *Possible answers:*

2 a cold/flu
3 stories/excuses
4 the light/TV
5 the shop/flat
6 her children/dog

Unit 81

81.1 2 do
3 both are correct
4 do
5 both are correct
6 take
7 do
8 made

81.2 2 She's having/taking a shower.
3 She's taking it/things easy.
4 She's taking something out of her pocket.
5 They're making a noise.
6 She's doing her hair.

81.3 2 made us go
3 doing my best
4 take a break
5 making an effort
6 make up their minds
7 take things/it easy

81.4 2 take
3 made
4 done
5 take
6 look
7 made
8 take
9 do (take is also possible)
10 made

81.5 *Your own answers*

Unit 82

82.1 give: *a speech*; someone a hug; someone a hand
miss: an opportunity; a person; what someone says
keep: in touch; on doing something; a secret

82.2 2 dry 3 laughing 4 fit 5 forgetting 6 quiet 7 thinking 8 waking

82.3 2 gave her a ring
3 gave her a big hug
4 keep in touch
5 give you a hand
6 missed his opportunity
7 given me an appetite

82.4 2 miss all the fun
3 keep it up
4 gave me a push
5 miss the rush hour
6 keeps getting headaches
7 gave me the idea
8 miss my dog
9 keep a secret

Unit 83

83.1 2 buy/obtain 3 fetch 4 arrive 5 became 6 obtain/find 7 answer 8 received

83.2 2 getting hungry
3 getting hot
4 getting dark
5 getting late
6 getting worse

83.3 2 get together and have a meal.
3 get to know people in this country?
4 get in touch with the travel company.
5 get rid of these old magazines.
6 get in before 10 o'clock.
7 get out.
8 get to sleep for hours last night.

83.4 2 need to get it cut.
3 need to get it finished.
4 need to get it fixed/repaired.
5 need to get them back.

83.5 *Your own answers*

Unit 84

84.1
2 (out) for a picnic
3 (out) for a drink/meal
4 sightseeing
5 (out) for a drive
6 swimming
7 (out) for a walk
8 clubbing
9 (out) for a meal / for a picnic / for a drink

84.2
2 are you?
3 fetch
4 continue
5 happening
6 disappeared
7 return
8 take me
9 chose

84.3
2 going blind
3 going (very) well
4 went mad
5 going bald
6 go and get
7 go away
8 went out

84.4 *Your own answers*

Unit 85

85.1 hearing; taste; smell; touch

85.2
2 listening to; heard
3 hear
4 seen
5 look at
6 watched
7 feel
8 touch
9 look; see
10 seems

85.3
2 felt like silk
3 looked like a church
4 sounded like an alarm
5 taste like/of coconut
6 seem/appear very nice
7 feels/looks damp
8 seemed/appeared/looked calm and relaxed

85.4
2 sounds as if/though
3 feel as if/though
4 sounds as if
5 tastes as if
6 looks as if/though
7 seemed/appeared as if/though (*also* looked as if/though)

85.5 *Your own answers*

Unit 86

86.1
2 ~~a news~~ news / some news / a bit of news
3 ~~advices~~ advice
4 ~~are~~ is
5 ~~homeworks~~ homework
6 ~~furnitures were~~ furniture was
7 ~~experiences~~ experience ~~these equipments~~ this equipment
8 ~~knowledges~~ knowledge

86.2
2 a useful piece/bit of equipment.
3 a good piece/bit of advice.
4 another piece/bit of toast?
5 a bit of progress. (piece is not possible here)
6 a bit of rubbish on the floor. (piece is not possible here)
7 a bit of pocket money. (piece is not possible here)
8 a bit/piece of news this morning.

86.3 2 experience 3 room/space 4 advice 5 furniture 6 progress

86.4
2 experiences
3 chance
4 rubbish
5 scenery
6 behaviour
7 experience
8 knowledge

86.5 transport U luggage U suitcase C pasta U traffic U accident C

Unit 87

87.1

2 to help
3 staying
4 going
5 on
6 to get
7 working
8 to speak
9 him for help
10 for
11 waiting
12 travelling

87.2

2 thinking
3 imagine
4 avoid
5 blamed
6 hoping; intended/planned
7 enjoyed/liked
8 considered
9 insisted; hates
10 demanded

87.3

fancy + -ing
decide + infinitive or decide + (that)
pretend + infinitive or pretend + (that)
accuse + (obj) + of

87.4 *Possible answers:*

I like reading. I dislike sport. I don't mind doing homework. I'm thinking of going to the mountains this weekend to ski. I can't imagine living without my two dogs. I hope to go to university next year. I intend to buy myself a motorbike when I go to university.

Unit 88

88.1

2 He told me it's / it was impossible.
3 I asked Talia to stay with me.
4 She suggested that we go to an Italian restaurant. OR She suggested going to ...
5 I warned them not to go.
6 He helped me to buy my suit.
7 She allowed us to go.
8 He said the film was terrible. OR He told me ...
9 She advised me to buy a dictionary.
10 I recommended that they stay there. OR I reccomend staying there.
11 He reminded me to go to the bank.
12 I want him to leave.

88.2

2 noticed
3 warn
4 persuaded
5 convinced
6 recommended
7 mentioned
8 encouraged
9 reminded
10 help
11 expect
12 hope

88.3 *Possible answers:*

2 (that) we have something to eat.
3 her to ring the police.
4 (that) something was wrong / she looked ill / she was smiling, etc.
5 me to stay up late / watch TV, etc.
6 (that) it wasn't mine.
7 them to go.
8 (that) she'll be late.
9 them not to drink it.
10 I would look after it / bring it back tomorrow, etc.

88.4 *Your own answers*

Unit 89

89.1

gradable adjectives	extreme adjectives
bad, important, small, tired, frightened	*dreadful*, essential, tiny, exhausted, terrified

89.2 ~~very pleased~~ (really/absolutely) delighted
~~very big~~ (really/absolutely) huge/enormous
food is ~~very nice~~ (really/absolutely) delicious
last three days have been ~~very nice~~ (really/absolutely) wonderful/marvellous/terrific
~~very important~~ (absolutely/really) essential
~~very interesting~~ (absolutely/really) fascinating

89.3 2 terrifying 3 shocked 4 amazing/terrific/wonderful/marvellous 5 delighted 6 annoyed

89.4 2 disappointed/annoyed 3 embarrassed 4 confused 5 amazed/surprised 6 delighted

Unit 90

90.1 2 in 3 at 4 on 5 at 6 in 7 on 8 on 9 at 10 on 11 in 12 at

90.2 2 among 3 into 4 beside 5 out of 6 towards 7 up 8 underneath

90.3 2 under the fence 3 get out of the car 4 after the bridge 5 below/beneath me 6 (right) against

90.4 *Possible answers:*

1 No, because it will be noisy at night due to the ambulances.
2 No, because of the smell and the noise.
3 No, because it's dangerous.
4 No. I like one or two things on the wall, but not lots of things because it looks untidy.
5 No. I prefer the aisle seat because I can move around easily without disturbing anyone else.
6 Well, that sounds nice, but it really depends who the people are.

Unit 91

91.1 2 She hardly ever phones me.
3 I have never broken my leg.
4 I frequently visit them at weekends. OR I visit them frequently at weekends.
5 My brother quite often calls me on Sunday.
6 I rarely saw him during the summer.
7 She is always in the office before eight.

91.2 2 rarely/seldom 3 fairly/pretty/rather 4 completely 5 a little / slightly 6 incredibly 7 frequently

91.3 2 I must speak to her urgently.
3 I asked him politely to move his car.
4 I spoke to her secretly.
5 He suddenly ran out of the room.
6 I spoke to her briefly this morning.

91.4 2 extremely/incredibly 3 very 4 very 5 quite/fairly/pretty/rather 6 a bit / a little / slightly 7 quite/fairly/pretty/rather

91.5 *Possible answers:*

2 I sometimes buy clothes I don't like. I buy them because they are fashionable. I think that's fairly typical.
3 I hardly ever lose things; I'm very careful. I think that's slightly unusual.
4 I often forget things – my glasses, people's names, etc. I expect that's fairly typical.
5 For some reason, I hardly ever remember my dreams. I think that's quite unusual.
6 I often speak to strangers on buses and trains. That's probably quite unusual.
7 I sometimes give money to people in the street; it depends how I feel. That's fairly typical, I think.

Unit 92

92.1
for one thing / for a start
when / as soon as
besides/anyway
finally / in the end
at first / to begin with

92.2
2 get
3 while
4 leaving
5 both are correct
6 just as
7 both are correct
8 while
9 both are correct
10 cleaning

92.3
1 besides/anyway/secondly
2 first of all; Then / After that; finally
3 at first / to begin with; while
4 firstly / for a start / for one thing; secondly/besides/anyway
5 at first / to begin with; while; Eventually / In the end

92.4 *Possible answers:*
2 you finish / you've finished
3 I get there/home
4 leaving
5 he opened the door / he got out of the car
6 he/she looked up the other half
7 we got there
8 it's not important / we can phone him later

Unit 93

93.1

words that add more information	words that introduce surprising information
in addition, as well, also, what's more	although, in spite of, however, despite

93.2
2 however
3 both are correct
4 even though
5 However
6 both are correct
7 both are correct
8 despite

93.3
She always worked hard in class, whereas most of her classmates were lazy.
She has the ability to do the job. What's more, she is very experienced.
She didn't pass the exam in spite of the help I gave her.
She worked there for ten years. However, she was never happy in the job.

93.4
2 In spite of / Despite; still
3 However
4 although / even though
5 In addition to / As well as / Besides
6 as well / too
7 though
8 yet; still

93.5 *Possible answers:*
2 I get up much later
3 the bad weather
4 it's cheaper (with a season ticket)
5 I think I'll pass
6 she spoke very quickly
7 goes jogging / plays tennis / works, etc.

Unit 94

94.1
2 Teresa got the job because of her good exam results.
3 We couldn't eat outside because of the terrible weather.
4 She didn't go to school because of her cold.
5 The referee stopped the game because of the bad light.
6 I was late because of the terrible traffic.
7 He can't vote because of his age.

94.2
2 in case
3 as long as
4 in order to / so that I would
5 As a result / Therefore
6 Unless
7 as long as
8 otherwise
9 whether/if
10 reason

94.3 2 As/Since 3 so that 4 as a result / therefore 5 unless 6 whether

94.4 *Possible answers:*

I want to improve my English because *I need good English for my job.*
I don't know whether my English *is good enough.*
I often need to write words down in my notebook, otherwise I *forget them.*
I don't get many opportunities to practise my English, therefore *my speaking is not very good.*
Speaking English may be important in order to *get a better job in the future.*

Unit 95

95.1

formal	informal
depart, regarding, purchase, proceed to, commence	cheers, mate, terrific, bloke, kids

95.2

depart	*leave*	mate	**friend**
cheers	**thanks**	commence	**start**
regarding	**about**	terrific	**fantastic** (marvellous, wonderful, etc.)
purchase	**buy**	bloke	**man**
proceed to	**go to**	kids	**children**

95.3

2 thing
3 a load of rubbish
4 up to
5 I'm dying for
6 make it
7 mate
8 quite a bit
9 that stuff
10 40 or so

95.4 2 We regret to inform you 3 grant 4 require further assistance

95.5

1 a drag *informal* = boring; it can also mean unpleasant, e.g. Housework is a drag.
2 permit *formal* = allow
3 scary *informal* = frightening
4 quid *informal* = pounds (£)

Unit 96

96.1

2 a registration form or an enrolment form
3 an entry form
4 a visa application form

96.2

2 When were you born?
3 Where do you come from?
4 Are you single or married?
5 When are you leaving?

96.3 2 g 3 f 4 b 5 a 6 d 7 e

96.4 2 correct 3 incorrect 4 incorrect 5 correct 6 correct 7 incorrect

96.5 2 tip 3 on my own 4 sign it 5 require 6 team

96.6 *Your own answers*

Unit 97

97.1 2 a 3 d 4 e 5 b

97.2

2 advantages **of** studying
3 give **both** sides
4 effect **on** children
5 On the other **hand**, too
6 tends **to** go

97.3 2 causes; However 3 both are correct 4 hand 5 both are correct

97.4 2 In addition 3 However 4 Consequently 5 argument 6 effect

97.5
2 People tend to be conservative. OR In general / On the whole people are conservative.
3 There is an argument that cars should not be allowed in town centres. OR Some people believe that cars should not be allowed in town centres.
4 In the past children played on their bikes, but nowadays they spend most of their time in front of a computer.
5 Many people work longer and longer hours, and consequently / as a result they don't have time for hobbies.

Unit 98

98.1
Dear Sir or **Madam**
I am writing in response to your advertisement for trainees in yesterday's newspaper, and I would be **grateful** if you could send me further **details.**
I look forward to **hearing** from you.
Yours faithfully

98.2
2 details
3 to hearing from you
4 faithfully
5 sincerely
6 regards
7 signature

98.3
2 I regret to inform you ...
3 I am pleased to inform you ...
4 Are you available on Wednesday?
5 I would like to enquire about the dates of the course.
6 Please accept our apologies for the delay.
7 I would be grateful if you could send me the details.
8 Could you confirm that in writing?
9 I enclose a copy of my CV.

98.4
2 writing
3 response/reply
4 regarding/about
5 regret
6 delays
7 apologise
8 sincerely

Unit 99

99.1
in a week's time; once again; let you know; best wishes; give my regards to

99.2
2 Dear Mark
3 Send/Give my regards/love to Patricia
4 Lots of love, Trudie
5 All the best, Sam

99.3
2 Do you fancy going?
3 I'll be/get in touch soon.
4 It looks new, but in fact it isn't.
5 I'll let you know as soon as possible.
6 I'm going in three weeks' time.
7 Jamie is a laugh.
8 Let's get together for lunch.
9 It's ages since I wrote.

99.4
2 ages
3 fact
4 since
5 actually
6 hoping
7 in
8 together
9 join
10 Anyway
11 let
12 give

Unit 100

100.1
2 British Broadcasting Corporation
3 Member of Parliament
4 correct
5 United Nations
6 correct
7 curriculum vitae

100.2
2 e.g. 3 etc. 4 St 5 i.e. 6 St 7 Dr

100.3
Luke
Olly had a **maths exam** this afternoon and then had to take his **bike** to the repair shop, so he'll probably be a bit late home. You can watch **TV/telly** while you're waiting for him, and please help yourself to anything in the **fridge**. If there's a problem, **e.g.** if **Dr** Brown rings about the **flu** vaccination, my **phone** number is next to the **photos** on the dining room table. I should be home myself by about five.
Pam (Olly's mum)

100.4

2 bike	5 vet	8 ad/advert	11 lab
3 e.g. / for example	6 etc. / and so on	9 PIN	12 rep
4 CV	7 case	10 stand	

100.5

PTO = Please turn over (you see it at the bottom of a page)
RSVP = Répondez s'il vous plaît, which is French for 'please reply' (you see it on letters of invitation, which means they want a reply to the invitation)
asap = as soon as possible (in emails and text messages)
IMO = in my opinion (also in emails and text messages)
DOB = date of birth (on forms)
PS = postscript. It is used at the end of a letter (after you have signed your name) to add extra information, or something you have forgotten to say in the letter.

Phonemic symbols

Vowel sounds

Symbol	*Examples*
/iː/	sleep me
/i/	happy recipe
/ɪ/	pin dinner
/ʊ/	foot could pull
/ʊ/	casual
/uː/	do shoe through
/e/	red head said
/ə/	arrive father colour
/ɜː/	turn bird work
/ɔː/	sort thought walk
/æ/	cat black
/ʌ/	sun enough wonder
/ɒ/	got watch sock
/ɑː/	part heart laugh
/eɪ/	name late aim
/aɪ/	my idea time
/ɔɪ/	boy noise
/eə/	pair where bear
/ɪə/	hear cheers
/əʊ/	go home show
/aʊ/	out cow
/ʊə/	pure fewer

Consonant sounds

Symbol	*Examples*
/p/	put
/b/	book
/t/	take
/d/	dog
/k/	car kick
/g/	go guarantee
/tʃ/	catch church
/dʒ/	age lounge
/f/	for cough photograph
/v/	love vehicle
/θ/	thick path
/ð/	this mother
/s/	since rice
/z/	zoo surprise
/ʃ/	shop sugar machine
/ʒ/	pleasure usual vision
/h/	hear hotel
/m/	make
/n/	name now know
/ŋ/	bring
/l/	look while
/r/	road
/j/	young
/w/	wear

ˈ This shows that the next syllable is the one with the stress.

ˌ This is used when some longer words have a second stress, less strong than on the main stressed syllable.

Index

The numbers in the Index are **unit** numbers not page numbers.
The pronunciation provided is for standard British English.

a bit [slightly] ə bɪt 91
a great deal ə greɪt diːl 40
a laugh ə lɑːf 99
a little (bit) ə ˈlɪtəl 91
a load of rubbish ə ləʊd ɒv ˈrʌbɪʃ 95
a long time ago ə lɒŋ taɪm əˈgəʊ 59
a paper ə ˈpeɪpə 100
a piece of sth ə piːs ɒv ˈsʌmθɪŋ 86
a return ə rɪˈtɜːn 29
a week/month/year (etc.) [every] ə wiːk mʌnθ jɪə 37
abbreviation əˌbriːviˈeɪʃən 52
ability əˈbɪləti 70
able ˈeɪbəl 70
above əˈbʌv 90
above all əˈbʌv ɔːl 56
abroad əˈbrɔːd 38
absent ˈæbsənt 39
absolutely ˌæbsəˈluːtli 89
accent ˈæksənt 34
accept əkˈsept 1
access (to sth) ˈækses 48, 54
accident ˈæksɪdənt 30
accommodation əˌkɒməˈdeɪʃən 20
according to əˈkɔːdɪŋ tuː 51, 66
accountant əˈkaʊntənt 36
accurate(ly) ˈækjərət 34
ache n, v eɪk 21
achieve əˈtʃiːv 40
achievement əˈtʃiːvmənt 40
act [do sth] ækt 57
act [perform] ækt 44
acting ˈæktɪŋ 44
actor ˈæktə 44, 70
actually ˈæktʃuəli 99
ad/advert æd ˈædvɜːt 100
add æd 26
add sth up æd ˈsʌmθɪŋ ʌp 60
add to basket/bag æd tuː ˈbɑːskɪt/ bæg 54
addition əˈdɪʃən 60
adjective ˈædʒɪktɪv 4
admin ˈædmɪn 37
admission ədˈmɪʃən 31
adult ˈædʌlt 14
advantage ədˈvɑːntɪdʒ 27
adverb ˈædvɜːb 4
advert ˈædvɜːt 45, 51, 100
advertisement ədˈvɜːtɪsmənt 51
advice ədˈvaɪs 86
advise ədˈvaɪz 37, 88
afford əˈfɔːd 20
afraid (of) əˈfreɪd 77
Africa ˈæfrɪkə 5
after [follow sb/sth] ˈɑːftə 90
after [time/event] ˈɑːftə 92
after that ˈɑːftə ðæt 92
afterwards ˈɑːftəwədz 92
against [compete] əˈgenst 43
against [touching] əˈgenst 90
ages ˈeɪdʒɪz 99
ages ago ˈeɪdʒɪz əˈgəʊ 59
agree [have the same opinion] əˈgriː 66, 77
agree [say yes] əˈgriː 87
aim eɪm 40
air conditioning eə kənˈdɪʃənɪŋ 17
air force eə fɔːs 36
aircraft ˈeəkrɑːft 47, 73
airline ˈeəlaɪn 73
airport ˈeəpɔːt 73
alarm əˈlɑːm 74
album ˈælbəm 45
alive əˈlaɪv 14
all over [everywhere] ɔːl ˈəʊvə 19, 46
all the best ɔːl ðə best 99
allow əˈlaʊ 14
almost ˈɔːlməʊst 14
alone əˈləʊn 15
aloud əˈlaʊd 1
alphabet ˈælfəbet 34
also ˈɔːlsəʊ 93
although ɔːlˈðəʊ 93
altogether ˌɔːltəˈgeðə 13
amazed əˈmeɪzd 89
amazing [very good] əˈmeɪzɪŋ 89
amazing [very surprising] əˈmeɪzɪŋ 89
ambition æmˈbɪʃən 40
American əˈmerɪkən 5
among əˈmʌŋ 90
amount əˈmaʊnt 3, 20
and so on ænd səʊ ɒn 100
anger ˈæŋgə 12
angrily ˈæŋgrɪli 91
ankle ˈæŋkəl 9
anniversary ˌænɪˈvɜːsəri 15
announcement əˈnaʊntsmənt 47
annoyed əˈnɔɪd 89
annoying əˈnɔɪɪŋ 89
annual ˈænjuəl 46, 71
answerphone ˈɑːnsəfəʊn 52
ant ænt 8
antique n ænˈtiːk 62
anti-virus software ˈænti ˈvaɪrəs ˈsɒftweə 53, 54
anxiety æŋˈzaɪəti 12
anxious ˈæŋkʃəs 12
anyway [more importantly] ˈeniweɪ 92
anyway [returning to an earlier subject] ˈeniweɪ 99
apart from əˈpɑːt frɒm 75
apartment əˈpɑːtmənt 17
apologise for sth əˈpɒlədʒaɪz fɔː ˈsʌmθɪŋ 64, 98
apology əˈpɒlədʒi 64
appear [become visible] əˈpɪə 69
appear [seem] əˈpɪə 85
appearance əˈpɪərəns 10
application (computer) ˌæplɪˈkeɪʃən 53
application (job) ˌæplɪˈkeɪʃən 38, 98
apply for sth əˈplaɪ fɔː ˈsʌmθɪŋ 38
appointment əˈpɔɪntmənt 39
approach əˈprəʊtʃ 30
approximately əˈprɒksɪmətli 10, 14
Arabic ˈærəbɪk 5
architect ˈɑːkɪtekt 35, 36
architecture ˈɑːkɪtektʃə 35
Argentina ˌɑːdʒənˈtiːnə 5
Argentinian ˌɑːdʒənˈtɪniən 5
argue ˈɑːgjuː 1
argument [angry discussion] ˈɑːgjəmənt 1
argument [reason to think] ˈɑːgjəmənt 97
armchair ˈɑːmtʃeə 18
army ˈɑːmi 36, 58
arrange əˈreɪndʒ 39
arrangement əˈreɪndʒmənt 39
arrest əˈrest 55
arrival əˈraɪvəl 96
article ˈɑːtɪkəl 51
artist ˈɑːtɪst 70
arts ɑːts 35
as [because] æz 94
as [when] æz 92
as a result æz ə rɪˈzʌlt 94, 97
as if/though æz ɪf/ðəʊ 85
as long as æz lɒŋ æz 94
as soon as æz suːn æz 92
as well (as) æz wel 93
Asia ˈeɪʒə 5
ask sb for sth ɑːsk ˈsʌmbɒdi fɔː ˈsʌmθɪŋ 87
ask sb the way ɑːsk ˈsʌmbɒdi ðə weɪ 30
assistance əˈsɪstəns 95
at [place] æt 90
at [@] æt 54
at all æt ɔːl 66
at first æt ˈfɜːst 14, 92
at home æt həʊm 19
at least æt liːst 1, 61
at night æt naɪt 27
at once æt wʌns 75

at the end æt ði end 78
at the moment æt ðə 'məʊmənt 78
at the same time æt ðə seɪm taɪm 59
athlete 'æθli:t 42
athletic æθ'letɪk 10
athletics æθ'letɪks 42
atmosphere 'ætməsfɪə 24, 33
attachment ə'tætʃmənt 54
attack n ə'tæk 58
attack v ə'tæk 55
attempt n, v ə'tempt 72, 87
attend ə'tend 33, 39
attendance ə'tendəns 39
attitude 'ætɪtju:d 67
attract attention ə'trækt ə'tenʃən 40
attraction ə'trækʃən 49
attractive ə'træktɪv 10
aubergine 'əʊbəʒi:n 25
audience 'ɔ:diəns 45
Australia ɒs'treɪliə 5
Australian ɒs'treɪliən 5
author 'ɔ:θə 44
available ə'veɪləbəl 48, 98
average [typical] 'ævərɪdʒ 10
avoid ə'vɔɪd 87
aware of ə'weər ɒv 77
away [distance] ə'weɪ 28, 29, 61
awful 'ɔ:fəl 89
babysitter 'beɪbi,sɪtə 73
back up sth bæk ʌp 'sʌmθɪŋ 53
backache 'bækeɪk 21
backpack 'bækpæk 22
backup 'bækʌp 53
bag bæg 63
baggage reclaim 'bægɪdʒ rɪ'kleɪm 47
bakery 'beɪkəri 40
balcony 'bælkəni 17
bald bɔ:ld 84
ballet (dancer) 'bæleɪ 45
ballot 'bælət 56
bandage 'bændɪdʒ 21
bank (of a river) bæŋk 28
bank account bæŋk ə'kaʊnt 20
bank loan bæŋk ləʊn 20
bar (of chocolate) bɑ: 63
barbecue n, v 'bɑ:bɪkju: 26
basic 'beɪsɪk 34
basket 'bɑ:skɪt 24
bass guitar beɪs gɪ'tɑ: 45
bass guitarist beɪs gɪ'tɑ:rɪst 45
bath bɑ:θ 16
battle 'bætəl 58
BBC ˌbi:bi:'si: 100
be (just) about to bi: ə'baʊt tu: 75
be delayed bi: dɪ'leɪd 64
be dying for sth bi: 'daɪɪŋ fɔ: 'sʌmθɪŋ 95
be held up bi: held ʌp 64
be in touch bi: ɪn tʌtʃ 99
be into sth [like sth] bi: 'ɪntə 'sʌmθɪŋ 67
beach bi:tʃ 50
beans bi:nz 25
bear beə 8
beat bi:t 43
beauty 'bju:ti 10
because bɪ'kɒz 94
because of bɪ'kɒz ɒv 94
bee bi: 8
beef bi:f 25
before [place] bɪ'fɔ: 90
before [time] bɪ'fɔ: 92
behave bɪ'heɪv 3
behaviour bɪ'heɪvjə 86
belief bɪ'li:f 56
believe [think] bɪ'li:v 97
believe in bɪ'li:v ɪn 56
bell bel 62
belong to bɪ'lɒŋ tu: 77
below bɪ'ləʊ 90
bend n, v bend 30
beneath bɪ'ni:θ 90
beside [next to] bɪ'saɪd 90
besides [giving another reason] bɪ'saɪdz 92
besides [in addition] bɪ'saɪdz 93
best friend best frend 13
best wishes best 'wɪʃɪz 99
beyond bi'jɒnd 90
bicycle 'baɪsɪkəl 29
bike baɪk 29, 100
billion 'bɪliən 60
bin bɪn 39, 86
biography baɪ'ɒgrəfi 44
birth bɜ:θ 14
birthday card 'bɜ:θdeɪ kɑ:d 73
(a) bit of sth bɪt ɒv 'sʌmθɪŋ 86
bitter 'bɪtə 26
blame sb for sth bleɪm 'sʌmbɒdy fɔ: 'sʌmθɪŋ 87
blanket 'blæŋkɪt 18
bleed bli:d 21
bless you bles ju: 68
blind blaɪnd 84
blinds blaɪndz 18
block of flats blɒk ɒv flæts 17
blog blɒg 54
blogger 'blɒgə 54
bloke bləʊk 95
blonde blɒnd 10
blow v bləʊ 7
blow your nose bləʊ jɔ: nəʊz 9
board n, v bɔ:d 47
board [blackboard] n bɔ:d 100
boarding card 'bɔ:dɪŋ kɑ:d 47
boil bɔɪl 26
boiling 'bɔɪlɪŋ 7
bomb bɒm 58
bone bəʊn 62
book v bʊk 48
boots bu:ts 22
bored bɔ:d 89
boring 'bɔ:rɪŋ 89
borrow 'bɒrəʊ 32
both sides of an argument bəʊθ saɪdz ɒv æn 'ɑ:gjəmənt 97
bother 'bɒðə 16
bottle 'bɒtəl 63
bottom 'bɒtəm 9
bowl bəʊl 63
box bɒks 63
boxing 'bɒksɪŋ 42
bracelet 'breɪslət 22
brake n, v breɪk 30, 72
branch (of a company) brɑ:ntʃ 40
branch (of a tree) brɑ:ntʃ 28
Brazil brə'zɪl 5
Brazilian brə'zɪliən 5
break [rest] n breɪk 33
break a record breɪk ə 'rekɔ:d 43
break down breɪk daʊn 39, 80
break in(to sth) breɪk ɪn 55, 80
break the rules breɪk ðə ru:lz 33
break up [end a relationship] breɪk ʌp 15
break up [end of term] breɪk ʌp 33
breast brest 9
breathe (in/out) bri:ð 9
breeze bri:z 50
brick brɪk 36
bride braɪd 15
(bride)groom gru:m 15
bridge brɪdʒ 30
briefly 'bri:fli 91
bright braɪt 22
bring sb luck brɪŋ 'sʌmbɒdi lʌk 46
bring sb up brɪŋ 'sʌmbɒdi ʌp 14
broad brɔ:d 10
broadcast 'brɔ:dkɑ:st 51
broccoli 'brɒkəli 25
broken down 'brəʊkən daʊn 39
browse braʊz 54
browser 'braʊzə 54
brush your teeth brʌʃ jɔ: ti:θ 16
bucket 'bʌkɪt 62
build bɪld 36
builder 'bɪldə 36
bull bʊl 8
bunch bʌntʃ 25, 63
burglar 'bɜ:glə 55
burglary 'bɜ:gləri 55
burn v bɜ:n 19
burst into tears bɜ:st 'ɪntə tɪəz 75
bus bʌs 29
bus driver bʌs 'draɪvə 73
bus station bʌs 'steɪʃən 73
bus stop bʌs stɒp 29, 73
business studies 'bɪznɪs 'stʌdiz 35
businessman/woman 'bɪznɪsmæn/'wʊmən 35
butterfly 'bʌtəflaɪ 8
button 'bʌtən 22
by [how much] baɪ 41
by [near] baɪ 90
by [next to] baɪ 90
by [not later than] baɪ 59
by accident baɪ 'æksɪdənt 78

by chance baɪ tʃɑːns 78
by hand baɪ hænd 78
by mistake baɪ mɪ'steɪk 78
by the way baɪ ðə weɪ 75
cabbage 'kæbɪdʒ 25
cabin crew 'kæbɪn kruː 47
cage keɪdʒ 8
calculate 'kælkjəleɪt 60
calculation ˌkælkjə'leɪʃən 60
calculator 'kælkjəleɪtə 39, 60
calendar 'kælɪndə 39
calf kɑːf 25
call [describe sb] kɔːl 33
call [phone] kɔːl 52
call for sb kɔːl fɔː 'sʌmbɒdi 80
calm (person) kɑːm 11
calm (sea) kɑːm 50
camel 'kæməl 8
camping 'kæmpɪŋ 42
campsite 'kæmpsaɪt 73
can (of cola) kæn 63
can't help it kaːnt help ɪt 76
can't stand kaːnt stænd 67
canal kə'næl 6
cancel 'kænsəl 64
cancer 'kænsə 21
candidate 'kændɪdət 34
Cantonese ˌkæntə'niːz 5
cap kæp 22
capital [city] 'kæpɪtəl 5
capital letter 'kæpɪtəl 'letə 4
captain 'kæptɪn 43
car park kɑː pɑːk 27
cardinal number 'kɑːdɪnəl 'nʌmbə 60
care keə 56
career aim kə'rɪər eɪm 96
careful 'keəfəl 71
careless 'keələs 71
Caribbean ˌkærɪ'biːən 5
caring 'keərɪŋ 12
carpenter 'kɑːpɪntə 36
carpet 'kɑːpɪt 18
carrot 'kærət 25
carry guns 'kæri gʌnz 58
carry on (with sth) 'kæri ɒn 79
carton 'kɑːtən 63
case keɪs 100
cash kæʃ 20
cashpoint 'kæʃpɔɪnt 20, 73
castle 'kɑːsəl 49
casual 'kæʒjuəl 22
catch (a bus/train) kætʃ 29
catch (a criminal) kætʃ 55
cathedral kə'θiːdrəl 49
cause kɔːz 97
cave keɪv 6
CD player ˌsiː'diː 'pleɪə 32
celebrate 'seləbreɪt 15, 46
celebration ˌselə'breɪʃən 15
celebrity sə'lebrəti 51
cellist 'tʃelɪst 45
cello 'tʃeləʊ 45
central heating 'sentrəl 'hiːtɪŋ 17
century 'sentʃəri 44, 59
cereal 'sɪəriəl 16
ceremony 'serɪməni 15
certificate sə'tɪfɪkət 3, 35
champion 'tʃæmpiən 43
championship 'tʃæmpiənʃɪp 43
chance [opportunity] tʃɑːns 86
chance [possibility that sth will happen] tʃɑːns 86
change into sth tʃeɪndʒ 'ɪntə 'sʌmθɪŋ 22
change your mind tʃeɪndʒ jɔː maɪnd 76
changing room 'tʃeɪndʒɪŋ ruːm 23
channel [TV] 'tʃænəl 51
character [good qualities] 'kærəktə 17
character [personality] 'kærəktə 11
charge v tʃɑːdʒ 20, 41
charming 'tʃɑːmɪŋ 17
chat n, v tʃæt 16, 72
chat show tʃæt ʃəʊ 51
check [examine] tʃek 20, 47
check out tʃek aʊt 48
checkout [online shopping] 'tʃekaʊt 54
checkout [supermarket] 'tʃekaʊt 24
check your email tʃek jɔːr 'iːmeɪl 54
check-in (desk) 'tʃekɪn 47
cheek tʃiːk 9, 68
cheerful 'tʃɪəfəl 12
cheers [a toast] tʃɪəz 68
cheers [goodbye] tʃɪəz 68
cheers [thanks] tʃɪəz 64, 95
chef ʃef 26
chest tʃest 9
chest of drawers tʃest ɒv drɔːz 73
childhood 'tʃaɪldhʊd 14
chilly 'tʃɪli 7
chin tʃɪn 9
China 'tʃaɪnə 5
Chinese tʃaɪ'niːz 5
choice tʃɔɪs 18
chop tʃɒp 26
circle 'sɜːkəl 62
classical music 'klæsɪkəl 'mjuːzɪk 45
clean kliːn 1, 27
clean your teeth kliːn jɔː tiːθ 16
cleaner 'kliːnə 16
clear (sky) klɪə 7
clear sth up klɪə 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp 19
clever 'klevə 11
click on (a link) klɪk ɒn 54
client 'klaɪənt 40
cliff klɪf 50
climate 'klaɪmət 6
climate change 'klaɪmət tʃeɪndʒ 57
close family kləʊs 'fæməli 13
clothes kləʊðz 23
cloud klaʊd 7
cloudy 'klaʊdi 7
coach kəʊtʃ 29
coast kəʊst 50
coconut 'kəʊkənʌt 25
coin kɔɪn 20
cold kəʊld 7
collar 'kɒlə 22
colleague 'kɒliːg 39
colourful 'kʌləfəl 71
comb your hair kəʊm jɔː heə 9
come out [be available] kʌm aʊt 45, 51
come out [sun] kʌm aʊt 7
come round [visit] kʌm raʊnd 16
comedy 'kɒmədi 44
comfortable 'kʌmftəbəl 71
comma 'kɒmə 4
commence kə'mens 95
commit a crime kə'mɪt ə kraɪm 55
compare kəm'peə 97
compared with/to kəm'peəd wɪð/ tuː 97
comparison kəm'pærɪsən 97
competition ˌkɒmpə'tɪʃən 43
complain kəm'pleɪn 29, 37, 77
complaint kəm'pleɪnt 29, 37
completely kəm'pliːtli 91
complicated 'kɒmplɪkeɪtɪd 44, 96
composer kəm'pəʊzə 45
concentrate 'kɒnsəntreɪt 77
conditions kən'dɪʃənz 37
conductor kən'dʌktə 45
confident 'kɒnfɪdənt 11
confirm kən'fɜːm 98
confused kən'fjuːzd 12, 89
confusing kən'fjuːzɪŋ 89
confusion kən'fjuːʒən 12
congratulations kənˌgrætʃʊ'leɪʃənz 68
conjunction kən'dʒʌŋkʃən 4
connect kə'nekt 54
connected to/with kə'nektɪd tuː/ wɪð 3
consequently 'kɒntsɪkwəntli 97
consider kən'sɪdə 87
consist of kən'sɪst ɒv 6, 46
consonant 'kɒnsənənt 34
constituency kən'stɪtjuənsi 56
consultant kən'sʌltənt 37
contacts 'kɒntækts 40
container kən'teɪnə 63
contents 'kɒntents 51, 63
continent 'kɒntɪnənt 5
contrast n 'kɒntrɑːst 6
contrast v 'kɒn'trɑːst 97
convenient kən'viːniənt 24, 29
convince kən'vɪns 88
cook n kʊk 26
cooker 'kʊkə 18, 26
cool kuːl 7
copy 'kɒpi 53
correct adj kə'rekt 69
correct v kə'rekt 32
cottage 'kɒtɪdʒ 17
cotton 'kɒtən 62
cough kɒf 21

Could I speak to ...? kʊd aɪ spi:k tu: 52
(I) could not believe my eyes kʊd nɒt bɪ'li:v maɪ aɪz 76
Could you (possibly) ...? kʊd ju: 65
countable (noun) 'kaʊntəbəl 4
country of origin 'kʌntri ɒv 'ɒrɪdʒɪn 96
countryside 'kʌntrɪsaɪd 28
couple [several] 'kʌpəl 15, 61, 63
courgette kɔ:'ʒet 25
course [sport] kɔ:s 42
course (of a meal) kɔ:s 48
court (of law) kɔ:t 55
court [sport] kɔ:t 42
cousin 'kʌzən 13
cover v 'kʌvə 6
crab kræb 25
crash [computer] kræʃ 53
crash into sth kræʃ 'ɪntə 'sʌmθɪŋ 30
create kri'eɪt 53, 57
creative kri'eɪtɪv 11, 12
creature 'kri:tʃə 8
credit card 'kredɪt kɑ:d 73
crime kraɪm 55
crime rate kraɪm reɪt 27
criminal 'krɪmɪnəl 55
crop krɒp 28
crossroads 'krɒsrəʊdz 73
crowded 'kraʊdɪd 27
cry kraɪ 9
cucumber 'kju:kʌmbə 25
cultural 'kʌltʃərəl 27, 71
culture 'kʌltʃə 27
cup [sport] kʌp 3
cupboard 'kʌbəd 18
cure n, v kjʊə 72
curiosity ˌkjʊəri'ɒsəti 12
curious 'kjʊəriəs 12
curly 'kɜ:li 10
currency 'kʌrənsi 20
current 'kʌrənt 13
currently 'kʌrəntli 40
cushion 'kʊʃən 18
custom 'kʌstəm 46
customary 'kʌstəməri 46
customs 'kʌstəmz 47
cut [computer] v kʌt 53
cut [injure] v kʌt 21
cut [reduce] v kʌt 56
CV ˌsi:'vi: 38, 96, 100
cycle 'saɪkəl 29
cyclist 'saɪklɪst 29
daily 'deɪli 1, 40, 51
damage n, v 'dæmɪdʒ 30
dangerous 'deɪndʒərəs 27
dancer 'da:ntsə 70
dark dɑ:k 17
dark (hair) dɑ:k 10
date [day] deɪt 2
date [romantic meeting] deɪt 15
date of arrival/departure deɪt ɒv ə'raɪvəl/dɪ'pɑ:tʃə 96
date of birth deɪt ɒv bɜ:θ 96
day after day deɪ 'ɑ:ftə deɪ 75
day-to-day ˌdeɪtə'deɪ 37
dead ded 1, 14, 58
deaf def 84
deal with di:l wɪð 37
Dear Sir/Madam dɪə sɜ:/ 'mædəm 98
death deθ 58
decade 'dekeɪd 59
decimal 'desɪməl 60
decrease n 'di:kri:s 41
decrease v di:'kri:s 41
defeat n, v dɪ'fi:t 43
defend dɪ'fend 58
definite article 'defɪnət 'ɑ:tɪkəl 4
definition ˌdefɪ'nɪʃən 3
degree [amount] dɪ'gri: 91
degree [university] dɪ'gri: 35
degree(s) [temperature] dɪ'gri: 6, 7
delay dɪ'leɪ 47, 64, 98
delete dɪ'li:t 54
delicious dɪ'lɪʃəs 26, 89
delighted dɪ'laɪtɪd 89
deliver dɪ'lɪvə 40
demand n dɪ'mɑ:nd 40
demand v dɪ'mɑ:nd 87
dentist 'dentɪst 36
depart dɪ'pɑ:t 95
departure dɪ'pɑ:tʃə 47
departures board dɪ'pɑ:tʃəz bɔ:d 47
depend (on sth) [not sure about sth] dɪ'pend 74, 77
depend on sb [need sb to support you] dɪ'pend ɒn 'sʌmbɒdi 77
deposit dɪ'pɒzɪt 20
depressed dɪ'prest 12, 89
depressing dɪ'presɪŋ 89
depth depθ 61
design dɪ'zaɪn 36
designer label dɪ'zaɪnə 'leɪbəl 23
despite dɪ'spaɪt 93
dessert dɪ'zɜ:t 48
destination ˌdestɪ'neɪʃən 47
destroy dɪ'strɔɪ 57, 58
details 'di:teɪlz 98
detective dɪ'tektɪv 55
develop dɪ'veləp 70
development dɪ'veləpmənt 70
dial 'daɪəl 52
dialling code 'daɪəlɪŋ kəʊd 52
diary 'daɪəri 39
die daɪ 58
diet [lose weight] n,v 'daɪət 72
different from 'dɪfərənt frɒm 77
direct (a film) dɪ'rekt 44
direct sb dɪ'rekt 'sʌmbɒdi 30
directing dɪ'rektɪŋ 44
director (of a company) dɪ'rektə 70
director (of a film) dɪ'rektə 44
dirty 'dɜ:ti 1, 27
disadvantage ˌdɪsəd'vɑ:ntɪdʒ 27
disagree ˌdɪsə'gri: 66, 69
disappear ˌdɪsə'pɪə 69
disappointed ˌdɪsə'pɔɪntɪd 12, 89
disappointing ˌdɪsə'pɔɪntɪŋ 89
disappointment ˌdɪsə'pɔɪntmənt 12
disc jockey (DJ) dɪsk 'dʒɒki 73
discuss dɪ'skʌs 70
discussion dɪ'skʌʃən 70
disease dɪ'zi:z 21
dishonest dɪ'sɒnɪst 11, 69
dislike n, v dɪ'slaɪk 67
display dɪ'spleɪ 46
distance 'dɪstəns 6, 61
disturb dɪ'stɜ:b 31
dive n, v daɪv 72
divide [maths] dɪ'vaɪd 60
divide [separate] dɪ'vaɪd 33
diving 'daɪvɪŋ 50
division dɪ'vɪʒən 60
divorce dɪ'vɔ:s 15
DJ (disc jockey) ˌdi:'dʒeɪ 73
do [study] du: 33
do a bit/lot of (sightseeing/hiking etc.) du: ə bɪt/lɒt ɒv 42, 49
do a course du: ə kɔ:s 81
do an Internet search du: æn 'ɪntənet sɜ:tʃ 54
do exercise du: 'eksəsaɪz 42, 81
do homework du: 'həʊmwɜ:k 81
do housework du: 'haʊswɜ:k 16, 81
do not leave bags unattended du: nɒt li:v bægz ˌʌnə'tendɪd 31
do research du: rɪ'sɜ:tʃ 35
do something/nothing du: 'sʌmθɪŋ 'nʌθɪŋ 81
do sth up du: 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp 22
do the shopping du: ðə 'ʃɒpɪŋ 16
do the washing/ironing (etc.) du: ðə 'wɒʃɪŋ/'aɪənɪŋ 16
do well du: wel 34
do your best du: jɔ: best 34, 81
do your hair/make-up du: jɔ: heə/meɪk ʌp 81
do/work overtime du:/wɜ:k 'əʊvətaɪm 37
do/write an essay du:/raɪt æn 'eseɪ 34
document 'dɒkjəmənt 53
documentary ˌdɒkjə'mentəri 51
dolphin 'dɒlfɪn 8
don't worry dəʊnt 'wʌri 64
donkey 'dɒŋki 8
dot (in an email address) dɒt 54
double (double four nine) 'dʌbəl 60
double room 'dʌbəl ru:m 48
double-click ˌdʌbəl'klɪk 53
down [further along] daʊn 61
down [to a lower place] daʊn 90

download ˌdaʊnˈləʊd 45, 54
downstairs ˌdaʊnˈsteəz 17
dozen ˈdʌzən 63
Dr ˈdɒktə 100
draw (a game) n, v drɔː 43
draw (pictures) drɔː 2
dreadful ˈdredfəl 89
dream n, v driːm 72
dress v dres 23, 33
dress in dres ɪn 23
dress up dres ʌp 46
drop v drɒp 19
drop (of milk) drɒp 63
drought draʊt 57
drummer ˈdrʌmə 45
drums drʌmz 45
due to djuː tuː 94
dull dʌl 27
during ˈdjʊərɪŋ 59
duty free ˈdjuːti friː 47
duvet ˈduːveɪ 18
e.g. iːˈdʒiː 100
early (20s/30s, etc.) ˈɜːli 14
earn ɜːn 20, 37
earrings ˈɪərɪŋz 22, 73
east iːst 6
Earth [planet] ɜːθ 6
eat in/out iːt ɪn aʊt 16
economics ˌiːkəˈnɒmɪks 35
economist ɪˈkɒnəmɪst 35, 70
economy ɪˈkɒnəmi 41
effect ɪˈfekt 12, 57, 97
efficient ɪˈfɪʃənt 57
Egypt ˈiːdʒɪpt 5
Egyptian ɪˈdʒɪpʃən 5
elbow ˈelbəʊ 9
elder ˈeldə 13
elderly ˈeldəli 14, 56
elect ɪˈlekt 56
election ɪˈlekʃən 56
electrical ɪˈlektrɪkəl 71
electrician ɪˌlekˈtrɪʃən 36
elephant ˈelɪfənt 8
embarrassed ɪmˈbærəst 89
embarrassing ɪmˈbærəsɪŋ 89
emergency ɪˈmɜːdʒənsi 52
emergency services ɪˈmɜːdʒənsi ˈsɜːvɪsɪz 36
emotion ɪˈməʊʃən 12
emotional ɪˈməʊʃənəl 12
emphasise ˈemfəsaɪz 3
employ sb ɪmˈplɔɪ ˈsʌmbɒdi 38
employee ɪmˈplɔiː 40
en suite ˌɒnˈswiːt 18
enclose ɪnˈkləʊz 98
encourage ɪnˈkʌrɪdʒ 88
endangered animals ɪnˈdeɪndʒəd ˈænɪməlz 8
end up end ʌp 30
enemy ˈenəmi 58
energetic ˌenəˈdʒetɪk 12
energy ˈenədʒi 57
engaged [busy] ɪnˈgeɪdʒd 52
engagement ɪnˈgeɪdʒmənt 15
engineer ˌendʒɪˈnɪə 36
engineering ˌendʒɪˈnɪərɪŋ 35
English ˈɪŋglɪʃ 5
enjoy (+ *-ing*) ɪnˈdʒɔɪ 87
enjoyable ɪnˈdʒɔɪəbəl 71
enormous ɪˈnɔːməs 61, 89
enquire about sth ɪnˈkwaɪə əˈbaʊt ˈsʌmθɪŋ 98
enrolment form ɪnˈrəʊlmənt fɔːm 96
enter (a password) ˈentə 53
entertain ˌentəˈteɪn 44
entertainer ˌentəˈteɪnə 44
entertainment ˌentəˈteɪnmənt 44
entrance ˈentrəns 24
entry form ˈentri fɔːm 96
environment ɪnˈvaɪrənmənt 57
e-paper iː ˈpeɪpə 51
equal adj ˈiːkwəl 56
equals v ˈiːkwəlz 60
equipment ɪˈkwɪpmənt 86
escape ɪˈskeɪp 55
essay ˈeseɪ 35
essential ɪˈsenʃəl 54, 89
etc. et ˈsetərə 100
EU ˌiːˈjuː 100
Europe ˈjʊərəp 5
even though ˈiːvən ðəʊ 93
eventually ɪˈventʃuəli 92
ever since ˈevə sɪns 13
exam ɪgˈzæm 100
except for ɪkˈsept fɔː 75
excess baggage ɪkˈses ˈbægɪdʒ 47
excessive ɪkˈsesɪv 57
excuse n ɪkˈskjuːs 64
excuse me [attract attention] ɪkˈskjuːz miː 68
excuse me [say sorry] ɪkˈskjuːz miː 64
ex-girlfriend/wife (etc.) eks ˈgɜːlfrend/waɪf 13
exhausted ɪgˈzɔːstɪd 27, 89
exist ɪgˈzɪst 57
existence ɪgˈzɪstənts 57
existing ɪgˈzɪstɪŋ 53
exit (stop using an application) v ˈeksɪt 53
expand ɪkˈspænd 40
expect ɪkˈspekt 88
expecting a baby ɪkˈspektɪŋ ə ˈbeɪbi 74
experience [knowledge] ɪkˈspɪəriəns 38, 86
experience [sth that happens to you] ɪkˈspɪəriəns 86
experiment v ɪkˈsperɪmənt 34
expert ˈekspɜːt 40
explain ɪkˈspleɪn 32
explain the difference between X and Y ɪkˈspleɪn ðə ˈdɪfərəns bɪˈtwiːn eks ænd waɪ 32
explanation ˌeksplə'neɪʃən 2, 32
explode ɪkˈspləʊd 58
explore ɪkˈsplɔː 49
extremely ɪkˈstriːmli 7, 91
facilities fəˈsɪlətiz 48
fail (an exam) v feɪl 34
fair [equal] feə 56
fair [hair] feə 10
fairly ˈfeəli 91
fall n, v fɔːl 41
fall asleep fɔːl əˈsliːp 16
fall in love fɔːl ɪn lʌv 74
fall over fɔːl ˈəʊvə 19, 79
famous feɪməs 71
fancy (doing) sth ˈfænsi ˈsʌmθɪŋ 44, 65, 99
FAQs ˌefeɪˈkjuːz 53
Far East ˌfɑːr ˈiːst 5
fare feə 29
farewell ˌfeəˈwel 68
farmhouse ˈfɑːmhaʊs 28
farming ˈfɑːmɪŋ 28
fascinating ˈfæsɪneɪtɪŋ 89
fashionable ˈfæʃənəbəl 71
fast asleep fɑːst əˈsliːp 74
fasten ˈfɑːsən 47
fear n fɪə 41
fee(s) fiː 20
feed fiːd 16, 31
feel [believe] fiːl 66
feel [experience] n, v fiːl 85
feel bad about sth fiːl bæd əˈbaʊt ˈsʌmθɪŋ 76
feel sick fiːl sɪk 21
feelings ˈfiːlɪŋz 12
feet [measurement] fiːt 61
female ˈfiːmeɪl 33, 68
fence fens 28
festival ˈfestɪvəl 46
fiction ˈfɪkʃən 44
field fiːld 28
fifty-pence piece ˈfɪfti pens piːs 20
fight faɪt 58
figures (number) ˈfɪgəz 41
file (computer) faɪl 53
file menu faɪl ˈmenjuː 53
files faɪlz 39
filing cabinet ˈfaɪlɪŋ ˈkæbɪnət 39
fill sth in fɪl ˈsʌmθɪŋ ɪn 96
film director fɪlm dɪˈrektə 44
film-maker fɪlm ˈmeɪkə 73
filthy ˈfɪlθi 1
final n ˈfaɪnəl 43
finally ˈfaɪnəli 92
find out faɪnd aʊt 79
fine n faɪn 55
fire brigade faɪə brɪˈgeɪd 36
fireman/firefighter ˈfaɪəmən ˈfaɪəfaɪtə 36
fireworks ˈfaɪəwɜːks 46
firm adj fɜːm 18
firm n fɜːm 40
first language fɜːst ˈlæŋgwɪdʒ 5
first of all fɜːst ɒv ɔːl 92
first(ly) fɜːst 92
fit adj fɪt 70
fit v fɪt 23
fitness ˈfɪtnəs 70
fix fɪks 36
fixed (hours) fɪkst 37
flag flæg 62
flat n flæt 17

flautist 'flɔ:tɪst 45
flavour 'fleɪvə 26
flight flaɪt 29
flight number flaɪt 'nʌmbə 47
flood flʌd 57
floor flɔ: 18
flu flu: 21, 100
fluent 'flu:ənt 34
flute flu:t 45
fly n flaɪ 8
fly v flaɪ 29
fog fɒg 7
foggy 'fɒgi 7
fold your arms fəʊld jɔ:r ɑ:mz 9
folk music fəʊk 'mju:zɪk 45
footballer 'fʊtbɔ:lə 70
footpath 'fʊtpɑ:θ 28
for fɔ: 59
for a start fɔ:r ə stɑ:t 92
for ages fɔ:r 'eɪdʒɪz 59
for example fɔ:r ɪg'zɑ:mpəl 100
for fun fɔ: fʌn 42
for instance fɔ:r 'ɪnstəns 75
for one thing fɔ: wʌn θɪŋ 92
for pleasure fɔ: 'pleʒə 42
for the time being fɔ: ðə taɪm 'bi:ɪŋ 59
forehead 'fɒrɪd 9
forget fə'get 2, 19
former 'fɔ:mə 40
fortnight 'fɔ:tnaɪt 59
fortunately 'fɔ:tʃənətli 16
forum 'fɔ:rəm 51
fossil fuel 'fɒsəl 'fju:əl 57
fountain 'faʊntɪn 49
fraction 'frækʃən 60
fragile 'frædʒaɪl 31
France frɑ:ns 5
freezing 'fri:zɪŋ 7
French frentʃ 5
frequency 'fri:kwəntsi 91
frequently 'fri:kwəntli 91
fresh freʃ 24
fresh air freʃ eə 28
fridge frɪdʒ 100
fridge/freezer frɪdʒ 'fri:zə 18
friendly 'frendli 11
friendship 'frendʃɪp 13
frightened 'fraɪtənd 12
frog frɒg 8
fry fraɪ 26
frying pan 'fraɪɪŋ pæn 26
full stop fʊl stɒp 4, 73
full-time ˌfʊl'taɪm 38
fully-booked 'fʊli bʊkt 48
fur fɜ: 62
furniture 'fɜ:nɪtʃə 86
garlic 'gɑ:lɪk 25
gate geɪt 28
gate (3/5/10, etc.) (airport) geɪt 47
gather 'gæðə 46
general election 'dʒenərəl ɪ'lekʃən 56
generalisation ˌdʒenərəlaɪ'zeɪʃən 97
generation ˌdʒenəreɪʃən 40
generous 'dʒenərəs 11
German 'dʒɜ:mən 5
Germany 'dʒɜ:məni 5
get [answer] get 83
get [arrive] get 83
get [become] get 83
get [do a task] get 83
get [fetch] get 83
get a job get ə dʒɒb 33
get away [escape] get ə'weɪ 55, 58
get better get 'betə 83
get divorced get dɪ'vɔ:st 15
get dressed get drest 22, 69
get engaged get ɪn'geɪdʒd 15
get in [arrive] get ɪn 80, 83
get in [enter] get ɪn 29, 83
get in touch get ɪn tʌtʃ 83
get into trouble get 'ɪntə 'trʌbəl 33
get lost get lɒst 30, 49
get married to sb get 'mærid tu: 'sʌmbɒdi 13, 15
get off (a bus) get ɒf 29
get on (a bus) get ɒn 29
get on (with sb) get ɒn 13, 79
get out [leave] get aʊt 29, 83
get over sth get 'əʊvə 'sʌmθɪŋ 80
get rid of sth get rɪd ɒv 'sʌmθɪŋ 75, 83
get sth back get 'sʌmθɪŋ bæk 83
get sth done get 'sʌmθɪŋ dʌn 83
get sth wrong get 'sʌmθɪŋ rɒŋ 34, 83
get stuck get stʌk 27, 60
get through [make contact] get θru: 52
get through sth [finish] get θru: 'sʌmθɪŋ 34
get to know sb get tu: nəʊ 'sʌmbɒdi 13, 15, 83
get to sleep get tu: sli:p 83
get together get tə'geðə 83, 99
get undressed get ʌn'drest 69
get up get ʌp 16
get used to sth get ju:st tu: 'sʌmθɪŋ 67
get worse get wɜ:s 19, 83
giant 'dʒaɪənt 61
giraffe dʒɪ'rɑ:f 8
give [cause an effect] gɪv 82
give a speech/lecture (etc.) gɪv ə spi:tʃ/'lektʃə 82
give my regards/love to ... gɪv maɪ rɪ'gɑ:dz/lʌv tu: 99
give sb advice gɪv 'sʌmbɒdi əd'vaɪs 37
give sb a hand gɪv 'sʌmbɒdi ə hænd 82
give sb a hug gɪv 'sʌmbɒdi ə hʌg 82
give sb a kiss gɪv 'sʌmbɒdi ə kɪs 72
give sb a ring gɪv 'sʌmbɒdi ə rɪŋ 52, 72, 82
give sb a shock gɪv 'sʌmbɒdi ə ʃɒk 82
give sb the sack gɪv 'sʌmbɒdi ðə sæk 38
give sth away gɪv 'sʌmθɪŋ ə'weɪ 79
give sth a push gɪv 'sʌmθɪŋ ə pʊʃ 82
give up (sth) [stop doing an activity] gɪv ʌp 43, 79
give up sth [leave a job] gɪv ʌp 'sʌmθɪŋ 15
global warming 'gləʊbəl 'wɔ:mɪŋ 57
go [disappear] gəʊ 84
go [lead somewhere] gəʊ 84
go (out) for a walk/drive (etc.) gəʊ fɔ:r ə wɔ:k/draɪv 84
go (swimming/shopping, etc.) gəʊ 16, 42, 84
go and get [fetch] gəʊ ænd get 83, 84
go away [go on holiday] gəʊ ə'weɪ 79, 84
go away [leave] gəʊ ə'weɪ 79
go back gəʊ bæk 79, 84
go by bike/car (etc.) gəʊ baɪ/baɪk kɑ: 29
go down gəʊ daʊn 41
go for [choose] gəʊ fɔ: 84
go for (a swim/drive, etc.) gəʊ fɔ: 50, 84
go grey/bald/deaf (etc.) gəʊ greɪ/ bɔ:ld/def 84
go into business gəʊ 'ɪntə 'bɪznɪs 35
go mad [become angry] gəʊ mæd 84
go off [electricity] gəʊ ɒf 79
go off [explode] gəʊ ɒf 79
go off [go bad] gəʊ ɒf 79
go off [ring] gəʊ ɒf 79
go on [happen] gəʊ ɒn 27, 84
go on (to do sth) gəʊ ɒn 33, 35
go on a diet gəʊ ɒn ə 'daɪət 72, 74
go online gəʊ ˌɒn'laɪn 54
go out [social activity] gəʊ aʊt 16, 49
go out [stop working] gəʊ aʊt 84
go out with sb gəʊ aʊt wɪð 'sʌmbɒdi 15
go sightseeing gəʊ 'saɪtsi:ɪŋ 49
go through gəʊ θru: 47
go to bed gəʊ tu: bed 16
go to sleep gəʊ tu: sli:p 16
go up gəʊ ʌp 41
go well/badly gəʊ wel/'bædli 84
go with sth gəʊ wɪð 'sʌmθɪŋ 23
go wrong gəʊ rɒŋ 15, 84
goalkeeper 'gəʊlˌki:pə 42
goat gəʊt 8
golf course gɒlf kɔ:s 42
good luck gʊd lʌk 68
good/bad at sth gʊd/bæd æt 'sʌmθɪŋ 26, 77
good-looking ˌgʊd'lʊkɪŋ 10
gorgeous 'gɔ:dʒəs 10
govern 'gʌvən 70

government 'gʌvənmənt 56, 70
GP ˌdʒiː'piː 36
grade greɪd 34, 35
gradual(ly) 'grædʒuəl 41
graduate n 'grædʒuət 35, 98
grant [allow] grɑːnt 95
grapes greɪps 25
grass grɑːs 28
great greɪt 95
great fun greɪt fʌn 74
great importance greɪt ɪm'pɔːtənts 74
Greece griːs 5
Greek griːk 5
greenhouse effect 'griːnhaʊs ɪ'fekt 57
greenhouse gases 'griːnhaʊs 'gæsɪz 57
greet griːt 68
greeting 'griːtɪŋ 68
grey greɪ 62
grill n, v grɪl 26
ground graʊnd 28
growing 'grəʊɪŋ 40, 41
guess n, v ges 3, 72
guidebook 'gaɪdbʊk 49
guilty 'gɪlti 55
guitar gɪ'tɑː 45
guitarist gɪ'tɑːrɪst 45
gun gʌn 36, 58
gym dʒɪm 42, 100
haggle 'hægəl 24
haircut 'heəkʌt 73
hairdresser 'heəˌdresə 73
hairdryer 'heəˌdraɪə 73
half hɑːf 60
half a dozen hɑːf ə 'dʌzən 63
hand luggage hænd 'lʌgɪdʒ 47
hand sth out hænd 'sʌmθɪŋ aʊt 80
handle v 'hændəl 37
handsome 'hænsəm 10
handwriting 'hænd,raɪtɪŋ 96
hang around hæŋ ə'raʊnd 80
happiness 'hæpɪnəs 70
harbour 'hɑːbə 46
hard drive/disk hɑːd draɪv/dɪsk 53
hard work hɑːd wɜːk 34
hardly ever 'hɑːdli 'evə 91
hard-working ˌhɑːd'wɜːkɪŋ 11
hate heɪt 67, 87
have a (swim/drink, etc.) hæv ə 50
have a good ear for language hæv ə gʊd ɪə fɔː 'læŋgwɪdʒ 34
have a great/nice/terrible time hæv ə greɪt/naɪs/'terəbəl taɪm 49
have a look hæv ə lʊk 81
have a look round hæv ə lʊk raʊnd 49
have a wash/shower etc. hæv ə wɒʃ/ʃaʊə 16, 81
have a word with sb hæv ə wɜːd wɪð 'sʌmbodi 76
have an early night hæv æn 'ɜːli naɪt 16
have children hæv 'tʃɪldrən 74
have got sth on hæv gɒt 'sʌmθɪŋ ɒn 23
have no idea hæv nəʊ aɪ'dɪə 76
have something/nothing in common hæv 'sʌmθɪŋ/'nʌθɪŋ ɪn 'kɒmən 67
have time for sth hæv taɪm fɔː 'sʌmθɪŋ 59
headache 'hedeɪk 21
headline 'hedlaɪn 51
headquarters ˌhed'kwɔːtəz 40
hear hɪə 85
heart [in the body] hɑːt 21
heart of somewhere hɑːt ɒv 'sʌmweə 48, 58
heart attack hɑːt ə'tæk 21
heat v hiːt 17
heavy (rain) 'hevi 7
heavy (traffic) 'hevi 74
Hebrew 'hiːbruː 5
heel hiːl 9
height haɪt 10, 61
held [organised] held 46
help help 88
helpful 'helpfəl 71
hen hen 25
hi haɪ 99
hide haɪd 58
high (mountain) haɪ 61
highlight 'haɪlaɪt 32
highlighter pen 'haɪˌlaɪtə pen 1, 32
hill hɪl 28
hips hɪps 9
hire 'haɪə 20
historic monument hɪ'stɒrɪk 'mɒnjəmənt 49
hit hɪt 19, 55
hold an election həʊld æn ɪ'lekʃən 56
hold on [wait] həʊld ɒn 80
hold-up həʊld ʌp 64
honest 'ɒnɪst 11, 69
honeymoon 'hʌnimuːn 15
hope that ... həʊp ðæt 88
hope to do sth həʊp tuː duː 'sʌmθɪŋ 87, 99
hopeful 'həʊpfəl 12
hopeless 'həʊpləs 19, 28
horrible 'hɒrəbəl 26
horror film 'hɒrə fɪlm 44
housework 'haʊswɜːk 16
How about ...? [making a suggestion] haʊ ə'baʊt 65, 68
How about you? [asking sb sth] haʊ ə'baʊt juː 68
How are things? haʊ ɑː θɪŋz 68
How do you feel about ...? haʊ duː juː fiːl ə'baʊt 66
How long/wide (etc.) is ...? haʊ lɒŋ/waɪd x ɪz 61
How's it going? haʊz ɪt 'gəʊɪŋ 68
however haʊ'evə 93, 97
hug hʌg 82
huge hjuːdʒ 61, 89
humid 'hjuːmɪd 7
hundred 'hʌndrəd 60
hurry (up) 'hʌri 79
hurt v hɜːt 21
I am pleased to inform you ... aɪ æm pliːzd tuː ɪn'fɔːm juː 98
I am writing in response to ... aɪ ˌæm 'raɪtɪŋ ɪn rɪ'spɒns tuː 98
I am writing to ... aɪ æm 'raɪtɪŋ tuː 98
I beg your pardon aɪ beg jɔː 'pɑːdən 64
I bet aɪ bet 95
I don't believe it aɪ dəʊnt bɪ'liːv ɪt 76
I don't fancy that aɪ dəʊnt 'fænsi ðæt 65
I don't mind aɪ dəʊnt maɪnd 65
I look forward to hearing from you aɪ lʊk 'fɔːwəd tuː 'hɪərɪŋ frɒm juː 98
I must apologise for ... aɪ mʌst ə'pɒlədʒaɪz fɔː 64
I regret to inform you ... aɪ rɪ'gret tuː ɪn'fɔːm juː 98
I see what you mean aɪ siː wɒt juː miːn 66
I suppose so aɪ sə'pəʊz səʊ 76
I was wondering if you could ... aɪ wɒz 'wʌndərɪŋ ɪf juː kʊd 65
I wonder if you could ... aɪ 'wʌndər ɪf juː kʊd 65
I would be grateful if you could ... aɪ wʊd biː 'greɪtfəl ɪf juː kʊd 98
i.e. aɪ'iː 100
I'd rather ... aɪd 'rɑːðə 65
I'll have (chicken/fish, etc.) aɪl hæv 48
I'll leave it aɪl liːv ɪt 23
I'll take it aɪl teɪk ɪt 23
I'm afraid I can't aɪm ə'freɪd aɪ kɑːnt 65
I'm being served aɪm 'biːɪŋ sɜːvd 23
I'm looking for ... aɪm 'lʊkɪŋ fɔː 23
I'm sorry aɪm 'sɒri 64
I'm sorry I'm late aɪm 'sɒri aɪm leɪt 64
ice aɪs 7
ice hockey aɪs 'hɒki 42, 73
icon 'aɪkɒn 53
icy 'aɪsi 7
ID aɪ'diː 100
ID card aɪ'diː kɑːd 73
if I were you ɪf aɪ wɜː juː 75
if you like ɪf juː laɪk 65
ill ɪl 70
illegal ɪ'liːgəl 69
illness 'ɪlnəs 21, 70
image 'ɪmɪdʒ 40
imagine ɪ'mædʒɪn 87
immediately ɪ'miːdiətli 54
impatient ɪm'peɪʃənt 11
improve ɪm'pruːv 70
improvement ɪm'pruːvmənt 70

in [place] ɪn 90
in a bad mood ɪn ə bæd muːd 19
in a hurry ɪn ə ˈhʌri 27, 78
in a moment ɪn ə ˈməʊmənt 78
in a row ɪn ə rəʊ 41
in a week's/month's (etc.) time ɪn ə wiːks/mʌnθs taɪm 59, 75, 99
in addition (to) ɪn əˈdɪʃən 93
in advance ɪn ədˈvɑːns 48
in black/blue/brown (etc.) ɪn blæk/bluː/braʊn 22
in business ɪn ˈbɪznɪs 78
in case ɪn keɪs 94
in charge of ɪn tʃɑːdʒ ɒv 37
in contrast ɪn ˈkɒntrɑːst 97
in detail ɪn ˈdiːteɪl 78
in fact ɪn fækt 99
in fashion ɪn ˈfæʃən 23
in future ɪn ˈfjuːtʃə 78
in general ɪn ˈdʒenərəl 75, 97
in large quantities ɪn lɑːdʒ ˈkwɒntətiz 63
in love ɪn lʌv 15
in my opinion ɪn maɪ əˈpɪnjən 66
in order to ɪn ˈɔːdə tuː 94
in other words ɪn ˈʌðə wɜːdz 100
in progress ɪn ˈprəʊgres 31
in response to ɪn rɪˈspɒns tuː 98
in spite of ɪn spaɪt ɒv 93
in tears ɪn tɪəz 78
in that case ɪn ðæt keɪs 76
in the end ɪn ði end 14, 78, 92
in the past ɪn ðə pɑːst 33, 97
in the wild ɪn ðə waɪld 8
in the world ɪn ðə wɜːld 6
in time ɪn taɪm 59, 78
in writing ɪn ˈraɪtɪŋ 98
inability ˌɪnəˈbɪlətɪ 70
inch ɪntʃ 61
include ɪnˈkluːd 48
income ˈɪŋkʌm 37
income tax ˈɪŋkʌm tæks 37, 73
incorrect ˌɪnkərˈekt 69
increase n ˈɪnkriːs 34, 41
increase v ɪnˈkriːs 41
incredible ɪnˈkredɪbəl 43
incredibly ɪnˈkredɪbli 91
indefinite article ɪnˈdefɪnət ˈɑːtɪkəl 4
individual ˌɪndɪˈvɪdʒuəl 43
inflation ɪnˈfleɪʃən 41
ingredients ɪnˈgriːdiənts 26
injure ˈɪndʒə 30
injury ˈɪndʒəri 30
innocent ˈɪnəsənt 55
insect ˈɪnsekt 8
inside lane ˈɪnsaɪd leɪn 30
insist on doing sth ɪnˈsɪst ɒn ˈduːɪŋ ˈsʌmθɪŋ 87
install ɪnˈstɔːl 36, 53
instant messaging ˈɪnstənt ˈmesɪdʒɪŋ 54
instead ɪnˈsted 16
intelligent ɪnˈtelɪdʒənt 11
intend ɪnˈtend 87
interest n ˈɪntrəst 41
interest v ˈɪntrəst 67
interest rate ˈɪntrəst reɪt 41
interested in ˈɪntrəstɪd ɪn 67, 77
interests ˈɪntrəsts 67, 96
internet access ˈɪntənet ˈækses 48
interrupt ˌɪntəˈrʌpt 64
interview ˈɪntəvjuː 38
into ˈɪntə 90
introduce sb ˌɪntrəˈdjuːs ˈsʌmbɒdi 68
invent ɪnˈvent 70, 80
invention ɪnˈvenʃən 70
invoice ˈɪnvɔɪs 39
involve ɪnˈvɒlv 39, 46
ironing ˈaɪənɪŋ 16
irregular ɪˈregjələ 69
irregular (verb) ɪˈregjələ 4
Is that (Joe, Emma, etc ...?) ɪz ðæt 52
-ish ɪʃ 10
ISP ˌaɪesˈpiː 54, 100
Israel ˈɪzreɪl 5
Israeli ɪzˈreɪli 5
it/that depends ɪt/ðæt dɪˈpendz 76
it seems to me ɪt siːmz tuː miː 97
Italian ɪˈtæliən 5
Italy ˈɪtəli 5
item ˈaɪtəm 24, 54
jail dʒeɪl 55
Japan dʒəˈpæn 5
Japanese ˌdʒæpəˈniːz 5
jar dʒɑː 63
jealous ˈdʒeləs 12
jealousy ˈdʒeləsi 12
jogging ˈdʒɒgɪŋ 42
join [become a member] dʒɔɪn 36
join [do sth with others] dʒɔɪn 99
journalist ˈdʒɜːnəlɪst 51
journey ˈdʒɜːni 29
judge dʒʌdʒ 55
jug dʒʌg 63
jumper ˈdʒʌmpə 22
junction ˈdʒʌŋkʃən 30
junk mail dʒʌŋk meɪl 54
jury ˈdʒʊəri 55
just as dʒʌst æz 92
keen on kiːn ɒn 67
keep [look after] kiːp 28
keep [stay in a place/condition] kiːp 82
keep (on) doing sth kiːp ˈduːɪŋ ˈsʌmθɪŋ 82
keep a promise kiːp ə ˈprɒmɪs 72
keep a secret kiːp ə ˈsiːkrət 82
keep in touch kiːp ɪn tʌtʃ 82
keep off sth kiːp ɒf ˈsʌmθɪŋ 31
keep right/left kiːp raɪt/left 31
keep sb fit kiːp ˈsʌmbɒdi fɪt 42
keep sth up kiːp ˈsʌmθɪŋ ʌp 82
kettle ˈketəl 18
keyboard ˈkiːbɔːd 39, 45, 53
keyboard player ˈkiːbɔːd ˈpleɪə 45
(I'm/you're, etc.) kidding ˈkɪdɪŋ 76
kids kɪdz 95
kill kɪl 58
kind kaɪnd 11
kind of kaɪnd ɒv 76
Kind regards kaɪnd rɪˈgɑːdz 98
kiss n, v kɪs 72
kitten ˈkɪtən 2
knee niː 9
knowledge (of sth) ˈnɒlɪdʒ 86
Korean kəˈriːən 5
lab læb 35, 100
laboratory ləˈbɒrətəri 35
ladder ˈlædə 62
lamb læm 25
land v lænd 47
landing ˈlændɪŋ 47
landing card ˈlændɪŋ kɑːd 96
landline ˈlændlaɪn 52
landscape ˈlændskeɪp 6
lane (on a road) leɪn 30
laptop ˈlæptɒp 53
large number/amount lɑːdʒ ˈnʌmbə/əˈmaʊnt 74
last v lɑːst 35, 46, 59
last long lɑːst lɒŋ 59
late (50s/60s, etc.) leɪt 14
lately ˈleɪtli 59
latest ˈleɪtɪst 44
laugh v lɑːf 9
law lɔː 35
lawyer ˈlɔɪə 36
lazy ˈleɪzi 11
lead [be in front] liːd 43
leader ˈliːdə 56
league liːg 43
lean liːn 31
leather ˈleðə 62
leave [end a relationship] liːv 15
leave (a place) liːv 33
leave a message liːv ə ˈmesɪdʒ 52
leave sb/sth out liːv ˈsʌmbɒdi/ ˈsʌmθɪŋ aʊt 80
leave sth somewhere liːv ˈsʌmθɪŋ ˈsʌmweə 19
leaves (on a tree) liːvz 28
lecturer ˈlektʃərə 35, 36
legal ˈliːgəl 69
lemon ˈlemən 25
lend lend 32
length leŋθ 61
leopard ˈlepəd 8
let [allow] let 14
let you know let juː nəʊ 99
lettuce ˈletɪs 25
library ˈlaɪbrəri 35
lie down laɪ daʊn 79
lift n lɪft 17
light [not dark] laɪt 17
light [not much] laɪt 7, 74
light lunch laɪt lʌntʃ 16

lightning 'laɪtnɪŋ 7
like [similar to] laɪk 85
likely 'laɪkli 24
limited number/amount/choice 'lɪmɪtɪd 'nʌmbə/ə'maʊnt/tʃɔɪs 74
limited vocabulary 'lɪmɪtɪd və'kæbjələri 74
link (computer) lɪŋk 54
link word lɪŋk wɜ:d 4
lion 'laɪən 8
lips lɪps 9
listen [pay attention] 'lɪsən 85
literature 'lɪtrətʃə 44
live adj laɪv 45
lively 'laɪvli 27, 49
liver 'lɪvə 21
loads of sth ləʊdz ɒv 'sʌmθɪŋ 39
loan ləʊn 41
location ləʊ'keɪʃən 17
lock v lɒk 69
log in/on lɒg ɪn/ɒn 53
log off/out lɒg ɒf/aʊt 53
look n, v lʊk 85
look after sb lʊk 'ɑ:ftə 'sʌmbɒdi 80
look sth up lʊk 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp 3, 32, 79
loose lu:s 23
lorry 'lɒri 29
lose (a game) lu:z 43
lose weight lu:z weɪt 74
loser 'lu:zə 43
loss lɒs 41
loud noise laʊd nɔɪz 74
love v lʌv 67
Love (greeting) lʌv 99
luckily 'lʌkəli 16
luggage 'lʌgɪdʒ 47
lung cancer lʌŋ 'kænsə 21
lungs lʌŋz 21
lyrics 'lɪrɪks 45
mad about sb mæd ə'baʊt 'sʌmbɒdi 77
magnificent mæg'nɪfɪsənt 49
main course meɪn kɔ:s 48
main road meɪn rəʊd 30
mainly 'meɪnli 52
majority mə'dʒɒrəti 60
make [cause sb to do sth] meɪk 24, 81
make [force sb to do sth] meɪk 81
make a comparison meɪk ə kəm'pærɪsən 97
make a decision meɪk ə dɪ'sɪʒən 81
make a mistake meɪk ə mɪ'steɪk 81
make a noise meɪk ə nɔɪz 81
make a profit/loss meɪk ə 'prɒfɪt/lɒs 41
make an attempt meɪk æn ə'tempt 72
make an effort meɪk æn 'efət 81
make friends meɪk frendz 81
make generalisations meɪk ˌdʒenərəlaɪ'zeɪʃənz 97
make it meɪk ɪt 95
make (money) meɪk 37
make sth up meɪk 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp 80
make the bed meɪk ðə bed 16
make up your mind meɪk ʌp jɔ: maɪnd 75, 81
make yourself understood meɪk jɔ:'self ˌʌndə'stʊd 34
make-up 'meɪkʌp 16
male meɪl 33, 68
manage [run a business] 'mænɪdʒ 70
manage [succeed in doing sth] 'mænɪdʒ 14
management 'mænɪdʒmənt 70
Mandarin 'mændərɪn 5
marital status 'mærɪtəl 'steɪtəs 96
mark [grade] mɑ:k 34
market 'mɑ:kɪt 49
marry 'mæri 15
marvellous 'mɑ:vələs 89
match v mætʃ 23
mate meɪt 13, 95
material mə'tɪərɪəl 62
maths mæθs 100
me neither mi: 'naɪðə 67
me too mi: tu: 67
meal mi:l 16
mean adj mi:n 11
mean v mi:n 32
meaning 'mi:nɪŋ 32
measure 'meʒə 32
mechanic mɪ'kænɪk 36
media reporting 'mi:diə rɪ'pɔ:tɪŋ 51
medicine [the subject] 'medsən 35
medicine [to treat an illness] 'medsən 21
medium [meat] 'mi:diəm 48
medium height 'mi:diəm haɪt 10
melon 'melən 25
mend mend 36
mention 'menʃən 88
mess mes 2
metal 'metəl 62
mice maɪs 8
mid (30s/40s, etc.) mɪd 14
Middle East ˌmɪdəl'i:st 5
middle-aged ˌmɪdəl'eɪdʒd 14
mild maɪld 7
mile maɪl 61
million 'mɪljən 60
mind v maɪnd 67
mind (+ *-ing*) maɪnd 87
mind the step maɪnd ðə step 31
mind your head maɪnd jɔ: hed 31
minimum wage 'mɪnɪməm weɪdʒ 37
minor (offence) 'maɪnə 55
minority maɪ'nɒrəti 60
minus 'maɪnəs 6
minus adj 'maɪnəs 60
miserable 'mɪzərəbəl 12
mishear mɪs'hɪə 69
miss [avoid] mɪs 82
miss [not hear] mɪs 82
miss sb mɪs 'sʌmbɒdi 82
miss a chance/opportunity mɪs ə tʃɑ:ns/ˌɒpə'tju:nəti 82
miss the bus/train (etc.) mɪs ðə bʌs/treɪn 19, 29, 74
missing 'mɪsɪŋ 58
misunderstand ˌmɪsʌndə'stænd 69
mix n mɪks 27
mix sth up mɪks 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp 2
mobile edition 'məʊbaɪl ɪ'dɪʃən 51
mobile number 'məʊbaɪl 'nʌmbə 52
monkey 'mʌŋki 8
monthly 'mʌnθli 51
mood mu:d 12
mosque mɒsk 49
mosquito mə'ski:təʊ 8
mostly 'məʊstli 52
mother tongue 'mʌðə tʌŋ 73
mother/brother/son-in-law 'mʌðə/'brʌðə/sʌn ɪn lɔ: 13
motorbike 'məʊtəbaɪk 29
mouse (animal) maʊs 8
mouse (computer) maʊs 53
mouse mat maʊs mæt 53
move mu:v 17
MP ˌem'pi: 56, 100
Mr 'mɪstə 100
Mrs 'mɪsɪz 100
multiplication ˌmʌltɪplɪ'keɪʃən 60
multiplied by 'mʌltɪplaɪd baɪ 60
murder n, v 'mɜ:də 55
murderer 'mɜ:dərə 55
mushroom 'mʌʃru:m 25
musical 'mju:zɪkəl 71
mussels 'mʌsəlz 25
my view/feeling is maɪ vju:/'fi:lɪŋ ɪz 66
narrow 'nærəʊ 10, 61
national 'næʃənəl 51, 62, 71
navy [army] 'neɪvi 36
navy blue 'neɪvi blu: 62
nearest 'nɪərɪst 61
nearly 'nɪəli 14
necessary 'nesəsəri 2
neck nek 9
necklace 'neklɪs 22
negative 'negətɪv 11
neither do/am/can I 'naɪðə du:/æm/kæn aɪ 67
nephew 'nefju: 13
nervous 'nɜ:vəs 11
net net 42
never mind 'nevə maɪnd 64
news nju:z 86
next time nekst taɪm 59
nice naɪs 11
nice to meet you naɪs tu: mi:t ju: 68
niece ni:s 13
night after night naɪt 'ɑ:ftə naɪt 75

nightlife 'naɪtlaɪf 27
nil nɪl 43
nine-to-five adj naɪn tu: faɪv 37
no entry nəʊ 'entri 31
no exit nəʊ 'eksɪt 31
no parking nəʊ 'pa:kɪŋ 31
no problem nəʊ 'prɒbləm 64, 65
no vacancies nəʊ 'veɪkəntsiz 31
no way/chance nəʊ weɪ/tʃa:ns 76
nod your head nɒd jɔ: hed 9
normal 'nɔ:məl 71
north nɔ:θ 6
north-east nɔ:θ 'i:st 6
north-west nɔ:θ 'west 6
not at all nɒt æt ɔ:l 64
not (so) bad nɒt bæd 68
not really nɒt 'rɪəli 76
note [money] nəʊt 20
nothing to declare 'nʌθɪŋ tu: dɪ'kleə 47
notice n 'nəʊtɪs 31
notice v 'nəʊtɪs 88
noticeboard 'nəʊtɪsbɔ:d 39
nought nɔ:t 60
noun naʊn 4
novel 'nɒvəl 44
now and again naʊ ænd ə'gen 75
now and then naʊ ænd ðen 75
nowadays 'naʊədeɪz 59, 97
nowhere to park 'nəʊweə tu: pa:k 27
nurse nɜ:s 36
nursery school 'nɜ:səri sku:l 33
obesity ə'bi:səti 97
object n 'ɒbdʒɪkt 62
occasionally ə'keɪʒənəli 91
ocean 'əʊʃən 6
octopus 'ɒktəpəs 8
of course ɒv kɔ:s 65
off [absent] ɒf 37, 39
offence ə'fens 55
offer 'ɒfə 87
official ə'fɪʃəl 3
oh [0] əʊ 60
oil [fuel] ɔɪl 57
oil [on food] ɔɪl 25
old friend əʊld frend 13
olives 'ɒlɪvz 25
omit ə'mɪt 80
on [place] ɒn 90
on and off ɒn ænd ɒf 75
on board ɒn bɔ:d 78
on business ɒn 'bɪznɪs 78
on display ɒn dɪ'spleɪ 78
on earth ɒn ɜ:θ 6
on fire ɒn 'faɪə 78
on my/your own ɒn maɪ/jɔ:r əʊn 15, 96
on purpose ɒn 'pɜ:pəs 78
on record ɒn 'rekɔ:d 57
on strike ɒn straɪk 78
on the first/second (etc.) floor ɒn ðə fɜ:st/'sekənd flɔ: 17
on the Internet ɒn ðɪ 'ɪntənet 54
on the one hand ɒn ðə wʌn hænd 97
on the other hand ɒn ðɪ 'ʌðə hænd 97
on the outskirts ɒn ðɪ 'aʊtskɜ:ts 17
on the phone ɒn ðə fəʊn 52, 78
on the way ɒn ðə weɪ 30
on the whole ɒn ðə həʊl 75, 97
on time ɒn taɪm 59, 78
once wʌns 68
once a week/month (etc.) wʌns ə wi:k/mʌnθ 16
once again wʌns ə'gen 99
once or twice wʌns ɔ: twaɪs 75
one day wʌn deɪ 59
one of the advantages of ... wʌn ɒv ði əd'vɑ:ntɪdʒɪz ɒv 97
onion 'ʌnjən 25
only child 'əʊnli tʃaɪld 13
open space 'əʊpən speɪs 28
opera (singer) 'ɒpərə 45
operate on sb 'ɒpəreɪt ɒn 'sʌmbɒdi 36
operating system 'ɒpəreɪtɪŋ 'sɪstəm 53
operation ˌɒpər'eɪʃən 21
opposite 'ɒpəzɪt 1
or so ɔ: səʊ 95
orchestra 'ɔ:kɪstrə 45
ordinary 'ɔ:dɪnəri 10
organisation ˌɔ:gənaɪ'zeɪʃən 39
organise 'ɔ:gənaɪz 39
otherwise 'ʌðəwaɪz 94
out [not there] aʊt 52
out of aʊt ɒv 90
out of order aʊt ɒv 'ɔ:də 19, 31
out of the blue aʊt ɒv ðə blu: 75
out of work aʊt ɒv wɜ:k 38
out-of-date ˌaʊtəv'deɪt 78
outside lane 'aʊtsaɪd leɪn 30
outstanding ˌaʊt'stændɪŋ 43
oven 'ʌvən 18, 26
over [more than] 'əʊvə 6
over [movement] 'əʊvə 90
overcharge ˌəʊvə'tʃa:dʒ 69
overhead locker 'əʊvəhed 'lɒkə 47
oversleep ˌəʊvə'sli:p 64
overtake ˌəʊvə'teɪk 30
overtime 'əʊvətaɪm 37
overweight ˌəʊvə'weɪt 10
owe əʊ 20
own adj əʊn 18, 38
own v əʊn 17, 28, 38
owner 'əʊnə 38
pack pæk 69
packed pækt 49
packet 'pækɪt 63
pain peɪn 21
painful 'peɪnfəl 21, 71
painless 'peɪnləs 71
pair peə 63
palace 'pælɪs 49
paper [newspaper] 'peɪpə 51
paperwork 'peɪpəwɜ:k 39
parade pə'reɪd 46
parcel 'pa:səl 31
parked car pa:kt ka: 30
parrot 'pærət 8
part of speech pa:t ɒv spi:tʃ 3
partly 'pa:tli 66
partner 'pa:tnə 32
part-time ˌpa:t'taɪm 38
pass an exam pa:s æn ɪg'zæm 34
passenger 'pæsəndʒə 47
password 'pa:swɜ:d 53
paste peɪst 53
patient adj 'peɪʃənt 11
patient n 'peɪʃənt 21
pause pɔ:z 4
pavement 'peɪvmənt 30
pay n, v peɪ 37
pay attention peɪ ə'tenʃən 76
pay back peɪ bæk 41
pay rise peɪ raɪz 38
PC ˌpi:'si: 53, 100
peace and quiet pi:s ænd 'kwaɪət 75
peaceful 'pi:sfəl 71
peach pi:tʃ 25
pear peə 25
peas pi:z 25
pedestrian pə'destriən 30
pedestrian crossing pə'destriən 'krɒsɪŋ 30
peel pi:l 26
pencil sharpener 'pensəl 'ʃa:pənə 32
per cent pə sent 41, 60
percentage pə'sentɪdʒ 41
perform pə'fɔ:m 45
performance pə'fɔ:məns 45
permanent 'pɜ:mənənt 1
permission pə'mɪʃən 65
personal (opinion) 'pɜ:sənəl 71
personal details 'pɜ:sənəl 'di:teɪlz 96
personal statement 'pɜ:sənəl 'steɪtmənt 96
personally 'pɜ:sənəli 66
persuade pə'sweɪd 88
pet pet 8
phone fəʊn 100
phone sb back fəʊn 'sʌmbɒdi bæk 52
phonemic symbol fə'ni:mɪk 'sɪmbəl 3, 4
photo 'fəʊtəʊ 100
photocopier 'fəʊtəʊˌkɒpiə 39
phrasal verb 'freɪzəl vɜ:b 4
phrase freɪz 3, 4
pianist 'pi:ənɪst 45
piano pi'ænəʊ 45
pick pɪk 28
pick sb up [collect sb] pɪk 'sʌmbɒdi ʌp 79
pick sth up [learn] pɪk 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp 34
pick sth up [lift sth from the floor] pɪk 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp 79

pie paɪ 26
piece piːs 63, 86
pill pɪl 21
pillow ˈpɪləʊ 18
pilot ˈpaɪlət 36
pineapple ˈpaɪnæpəl 25
pink pɪŋk 62
pipe paɪp 36
pitch pɪtʃ 42
place [town/building] pleɪs 49
plan plæn 36
plane pleɪn 100
planet ˈplænɪt 6
plant n plɑːnt 28
plant v plɑːnt 57
plastic ˈplæstɪk 62
platform ˈplætfɔːm 29
play (a game) pleɪ 42
play against sb pleɪ əˈgenst ˈsʌmbɒdi 43
pleasant ˈplezənt 11
Please accept our apologies for … pliːz əkˈsept ˈaʊər əˈpɒlədʒiz fɔː 98
Please could you …? pliːz kʊd juː 98
plenty ˈplenti 49, 63
plug plʌg 32
plug sth in plʌg ˈsʌmθɪŋ ɪn 32
plumber ˈplʌmə 36
plus plʌs 60
PM ˌpiːˈem 100
pocket ˈpɒkɪt 22
pocket money ˈpɒkɪt ˈmʌni 86
podcast ˈpɒdkaːst 51
poet ˈpəʊɪt 44
poetry ˈpəʊɪtri 44
point [decimal point] pɔɪnt 60
point [idea] pɔɪnt 66
point of view pɔɪnt ɒv vjuː 97
pointed ˈpɔɪntɪd 62
Poland ˈpəʊlənd 5
police force pəˈliːs fɔːs 36
police officer pəˈliːs ˈɒfɪsə 36
policy ˈpɒləsi 56
Polish ˈpəʊlɪʃ 5
polite pəˈlaɪt 65
politely pəˈlaɪtli 91
political pəˈlɪtɪkəl 56
political party pəˈlɪtɪkəl ˈpaːti 56
pollution pəˈluːʃən 27
pop music pɒp ˈmjuːzɪk 45
popular ˈpɒpjələ 46, 70
popularity ˌpɒpjəˈlærəti 70
population ˌpɒpjəˈleɪʃən 5
pork pɔːk 25
Portuguese ˌpɔːtʃəˈgiːz 5
positive ˈpɒzətɪv 11
post n [different meanings] pəʊst 3
post [message] pəʊst 54
postgraduate ˌpəʊstˈgrædʒuət 35
postpone pəʊstˈpəʊn 80
pour (with rain) pɔː 7
powerful ˈpaʊəfəl 56
prawns prɔːnz 25
predict (the future) prɪˈdɪkt 74
prefer prɪˈfɜː 67
prefix ˈpriːfɪks 4
pregnancy ˈpregnənsi 15
pregnant ˈpregnənt 15
preparation ˌprepərˈeɪʃən 34
preposition ˌprepəˈzɪʃən 4
pretty [attractive] ˈprɪti 10
pretty [rather] ˈprɪti 91
pride praɪd 12
primary school ˈpraɪməri skuːl 33
prime minister praɪm ˈmɪnɪstə 56
print prɪnt 53
print sth out prɪnt ˈsʌmθɪŋ aʊt 53
printer ˈprɪntə 53
prison ˈprɪzən 55
private ˈpraɪvət 33
proceed prəˈsiːd 95
produce v prəˈdjuːs 37, 39
product ˈprɒdʌkt 37
production prəˈdʌkʃən 39
profession prəˈfeʃən 36
profit ˈprɒfɪt 41
progress n ˈprəʊgres 86
promise n, v ˈprɒmɪs 72
promise (+ obj) that ˈprɒmɪs ðæt 88
promise to do sth ˈprɒmɪs tuː duː ˈsʌmθɪŋ 87
promote prəˈməʊt 38
promotion prəˈməʊʃən 38
pronoun ˈprəʊnaʊn 4
pronounce prəˈnaʊns 32
pronunciation prəˌnʌnsiˈeɪʃən 32
properly ˈprɒpəli 19
protect prəˈtekt 8, 58
protection prəˈtekʃən 50
proud praʊd 12
provide prəˈvaɪd 56
psychologist saɪˈkɒlədʒɪst 35
psychology saɪˈkɒlədʒi 35
public transport ˈpʌblɪk ˈtrænspɔːt 28, 29, 73
publish ˈpʌblɪʃ 51
punctuation ˌpʌŋktʃuˈeɪʃən 4
punish ˈpʌnɪʃ 33, 55
punishment ˈpʌnɪʃmənt 55
pupil ˈpjuːpəl 33
purchase ˈpɜːtʃəs 95
purple ˈpɜːpəl 62
purpose ˈpɜːpəs 94
push pʊʃ 82
put on make-up pʊt ɒn ˈmeɪkʌp 16
put on the brakes pʊt ɒn ðə breɪks 72
put on weight pʊt ɒn weɪt 74
put sb through pʊt ˈsʌmbɒdi θruː 52
put sth back pʊt ˈsʌmθɪŋ bæk 79
put sth off pʊt ˈsʌmθɪŋ ɒf 80
put sth on [make equipment work] pʊt ˈsʌmθɪŋ ɒn 79
put sth up [raise] pʊt ˈsʌmθɪŋ ʌp 79
put sth on [put clothes on your body] pʊt ˈsʌmθɪŋ ɒn 22, 79, 80
qualification ˌkwɒlɪfɪˈkeɪʃən 35, 96
qualified ˈkwɒlɪfaɪd 35
qualify ˈkwɒlɪfaɪ 35
quality ˈkwɒləti 40
quantity ˈkwɒntəti 63
quarter [one quarter] ˈkwɔːtə 60
quarter [three months] ˈkwɔːtə 41
question mark ˈkwestʃən mɑːk 4
queue n kjuː 24, 29, 72
queue v kjuː 31, 72
quiet ˈkwaɪət 27
quietly ˈkwaɪətli 91
quit kwɪt 38
quite kwaɪt 91
quite a bit kwaɪt ə bɪt 95
quite a long way kwaɪt ə lɒŋ weɪ 61
quite likely kwaɪt ˈlaɪkli 74
quite often kwaɪt ˈɒfən 91
rabbit ˈræbɪt 8
race n reɪs 43
race v reɪs 42
racing driver ˈreɪsɪŋ ˈdraɪvə 42
rain n, v reɪn 7
rainforest ˈreɪnˌfɒrɪst 6
raise reɪz 41
range reɪndʒ 24
rare [meat] reə 48
rare [unusual] reə 8
rarely ˈreəli 91
rather ˈrɑːðə 91
raw rɔː 2, 26
real rɪəl 62
realise ˈrɪəlaɪz 88
reality TV show riˈæləti ˌtiːˈviː ʃəʊ 51
really [very] ˈrɪəli 89
really? [to express surprise] ˈrɪəli 67
reason ˈriːzən 94
reasonable ˈriːzənəbəl 23, 71
recently ˈriːsəntli 59
reception [in a hotel] rɪˈsepʃən 48
reception [wedding party] rɪˈsepʃən 15
recession rɪˈseʃən 41
recipe ˈresɪpi 26
recommend (+ *-ing*) ˌrekəˈmend 87
recommend + *that* ˌrekəˈmend ðæt 50, 88
record n ˈrekɔːd 43
record v rɪˈkɔːd 45
recording studio rɪˈkɔːdɪŋ ˈstjuːdiəʊ 45
red pepper red ˈpepə 25
reduce rɪˈdjuːs 56, 57
reduction rɪˈdʌkʃən 56
reference ˈrefərəns 96
refund n ˈriːfʌnd 24

regarding rɪ'gɑ:dɪŋ 95, 98
region 'ri:dʒən 6
regional 'ri:dʒənəl 51
registration form ˌredʒɪ'streɪʃən fɔ:m 96
regret n, v rɪ'gret 72, 98
regular (verb) 'regjələ 4
regularly 'regjələli 54
reject v rɪ'dʒekt 80
relating to rɪ'leɪtɪŋ tu: 3
relations rɪ'leɪʃənz 13
relationship rɪ'leɪʃənʃɪp 15
relatives 'relətɪvz 13
relax rɪ'læks 70
relaxation ˌri:læk'seɪʃən 70
relaxed rɪ'lækst 33
relevant 'reləvənt 96
reliable rɪ'laɪəbəl 11, 29, 71
rely on rɪ'laɪ ɒn 77
remarry ˌri:'mæri 13
remind rɪ'maɪnd 88
remove rɪ'mu:v 19
rent n, v rent 17, 20
repair rɪ'peə 36
repeat rɪ'pi:t 32
repetition ˌrepɪ'tɪʃən 32
replace rɪ'pleɪs 24
reply n, v rɪ'plaɪ 54, 65, 72
report rɪ'pɔ:t 51
reporter rɪ'pɔ:tə 51
represent ˌreprɪ'zent 36
request n rɪ'kwest 65
require rɪ'kwaɪə 95, 96
rescue n, v 'reskju: 72
research n rɪ'sɜ:tʃ 35
reserve rɪ'zɜ:v 48
resign rɪ'zaɪn 38
resignation ˌrezɪg'neɪʃən 38
responsible for rɪ'spɒnsəbəl fɔ: 37
result [consequence] rɪ'zʌlt 57, 97
result [in a competition] rɪ'zʌlt 43
retake sth ˌri:'teɪk 'sʌmθɪŋ 34
retire rɪ'taɪə 38
retired rɪ'taɪəd 14
retirement rɪ'taɪəmənt 14, 38
review rɪ'vju: 44, 51
reviewer rɪ'vju:ə 44
revise rɪ'vaɪz 1, 34
revision rɪ'vɪʒən 34
rewrite 'ri:raɪt 69
ride [a bike] raɪd 29
right [exactly] raɪt 90
right away raɪt ə'weɪ 75
ring v rɪŋ 52, 72
ring [jewellery] n rɪŋ 22
ring a bell rɪŋ ə bel 75
rink rɪŋk 42
rise n, v raɪz 41
road sign rəʊd saɪn 30
roast rəʊst 26
rob rɒb 55
robber 'rɒbə 55
robbery 'rɒbəri 55
rock rɒk 50
rock climbing rɒk 'klaɪmɪŋ 42
romantic comedy rəʊ'mæntɪk 'kɒmədi 44
room [space] ru:m 86
room service ru:m 'sɜ:vɪs 48
roots ru:ts 28
rough (sea) rʌf 50
roughly 'rʌfli 10, 14
round [movement] raʊnd 90
round [shape] raʊnd 62
round the corner raʊnd ðə 'kɔ:nə 29, 61
routine ru:'ti:n 1
rub sth out rʌb 'sʌmθɪŋ aʊt 1, 32
rubber 'rʌbə 1, 32, 62
rubbish 'rʌbɪʃ 86
rucksack 'rʌksæk 22
rug rʌg 18
ruler 'ru:lə 32
run [manage] rʌn 37, 40
run [use applications] rʌn 53
run out of sth rʌn aʊt ɒv 'sʌmθɪŋ 19, 39
runway 'rʌnweɪ 47
rush hour rʌʃ 'aʊə 27
Russia 'rʌʃə 5
Russian 'rʌʃən 5
sack n, v sæk 38
safe seɪf 27
sail seɪl 42
sailing 'seɪlɪŋ 42
sailor 'seɪlə 36, 42
salad 'sæləd 25
salad dressing 'sæləd 'dresɪŋ 25
salary 'sælәri 37
sales rep seɪlz rep 100
salmon 'sæmən 25
same to you seɪm tu: ju: 68
sand sænd 50
sandy 'sændi 50
satisfied with 'sætɪsfaɪd wɪð 77
saucepan 'sɔ:spən 26
Saudi Arabia 'saʊdi ə'reɪbiə 5
Saudi Arabian 'saʊdi ə'reɪbiən 5
save [keep] seɪv 53, 57
save [rescue] seɪv 72
save (up) seɪv 20, 79
saxophone 'sæksəfəʊn 45
saxophonist sæk'sɒfənɪst 45
say [give information in writing] seɪ 51, 66
say + *that* seɪ ðæt 88
Scandinavia ˌskændɪ'neɪviə 5
scared skeəd 12
scarf skɑ:f 22
scenery 'si:nəri 28, 86
science 'saɪəns 35
science fiction 'saɪəns 'fɪkʃən 44
scientist 'saɪəntɪst 70
score a goal skɔ:r ə gəʊl 74
search n, v sɜ:tʃ 54, 58
seaside resort 'si:saɪd rɪ'zɔ:t 50
season (in the year) 'si:zən 28
season ticket 'si:zən 'tɪkɪt 29
seat belt si:t belt 47
second (time) 'sekənd 59
secondary school 'sekəndəri sku:l 33
secondly 'sekəndli 92
secret 'si:krət 56
see [find out] si: 3
see [use your eyes] si: 85
see the sights si: ðə saɪts 49
seem si:m 85
seldom 'seldəm 91
semi-circle 'semi 'sɜ:kəl 62
send my regards/love to send maɪ rɪ'gɑ:dz/lʌv tu: 99
sense of humour sens ɒv 'hju:mə 11
sensible 'sentsɪbəl 11
series 'sɪəri:z 51
serious [bad] 'sɪəriəs 21, 74
serious [important] 'sɪəriəs 15
serious [quiet] 'sɪəriəs 11
serve v sɜ:v 23
service 'sɜ:vɪs 48
set off set ɒf 80
set sth up set 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp 37, 40
several 'sevərəl 63
shade ʃeɪd 50
shake hands ʃeɪk hændz 9, 68
shake your head ʃeɪk jɔ: hed 9
shall we ...? ʃæl wi: 65
share ʃeə 18, 32
shark ʃɑ:k 8
sharp(ly) ʃɑ:p 41
sharpen 'ʃɑ:pən 32
shave ʃeɪv 16
sheet [of a bed] ʃi:t 18
sheet [of paper] ʃi:t 63
shelf ʃelf 24
shine ʃaɪn 7
shocked ʃɒkt 89
shocking 'ʃɒkɪŋ 89
shoot ʃu:t 58
shop v ʃɒp 23
shop assistant ʃɒp ə'sɪstənt 23
shopping centre 'ʃɒpɪŋ 'sentə 24
shore ʃɔ: 50
short of sth ʃɔ:t ɒv 'sʌmθɪŋ 77
shoulder 'ʃəʊldə 9
shout at/to sb ʃaʊt æt/tu: 'sʌmbɒdi 77
show sb around ʃəʊ 'sʌmbɒdi ə'raʊnd 39
shower [bath] 'ʃaʊə 16
shower [of rain] 'ʃaʊə 7
shy ʃaɪ 11
sight saɪt 85
sights saɪts 49
sightseeing 'saɪtsi:ɪŋ 49
sign n saɪn 30
sign v saɪn 98
sign (of sth happening) saɪn 41
signature 'sɪgnətʃə 96, 98
signed saɪnd 96
significance sɪg'nɪfɪkəns 71
silence 'saɪləns 31
silently 'saɪləntli 1
silk sɪlk 62
silly 'sɪli 11
similar 'sɪmɪlə 70, 77
similarity ˌsɪmɪ'lærɪti 70
simple 'sɪmpəl 34

since [preposition] sɪns 59
singer 'sɪŋə 70
single [record] 'sɪŋgəl 45
single room 'sɪŋgəl ru:m 48
sink sɪŋk 18
sister-in-law 'sɪstərɪnlɔ: 13
situation ˌsɪtju'eɪʃən 68
size saɪz 23, 61
ski v ski: 42
skills skɪlz 96
skin skɪn 9
skirt skɜ:t 22
skis ski:z 42
sky skaɪ 7
sleep n sli:p 16
sleeping bag 'sli:pɪŋ bæg 86
sleeve sli:v 22
slice slaɪs 63
slight slaɪt 41
slightly 'slaɪtli 41, 91
slip slɪp 19
smart [well-dressed] smɑ:t 10, 22, 33
smell n, v smel 85
smooth smu:ð 1
snack snæk 16
snake sneɪk 8
snow v snəʊ 7
so səʊ 94
so do/am I səʊ du:/æm aɪ 67
so that səʊ ðæt 94
soap opera səʊp 'ɒpərə 51
sociable 'səʊʃəbəl 71
social networking site 'səʊʃəl 'netwɜ:kɪŋ saɪt 54
socket 'sɒkɪt 32
sofa 'səʊfə 18
software 'sɒftweə 53
sold out səʊld aʊt 31
soldier 'səʊldʒə 36, 58
solo artist 'səʊləʊ 'ɑ:tɪst 45
solution sə'lu:ʃən 57
some people believe ... sʌm 'pi:pəl bɪ'li:v 97
something wrong with 'sʌmθɪŋ rɒŋ wɪð 77
songwriter 'sɒŋˌraɪtə 45
sooner or later 'su:nər ɔ: 'leɪtə 75
sore throat sɔ: θrəʊt 21
sorry to disturb you 'sɒri tu: dɪ'stɜ:b ju: 64
sorry to keep you waiting 'sɒri tu: ki:p ju: 'weɪtɪŋ 64
sort of sɔ:t ɒv 76
sort sth out sɔ:t 'sʌmθɪŋ aʊt 79
sound saʊnd 85
sour 'saʊə 26
south saʊθ 6
South Korea saʊθ kə'ri:ə 5
south-east saʊθ 'i:st 6
south-west saʊθ 'west 6
souvenir ˌsu:vən'ɪə 49
space speɪs 17
spacebar 'speɪsba: 53
spam spæm 54
Spanish 'spænɪʃ 5
spare room speə ru:m 18
spare time speə taɪm 16
sparkling 'spɑ:kəlɪŋ 48
Speaking [on the phone] 'spi:kɪŋ 52
special offer 'speʃəl 'ɒfə 24
spectacular spek'tækjələ 46
speech spi:tʃ 82
speed limit spi:d 'lɪmɪt 30
spell spel 32
spelling 'spelɪŋ 32
spend (money) on spend ɒn 77
spend time spend taɪm 50, 74
spicy 'spaɪsi 26
spider 'spaɪdə 8
spill spɪl 19
spinach 'spɪnɪtʃ 25
spoonful 'spu:nfʊl 63
square adj, n skweə 62
St seɪnt/strɪ:t 100
stadium 'steɪdiəm 42
stall stɔ:l 24
star [famous actor] stɑ: 44
starter 'stɑ:tə 48
state education steɪt ˌedʒʊ'keɪʃən 33
station [broadcasting] 'steɪʃən 51
statue 'stætʃu: 49
stay n steɪ 48
stay at school steɪ æt sku:l 33
stay behind steɪ bɪ'haɪnd 33
stay in steɪ ɪn 16
stay out late steɪ aʊt leɪt 14
stay the same steɪ ðə seɪm 41
steal sti:l 55
stepfather 'stepˌfɑ:ðə 13
steps steps 17
sterling 'stɜ:lɪŋ 20
stick stɪk 42
still [continuing] stɪl 93
still [of water] stɪl 48
stir stɜ: 26
stomach ache 'stʌmək eɪk 21
store stɔ: 53
storm stɔ:m 7
straight streɪt 10
straight away streɪt ə'weɪ 75
stranger 'streɪndʒə 68
strawberry 'strɔ:bəri 25
street market stri:t 'mɑ:kɪt 24
stress [emphasis] stres 4
stress [worry] stres 12
stressed strest 27
stressful 'stresfʊl 27
strict strɪkt 14, 33
stripe straɪp 62
stroll strəʊl 50
strong (wind) strɒŋ 7
study n 'stʌdi 18
stuff stʌf 95
stupid 'stju:pɪd 11, 70
stupidity stju:'pɪdəti 70
stylish 'staɪlɪʃ 22, 62
subject 'sʌbdʒɪkt 33
succeed (in doing sth) sək'si:d 35, 38
success sək'ses 38
successful sək'sesfəl 35, 38
suddenly 'sʌdənli 91
suffer 'sʌfə 57
suffer from sth 'sʌfə frɒm 'sʌmθɪŋ 21
suffix 'sʌfɪks 4
suggest (+ *-ing*) sə'dʒest x 87
suggest + *that* sə'dʒest ðæt 88
suggestion sə'dʒestʃən 65
suit n su:t 22
suit v su:t 22, 23
suitable 'su:təbəl 71
suitcase 'su:tkeɪs 47
sun sʌn 7
sunbathe 'sʌnbeɪð 50
sunbathing 'sʌnbeɪðɪŋ 50
sunburn 'sʌnbɜ:n 50
sun cream sʌn kri:m 50
sunglasses 'sʌnˌglɑ:sɪz 73
sunny 'sʌni 7
sunscreen/sunblock 'sʌnskri:n/'sʌnblɒk 50
sunset 'sʌnset 28
suntan 'sʌntæn 50
superb su:'pɜ:b 43
support [help] sə'pɔ:t 56, 98
sure ʃɔ: 65
surf the web sɜ:f ðə web 54
surface 'sɜ:fɪs 6
surfing 'sɜ:fɪŋ 50
surgeon 'sɜ:dʒən 21, 36
surgery [an operation] 'sɜ:dʒəri 21
surgery [a place] 'sɜ:dʒəri 36
surrounded by sə'raʊndɪd baɪ 28
swap (places) swɒp 32
sweater 'swetə 22
sweets swi:ts 24
swerve swɜ:v 30
swimmer 'swɪmə 42
swimming costume 'swɪmɪŋ 'kɒstju:m 42
Swiss swɪs 5
switch sth off swɪtʃ 'sʌmθɪŋ ɒf 57
switch sth on swɪtʃ 'sʌmθɪŋ ɒn 79
Switzerland 'swɪtsələnd 5
syllable 'sɪləbəl 4
synonym 'sɪnənɪm 1
system 'sɪstəm 33
tablet 'tæblət 21
take [accept sth] teɪk 81
take [remove sth] teɪk 81
take [steal] teɪk 55, 81
take [write down] teɪk 81
take (size 12) teɪk 81
take (time) teɪk 59
take a break teɪk ə breɪk 81
take a course teɪk ə kɔ:s 81
take/make a decision teɪk/meɪk ə dɪ'sɪʒən 81
take a look teɪk ə lʊk 81

take a photo teɪk ə 'fəʊtəʊ 81
take/have a shower teɪk/hæv ə 'ʃaʊə 81
take action teɪk 'ækʃən 57
take/do an exam teɪk/duː æn ɪg'zæm 34
take care teɪk keə 68
take/do exercise teɪk/duː 'eksəsaɪz 81
take over sth teɪk 'əʊvə 'sʌmθɪŋ 40
take part teɪk pɑːt 43
take place teɪk pleɪs 46
take sb on teɪk 'sʌmbɒdi ɒn 79
take sth back teɪk 'sʌmθɪŋ bæk 79
take sth off teɪk 'sʌmθɪŋ ɒf 22, 80
take sth up teɪk 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp 40
take things/it easy teɪk θɪŋz ɪt 'iːzi 81
takeaway 'teɪkəweɪ 16
take-off 'teɪkɒf 47
talent 'tælənt 11
talented 'tæləntɪd 11
tall person/tree/building tɔːl 'pɜːsən/triː/'bɪldɪŋ 61
tap tæp 18, 57
taste [flavour] n, v teɪst 26, 85
taste [what you like] teɪst 45
tasty 'teɪsti 26
tax tæks 56
taxi rank 'tæksi ræŋk 29
teaching 'tiːtʃɪŋ 35
team tiːm 43, 96
tear v teə 19
teenager 'tiːnˌeɪdʒə 14
teens tiːnz 14
tell + obj + *that* tel ðæt 88
tell sb a joke tel 'sʌmbɒdi ə dʒəʊk 74
telly 'teli 100
temperature 'temprətʃə 6, 21
temple 'tempəl 49
tent tent 42, 86
term tɜːm 33
terminal (building) 'tɜːmɪnəl 47
terribly sorry 'terəbli 'sɒri 64, 74
terrific tə'rɪfɪk 89, 95
terrifying 'terəfaɪɪŋ 89
text v tekst 52
texting 'tekstɪŋ 52
Thai taɪ 5
Thailand 'taɪlænd 5
thank goodness/God θæŋk 'gʊdnəs/gɒd 68
thank sb (for sth) θæŋk 'sʌmbɒdi 98
thanks (very much) θæŋks 64
that/it depends ðæt/ɪt dɪ'pendz 76
that sort/kind of thing ðæt sɔːt/kaɪnd ɒv θɪŋ 76
that's a great idea ðæts ə greɪt aɪ'dɪə 65
that's a pity ðæts ə 'pɪti 23
that's a shame ðæts ə ʃeɪm 23
that's all right/okay ðæts ɔːl raɪt ə'keɪ 64
that's to say ðæts tuː seɪ 100
that's very kind of you ðæts 'veri kaɪnd ɒv juː 64
the best/worst thing about … ðə best/wɜːst θɪŋ ə'baʊt 28
the cold ðə kəʊld 7
the last time ðə lɑːst taɪm 59
the news ðə njuːz 51
the other day ðiˌ'ʌðə deɪ 59
the thing is … ðə θɪŋ ɪz 95
theft θeft 55
there's something wrong with … ðeəz 'sʌmθɪŋ rɒŋ wɪð 19
therefore 'ðeəfɔː 94
these days ðiːz deɪz 59
thick [not thin] θɪk 61
thick fog θɪk fɒg 7
thief θiːf 55
thin θɪn 61
think of (+ *-ing*) θɪŋk ɒv 77, 87
though ðəʊ 93
thousand 'θaʊzənd 60
three quarters θriː 'kwɔːtəz 60
thriller 'θrɪlə 44
through θruː 90
throw sth away θrəʊ 'sʌmθɪŋ ə'weɪ 24, 57
throw sth to/at sb θrəʊ 'sʌmθɪŋ tuː/æt 'sʌmbɒdi 77
thumb θʌm 9
thunder 'θʌndə 7
thunderstorm 'θʌndəstɔːm 7
tick tɪk 3
tie taɪ 22
tiger 'taɪgə 8
tight taɪt 23
tights taɪts 22
tiles taɪlz 18
time (for us) to go/leave (etc.) taɪm tuː gəʊ/liːv 59
times taɪmz 60
timetable 'taɪmˌteɪbəl 33
tin (of fruit, etc.) tɪn 63
tiny 'taɪni 61, 89
tip [advice] tɪp 2, 96
tip [money] tɪp 2
tired 'taɪəd 89
tired of sth taɪəd ɒv 'sʌmθɪŋ 77
tiring 'taɪrəɪŋ 89
tissue 'tɪʃuː 62
to be honest tuː biː 'ɒnɪst 75
to begin with tuː bɪ'gɪn wɪð 92
to some extent tuː sʌm ɪk'stent 66
toast təʊst 86
toddler 'tɒdlə 14
toe təʊ 9
tomato tə'mɑːtəʊ 25
too tuː 93
toothbrush 'tuːθbrʌʃ 73
toothpaste 'tuːθpeɪst 73
top floor tɒp flɔː 17
topic 'tɒpɪk 2
totally 'təʊtəli 66, 91
touch n, v tʌtʃ 85
tournament 'tʊənəmənt 43
towards tə'wɔːdz 90
toy tɔɪ 62
track [music] træk 45
track [sport] træk 42
tractor 'træktə 28
trade treɪd 41
tradition trə'dɪʃən 46
traditional trə'dɪʃənəl 46, 71
traffic jam 'træfɪk dʒæm 27
traffic light(s) 'træfɪk laɪt 30, 73
trainers 'treɪnəz 22
training 'treɪnɪŋ 38
translate (sth into sth) trænz'leɪt 2, 70, 77
translation trænz'leɪʃən 2, 70
translator trænz'leɪtə 70
travel agent 'trævəl 'eɪdʒənt 73
treat triːt 36
tree triː 28
trend trend 41
trolley 'trɒli 24, 47
truck trʌk 29
trumpet 'trʌmpɪt 45
trumpeter 'trʌmpɪtə 45
trunk trʌŋk 8
trust trʌst 11
try sth on traɪ 'sʌmθɪŋ ɒn 23
try/do your best traɪ/duː jɔː best 34
T-shirt 'tiːʃɜːt 22, 73
tube tjuːb 63
tune tjuːn 45
Turkey 'tɜːki 5
Turkish 'tɜːkɪʃ 5
turn sth down [reduce volume] tɜːn 'sʌmθɪŋ daʊn 32
turn sth/sb down [reject] tɜːn 'sʌmθɪŋ 'sʌmbɒdi daʊn 80
turn sth off tɜːn 'sʌmθɪŋ ɒf 80
turn sth on tɜːn 'sʌmθɪŋ ɒn 80
turn sth up tɜːn 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp 32
turning 'tɜːnɪŋ 30
twice twaɪs 68
twin(s) twɪn 13
twin room twɪn ruːm 48
type v taɪp 39, 96
ugly 'ʌgli 10
UK ˌjuː'keɪ 5
UN ˌjuː'en 100
unable ʌn'eɪbəl 69
unbelievable ˌʌnbɪ'liːvəbəl 71
uncle 'ʌŋkəl 13
uncomfortable ʌn'kʌmftəbəl 69, 71
uncountable (noun) ʌn'kaʊntəbəl 4
under [movement] 'ʌndə 90
under arrest 'ʌndər ə'rest 55
under one roof 'ʌndə wʌn ruːf 24
undergraduate ˌʌndə'grædʒuət 35
underneath ˌʌndə'niːθ 90
undo ʌn'duː 22

unemployed ˌʌnɪm'plɔɪd 38
unemployment ˌʌnɪm'plɔɪmənt 38
unfair ʌn'feə 69
unfashionable ʌn'fæʃənəbəl 71
unforgettable ˌʌnfə'getəbəl 71
unfriendly ʌn'frendli 11
uniform 'ju:nɪfɔ:m 33
United States of America ju:'naɪtɪd steɪts ɒv ə'merɪkə 5
unkind ʌn'kaɪnd 11
unless ən'les 94
unlikely ʌn'laɪkli 69
unlock ʌn'lɒk 69
unlucky ʌn'lʌki 69
unnecessary ʌn'nesəsəri 2
unpack ʌn'pæk 69
unpleasant ʌn'plezənt 11
unreasonable ʌn'ri:zənəbəl 71
unreliable ˌʌnrɪ'laɪəbəl 11, 71
unsociable ʌn'səʊʃəbəl 71
unsuccessful ˌʌnsək'sesfəl 35
unsuitable ʌn'su:təbəl 71
untidy ʌn'taɪdi 2
until ən'tɪl 59
up [further along] ʌp 61
up [not in bed] ʌp 28
up and down ʌp ænd daʊn 75
up to ʌp tu: 46
upload ʌp'ləʊd 54
upset adj ʌp'set 12
upstairs ʌp'steəz 17
up-to-date ˌʌptə'deɪt 78
urgently 'ɜ:dʒəntli 91
use n ju:s 32
use v ju:z 32
used to ju:st tu: 67
useful 'ju:sfəl 71
useless 'ju:sləs 71
username 'ju:zəneɪm 53
utility room ju:'tɪləti ru:m 18
valley 'væli 28
value 'vælju: 41
value for money ' vælju: fɔ: 'mʌni 20, 27
van væn 29
variety və'raɪəti 27, 40
vase vɑ:z 63
vast majority vɑ:st mə'dʒɒrəti 60
veal vi:l 25
vegetarian ˌvedʒɪ'teərɪən 25
vehicle 'vɪəkəl 29
verb vɜ:b 4
vet vet 36, 100
via 'vaɪə 30
victory 'vɪktəri 43
video clip 'vɪdiəʊ klɪp 54
view vju: 17
village 'vɪlɪdʒ 28
vinegar 'vɪnɪgə 25
violence 'vaɪələns 58
violent 'vaɪələnt 58
violin ˌvaɪə'lɪn 45
violinist ˌvaɪə'lɪnɪst 45
virus [computer] 'vaɪrəs 53
visa application form 'vi:zə ˌæplɪ'keɪʃən fɔ:m 96
vitally important 'vaɪtəli ɪm'pɔ:tənt 74
vocational training vəʊ'keɪʃənəl 'treɪnɪŋ 33
volleyball 'vɒlibɔ:l 50
vote vəʊt 56
vowel 'vaʊəl 34
wage weɪdʒ 37
waist weɪst 9
wait and see weɪt ænd si: 76
wake (up) weɪk 79
wake (sb) up weɪk ʌp 16
war wɔ: 58
wardrobe 'wɔ:drəʊb 23
warn (+ obj + inf) wɔ:n 88
warning 'wɔ:nɪŋ 31
wash n, v wɒʃ 16, 72
washbasin 'wɒʃˌbeɪsən 18
washing [dirty clothes] 'wɒʃɪŋ 16
waste weɪst 20, 57
watch wɒtʃ 85
waterfall 'wɔ:təfɔ:l 6
wave to somebody weɪv tu: 'sʌmbədi 9
waves (in the sea) weɪvz 50
wavy 'weɪvi 10
way [route] weɪ 30
we could ... wi: kʊd 65
weak wi:k 70
weakness 'wi:knəs 70
wear weə 33
weather forecast 'weðə 'fɔ:kɑ:st 51
webcam 'webkæm 53
website 'websaɪt 54
wedding 'wedɪŋ 15
weekly 'wi:kli 1, 51
weigh weɪ 10, 47
weight weɪt 10
well aware wel ə'weə 74
well done [meat] wel dʌn 48
well known wel nəʊn 51
west west 6
wet wet 7
whale weɪl 8
What are you up to? wɒt ɑ: ju: ʌp tu: 95
What do you do? wɒt du: ju: du: 37
What do you do for a living? wɒt du: ju: du: fɔ:r ə 'lɪvɪŋ 37
What do you think of/about ...? wɒt du: ju: θɪŋk ɒv/ə'baʊt 66
What does he/she look like? wɒt dʌz hi:/ʃi: lʊk laɪk 10
What does that involve? wɒt dʌz ðæt ɪn'vɒlv 37
What does X mean? wɒt dʌz eks mi:n 32
What does X stand for? wɒt dʌz eks stænd fɔ: 100
What for? wɒt fɔ: 76
what if wɒt ɪf 76
What's he/she/it like? wɒts hi:/ʃi:/ ɪt laɪk 11
what's more wɒts mɔ: 93
What's on? wɒts ɒn 44
What's your job? wɒts jɔ: dʒɒb 37
wheelchair 'wi:ltʃeə 73
whereas weə'ræz 93
whether 'weðə 94
while [comparing] 'waɪl 93
while [during] 'waɪl 92
Who's calling? hu:z 'kɔ:lɪŋ 52
Why don't we ...? waɪ dəʊnt wi: 65
Why not? waɪ nɒt 76
wide [not narrow] waɪd 61
wide awake waɪd ə'weɪk 74
wide choice waɪd tʃɔɪs 74
wide vocabulary waɪd və'kæbjələri 34, 74
widow 'wɪdəʊ 13
width wɪtθ 61
wild (animals) waɪld 8
willing 'wɪlɪŋ 34
win wɪn 43
wind n wɪnd 7
windsurfing 'wɪndsɜ:fɪŋ 50
windy 'wɪndi 7
wing wɪŋ 8
winner 'wɪnə 43
wish wɪʃ 11
won't be long wəʊnt bi: lɒŋ 64
wonderful 'wʌndəfəl 89
wood wʊd 36
wooden 'wʊdən 18, 62
woods wʊdz 28
work [function] wɜ:k 19, 39
work experience wɜ:k ɪk'spɪərɪəns 96
work on sth wɜ:k ɒn 'sʌmθɪŋ 34
work out wɜ:k aʊt 42
work sth out wɜ:k 'sʌmθɪŋ aʊt 60
worry about sth 'wʌri ə'baʊt 'sʌmθɪŋ 77
worth [value] wɜ:θ 55
worth (+ noun/*-ing*) wɜ:θ 49
would rather wʊd 'rɑ:ðə 67
wow waʊ 32
wrist rɪst 9
write down raɪt daʊn 2
wrong number rɒŋ 'nʌmbə 52
yard jɑ:d 61
yawn jɔ:n 9
yet jet 93
yoga 'jəʊgə 42
you (don't) get ... ju: get 27, 28
you know ju: nəʊ 76
you must be joking ju: mʌst bi: 'dʒəʊkɪŋ 76
Yours faithfully/sincerely jɔ:z 'feɪθfəli/sɪn'sɪəli 98
zero 'zɪərəʊ 60
zip zɪp 22
zoo zu: 8

English Vocabulary in Use

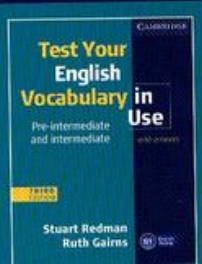
Pre-intermediate and intermediate

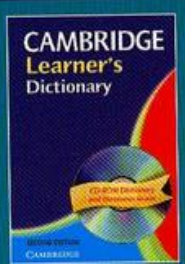
Third edition

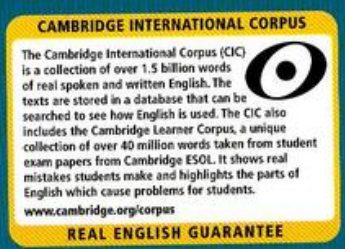
Do you want to improve your vocabulary quickly? *English Vocabulary in Use* has it all. For English language learners at B1 level, this third edition of the best-selling vocabulary book now offers:

- Fully updated units informed by the English Vocabulary Profile, so you learn the most important words at intermediate level
- New words presented and explained in context
- Lots of opportunities for personalised practice
- A common mistakes feature which helps you avoid frequent errors

www.cambridge.org/elt/inuse







CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS
www.cambridge.org

ISBN 978-0-521-14988-4